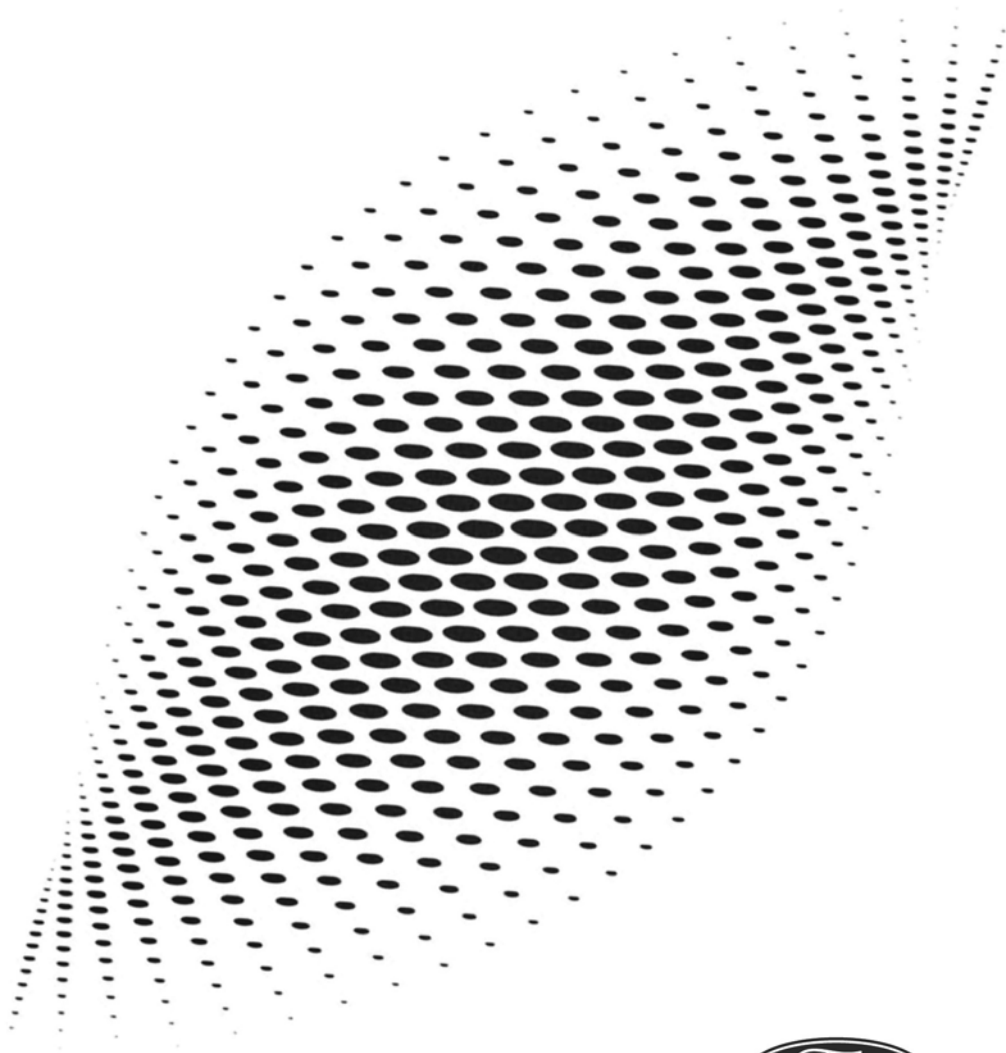


FORD **MUSTANG MACH-E** Owner's Manual



The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2024

All rights reserved.

Part Number: CG3920en-202410-20241030024645

Table of Contents

Introduction

About This Publication	13
Using This Publication	14
Special Notices	14

Symbols Glossary

Symbols Used On Your Instrument Cluster	16
---	----

Data Privacy

Data Privacy	19
Service Data	20
Event Data	20
Settings Data	21
Connected Vehicle Data	21
Mobile Device Data	21
Emergency Call System Data	22

Environment

Protecting the Environment	23
----------------------------------	----

Visual Search

Interior Overview - LHD RWD	24
Interior Overview - RHD RWD	25
Exterior Overview	26

Child Safety

Child Safety Precautions	27
Child Restraint Anchor Points	28
Child Restraints	29
Installing Child Restraints	32
Booster Seats	32
Child Safety Locks	33
Child Safety Locks – Troubleshooting	34

Seatbelts

Seatbelt Precautions	35
Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts	35

Adjusting the Seatbelts During Pregnancy	35
Adjusting the Seatbelt Height	36
Seatbelt Reminder	36
Seatbelts – Troubleshooting	37

Airbags

How Do the Front Airbags Work	38
How Do the Side Airbags Work	38
How Do the Knee Airbags Work	39
How Does the Safety Canopy™ Work	39
Airbag Precautions	40
Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off	41
Airbags – Troubleshooting	42

Pedestrian Protection

What Is Pedestrian Protection	43
How Does Pedestrian Protection Work	43
Pedestrian Protection Precautions	43
Pedestrian Protection Indicators	44

Pedestrian Alert System

What Is the Pedestrian Alert System	45
---	----

eCall

What Is eCall	46
How Does eCall Work	46
Emergency Call Requirements	46
Emergency Call Limitations	46
Manually Making an Emergency Call	46
Emergency Call Indicators	47
Changing the Backup Battery	48
eCall – Troubleshooting	48

Keys and Remote Controls

Remote Control Limitations	49
----------------------------------	----

Table of Contents

Using the Remote Control	49
Locating Your Vehicle	49
Changing the Remote Control Battery	50
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control	51
Programming the Remote Control	51

Phone as a Key

What Is Phone as a Key	52
Phone as a Key Limitations	52
Programming Your Phone	52
Using the Valet Mode	53
Using the Backup Start Passcode	53
Phone as a Key – Troubleshooting	54

Doors and Locks

Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle	56
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle	56
Autounlock	57
Autolock	57
Mislock	57
Doors and Locks Audible Warnings	57
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting	57

Keyless Entry

What Is Keyless Entry	60
Keyless Entry Limitations	60
Keyless Entry Settings	60
Using Keyless Entry	60
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting	61

Keyless Entry Keypad

What Is the Keyless Entry Keypad	62
Keyless Entry Keypad Limitations	62
Locating the Keyless Entry Keypad	62
Keyless Entry Keypad Master Access Code	62

Keyless Entry Keypad Personal Access Codes	62
Using the Keyless Entry Keypad	63
Keyless Entry Keypad – Troubleshooting	64

Walk Away Lock

What is Walk Away Lock	65
How Does Walk Away Lock Work	65
Walk Away Lock Limitations	65
Switching Walk Away Lock On and Off	65

Easy Entry and Exit

How Does Easy Entry and Exit Work	66
Switching Easy Entry and Exit On and Off	66

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate

Opening the Liftgate	67
Setting the Liftgate Opening Height	68
Closing the Liftgate	69
Stopping the Liftgate Movement	71
Liftgate Obstacle Detection	71
Liftgate – Troubleshooting	71

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Manual Liftgate

Liftgate Precautions	73
Opening the Liftgate	73
Closing the Liftgate	73

Security

Passive Anti-Theft System	75
Anti-Theft Alarm System	75
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings	76
Security – Troubleshooting	77

Table of Contents

Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel	79
Locking the Steering Wheel	79
Horn	79
Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off	79

Wipers and Washers

Wipers	81
Autowipers	81
Switching the Rear Window Wiper On and Off	82
Reverse Wipe	82
Checking the Wiper Blades	82
Replacing the Front Wiper Blades	82
Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades	83
Washers	83
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting	85

Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lighting Control	86
Headlamps	86
Headlamps – Troubleshooting	87
Autolamps	87
Exterior Lamps	88
Automatic High Beam Control	89
Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting	91
Glare Free Lighting	92
Glare Free Lighting – Troubleshooting	94

Interior Lighting

Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off	95
Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off	95
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off	95
Interior Lamp Function	95

Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting Brightness	96
Ambient Lighting	96
Interior Lighting – Troubleshooting	96

Windows

Opening and Closing the Windows	97
Global Opening and Closing	97
Window Bounce-Back	98
Locking the Rear Window Controls	99

Interior Mirror

Interior Mirror Precautions	100
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror	100

Exterior Mirrors

Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors	101
Folding the Exterior Mirrors	101
Auto-Dimming Exterior Mirror	102

Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster Overview	103
Power Gauge	104
Speedometer	104
Vehicle Range Display	104
High Voltage Battery Gauge	104

Instrument Cluster Display

Brake Coach	106
-------------------	-----

Trip Computer

Accessing the Trip Computer	107
Resetting the Trip Computer	107
Trip Data	107

Remote Start

Using Remote Start	108
Remote Start Settings	108

Table of Contents

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)

Identifying the Climate Control Unit	109
Switching Climate Control On and Off	109
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off	109
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off	109
Switching Defrost On and Off	109
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off	109
Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off	110
Switching the Electric Heater On and Off	110
Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off	110
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off	110
Setting the Blower Motor Speed	111
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off	111
Setting the Temperature	111
Directing the Flow of Air	111
Auto Mode	111
Climate Control – Warning Lamps	112
Air Conditioning System Refrigerant	112

Interior Air Quality

What Is the Cabin Air Filter	113
Replacing the Cabin Air Filter	113

Front Seats

Front Seat Precautions	114
Sitting in the Correct Position	114
Manual Seats	115
Power Seats	117
Heated Seats	119

Rear Seats

Manual Seats	121
--------------------	-----

Rear Occupant Alert System

What is the Rear Occupant Alert System	123
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work	123
Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions	123
Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations	123
Rear Occupant Alert System Settings	124
Rear Occupant Alert System Indicators	124
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible Warnings	125

Memory Function

What Is the Memory Function	126
Memory Function Precautions	126
Locating the Memory Function Buttons	126
Saving a Preset Position	126
Recalling a Preset Position	126

USB Ports

Locating the USB Ports	127
Playing Media Using the USB Port	127
Charging a Device	128

Power Outlet

What Is the Power Outlet	130
Power Outlet Precautions	130
Locating the Power Outlets	130

Wireless Accessory Charger

What Is the Wireless Accessory Charger	131
--	-----

Table of Contents

Wireless Accessory Charger Precautions	131
Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger	131
Charging a Wireless Device	131

Storage

Cup Holders	133
Glove Compartment	133
Glasses Holder	133

Starting and Powering Off

Starting and Powering Off Precautions	134
Starting the Vehicle	134
Powering Off	134
Restarting the Vehicle After Powering Off	134
Vehicle Power Down Timer	135
Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position	135
Starting and Powering Off – Troubleshooting	136

High Voltage Battery

What Is the High Voltage Battery	137
High Voltage Battery Precautions	137
Preserving Your High Voltage Battery	137
Recycling and Disposing of the High Voltage Battery	138
Energy Consumption Figures	138
Energy Consumption Figures - Excluding: GT	139
Energy Consumption Figures - GT	140
High Voltage Battery – Troubleshooting	140

Charging Your Vehicle

Charging Equipment Precautions	141
Charging Equipment Overview	142
Charging Equipment Indicators	144

Locating the Charge Port	148
Charge Port Indicators	148
AC Charging	149
DC Charging	155
Charge Coupler Manual Release	157
Charging Settings	158
Using Your Vehicle App and Charging	161
Charging Equipment Identification Symbols	162
Charging Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting	163

Electric Motor

Selector Positions	166
Shifting Your Immobile Vehicle Out of Park (P)	167
Electric Motor Audible Warnings	168
Roll-Away Protection	168

All-Wheel Drive

How Does All-Wheel Drive Work	170
All-Wheel Drive Precautions	170
All-Wheel Drive Limitations	170
All-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting	170

Brakes

Brake Precautions	171
Anti-Lock Braking System	171
Brake Over Accelerator	171
Locating the Brake Fluid Reservoir	171
Checking the Brake Fluid	171
Brake Fluid Specification	172
Brakes – Troubleshooting	173

Electric Parking Brake

What Is the Electric Parking Brake	174
Applying the Electric Parking Brake	174
Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency	174

Table of Contents

Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake	174
Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake	174
Electric Parking Brake Audible Warning	175
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of Charge	175
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting	175

Reverse Brake Assist

What Is Reverse Brake Assist	177
How Does Reverse Brake Assist Work	177
Reverse Brake Assist Precautions	177
Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off	178
Overriding Reverse Brake Assist	178
Reverse Brake Assist Indicators	178
Reverse Brake Assist – Troubleshooting	179

Hill Start Assist

What Is Hill Start Assist	181
How Does Hill Start Assist Work	181
Hill Start Assist Precautions	181

Auto Hold

How Does Auto Hold Work	182
Switching Auto Hold On and Off	182
Using Auto Hold	182
Auto Hold Indicators	182

Traction Control

What Is Traction Control	183
How Does Traction Control Work	183
Switching Traction Control On and Off	183
Traction Control Indicator	183
Traction Control – Troubleshooting	184

Stability Control

How Does Stability Control Work	185
Switching Stability Control On and Off	186
Stability Control Indicator	188

Steering

Electric Power Steering	189
Steering – Troubleshooting	190

Parking Aids

Parking Aid Precautions	191
Switching Parking Aid On and Off	191
Rear Parking Aid	192
Front Parking Aid	192
Parking Aid Indicators	194
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting	195

Rear View Camera

What Is the Rear View Camera	196
Rear View Camera Precautions	196
Locating the Rear View Camera	196
Rear View Camera Guide Lines	196
Rear View Camera Settings	197

360 Degree Camera

What Is the 360 Degree Camera	198
How Does the 360 Degree Camera Work	198
360 Degree Camera Precautions	198
Locating the 360 Degree Cameras	198
360 Degree Camera Guide Lines	198
360 Degree Camera Settings	199

Adaptive Cruise Control

How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work	201
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions	201

Table of Contents

Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations	201	Drive Modes	224
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off	203	Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting	225
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation	204	One Pedal Drive	
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed	204	What is One Pedal Drive	228
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap	205	One Pedal Drive Precautions	228
Canceling the Set Speed	206	One Pedal Drive Limitations	228
Resuming the Set Speed	206	Switching One Pedal Drive On and Off	228
Overriding the Set Speed	207	One Pedal Drive Indicators	228
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators	208	Local Hazard Information	
Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control	208	What Is Local Hazard Information	229
Lane Centering	208	Local Hazard Information Indicators	229
Lane Centering – Troubleshooting	211	Enabling Local Hazard Information	229
Predictive Speed Assist	212	Intelligent Speed Limiter	
Predictive Speed Assist – Troubleshooting	214	What Is the Intelligent Speed Limiter	230
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting	214	How Does the Intelligent Speed Limiter Work	230
BlueCruise		Intelligent Speed Limiter Precautions	230
What Is BlueCruise	216	Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off	230
How Does BlueCruise Work	216	Setting the Speed Limit	230
BlueCruise Precautions	217	Changing the Set Speed Limit	230
BlueCruise Requirements	218	Canceling the Set Speed Limit	231
BlueCruise Limitations	218	Resuming the Set Speed Limit	231
BlueCruise Settings	219	Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit	231
Switching BlueCruise On and Off	219	Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicators	231
BlueCruise Alerts	220	Intelligent Speed Limiter Audible Warnings	231
BlueCruise Automatic Cancellation	220	Switching From Intelligent Speed Limiter to Speed Limiter	231
BlueCruise Indicators	221	Lane Keeping System	
In-Lane Repositioning	221	What Is the Lane Keeping System	232
BlueCruise – Troubleshooting	222		
Drive Mode Control			
What Is Drive Mode Control	224		
Selecting a Drive Mode	224		

Table of Contents

How Does the Lane Keeping System Work	232
Lane Keeping System Precautions	232
Lane Keeping System Limitations	232
Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off	233
Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode	233
Lane Keeping System Settings	233
Aid Mode	233
Alert and Aid Mode	234
Lane Keeping System Indicators	234
Blind Spot Assist	235
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting	237

Blind Spot Information System

What Is Blind Spot Information System	239
How Does Blind Spot Information System Work	239
Blind Spot Information System Precautions	239
Blind Spot Information System Limitations	239
Blind Spot Information System Requirements	239
Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off	240
Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors	240
Blind Spot Information System Indicators	240
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting	241

Exit Warning

What is Exit Warning	242
How Does Exit Warning Work	242
Exit Warning Precautions	242
Exit Warning Limitations	243
Exit Warning Indicators	244

Switching Exit Warning On and Off	244
Locating the Exit Warning Sensors	244
Exit Warning – Troubleshooting	245

Cross Traffic Alert

What Is Cross Traffic Alert	246
How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work	246
Cross Traffic Alert Precautions	246
Cross Traffic Alert Limitations	247
Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off	248
Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors	248
Cross Traffic Alert Indicators	249
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting	249

Pre-Collision Assist

What Is Pre-Collision Assist	250
How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work	250
Pre-Collision Assist Precautions	250
Pre-Collision Assist Limitations	251
Switching Pre-Collision Assist On and Off	253
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors	253
Forward Collision Warning	254
Automatic Emergency Braking	254
Evasive Steering Assist	254
Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting	255

Driver Alert

What Is Driver Alert	257
How Does Driver Alert Work	257
Driver Alert Precautions	257
Driver Alert Limitations	258
Switching Driver Alert On and Off	258
Driver Alert Indicators	258
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting	259

Table of Contents

Traffic Sign Recognition

What Is Traffic Sign Recognition	260
How Does Traffic Sign Recognition Work	260
Traffic Sign Recognition Precautions	260
Traffic Sign Recognition Limitations	260
Traffic Sign Recognition Indicators	261
Traffic Sign Recognition Settings	261
Traffic Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting	262

Wrong Way Alert

What Is Wrong Way Alert	263
How Does Wrong Way Alert Work	263
Wrong Way Alert Precautions	263
Wrong Way Alert Limitations	263
Switching Wrong Way Alert On and Off	263
Wrong Way Alert – Troubleshooting	264

Load Carrying

Load Carrying Precautions	265
Tow Bar Mounted Carrier	265

Luggage Compartment

Luggage Compartment Precautions	267
Opening the Frunk	267
Closing the Frunk	268
Using the Frunk Emergency Release	269
Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover	269
Adjusting the Luggage Compartment Load Floor	270
Luggage Compartment Anchor Points	270
Luggage Compartment – Troubleshooting	271

Connecting a Trailer

Tow Ball	272
----------------	-----

Towing a Trailer

Towing a Trailer Precautions	275
Towing a Trailer Limitations	275
Trailer Towing Hints	275
Towing Weights and Dimensions	276

Trailer Sway Control

How Does Trailer Sway Control Work	278
Trailer Sway Control Precautions	278

Driving Hints

Performance Vehicle Precautions - GT	279
Performance Vehicle Precautions - Vehicles With: Mustang Mach-E Rally	279
Driving in Cold Weather	279
Driving Through Mud and Water	280
Driving on Hilly or Sloping Terrain	280
Driving In Sand	281
Driving Through Shallow Water	281
Electric Vehicle	282
Floor Mats	282

Crash and Breakdown Information

High Voltage Battery Vehicle Precautions	284
Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off	285
Jump Starting the Vehicle	285
Post-Crash Alert System	287
Post-Collision Braking	288
Automatic Crash Shutoff	288
Recovery Towing	288
Transporting the Vehicle	289

Table of Contents

Towing Your Vehicle

Towing Your Vehicle Precautions	291
Emergency Towing	291

Fuses

Fuse Precautions	292
Under Hood Fuse Box	292
Battery Fuse Box	298
Body Control Module Fuse Box	299
Identifying Fuse Types	302
Fuses – Troubleshooting	302

Maintenance

Maintenance Precautions	303
Opening and Closing the Hood	303
Under Hood Overview	303
Coolant	304
12V Battery	306
12V Battery – Troubleshooting	307
Adjusting the Headlamps	307
Exterior Bulbs	307
Interior Bulbs	308

Vehicle Specifications

Vehicle Dimensions - Excluding: GT	309
Vehicle Dimensions - GT	310
Vehicle Dimensions - Vehicles With: Mustang Mach-E Rally	311
Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification	312

Vehicle Care

General Information	313
Cleaning the Exterior	313
Cleaning the Interior	314
Repairing Minor Paint Damage	316
Waxing Your Vehicle	316

Body Styling Kits

Body Styling Kit Precautions	317
------------------------------------	-----

Storing Your Vehicle

Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage	318
Removing Your Vehicle From Storage	319

Wheel and Tire Information

Locating the Tire label	320
Information on the Tire Sidewall	320
Glossary of Tire Terminology	323
Tire Replacement Requirements	324
Using Summer Tires	325
Using Winter Tires	326
Using Snow Chains	326

Tire Care

Checking the Tire Pressures	328
Inflating the Tires	328
Tire Pressure Specifications	329
Tire Rotation	330

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

What Is the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit	331
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Precautions	331
Locating the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit	331
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Components	332
Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit	333

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System	343
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions	343
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations	343
Viewing the Tire Pressures	343

Table of Contents

Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System	343
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting	344

Changing a Road Wheel

Changing a Flat Tire	346
Wheel Nuts	347

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Plate	349
------------------------------------	-----

Connected Vehicle

What Is a Connected Vehicle	351
Connected Vehicle Requirements	351
Connected Vehicle Limitations	351
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network	351
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network	351
Connected Vehicle Settings	352
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting	352

Vehicle Hotspot

Setting Up a Vehicle Hotspot	354
Vehicle Hotspot Settings	354
Vehicle Hotspot – Troubleshooting	355

Audio System

Audio System Precautions	356
Switching the Audio Unit On and Off	356
Selecting the Audio Source	356
Media Control Buttons	356
Adjusting the Volume	356
Setting a Memory Preset	357
Muting the Audio	357
Adjusting the Sound Settings	357
Setting the Clock and Date	357
FM Radio	357

Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio	358
Traffic Announcements	359

Center Display

Center Display Overview	360
Status Bar	360
Settings	361
Driver Assistance Menu	362
Rebooting the Center Display	362

Voice Interaction

Ford Assistant	363
----------------------	-----

Alexa Built-In

What is Alexa Built-In	365
Alexa Built-In Requirements	365
Signing In to Your Account	365
Using Alexa Built-In	365
Alexa Built-In Settings	365

Phone

Phone Precautions	367
Connecting Your Phone	367
Phone Menu	367
Making and Receiving a Phone Call	368
Sending and Receiving a Text Message	369
Switching Text Message Notification On and Off	370
Enabling Apps on a Mobile Device	370
Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off	370
Switching Android Auto™ On and Off	370

Bluetooth®

Connecting a Bluetooth® Device	372
Playing Media Using Bluetooth®	372

Table of Contents

Personal Profiles

How Do Personal Profiles Work	373
Enabling or Disabling Personal Profiles	373
Creating a Personal Profile	373
Linking or Unlinking a Personal Profile	373
Selecting a Personal Profile	374
Deleting a Personal Profile	374

Navigation

Accessing Navigation	375
Navigation Map Updates	375
Adjusting the Map	375
Live Traffic	375
Setting a Destination	375
Waypoints	376
Route Guidance	376

Vehicle Software Updates

Vehicle Software Updates	378
Software Update Settings	378
Software Update Indicators	379

Vehicle System Reset

Performing a System Reset	380
---------------------------------	-----

Your Authorized Dealer

Authorized Dealer Directory	381
-----------------------------------	-----

Service Intervals

Service Intervals	387
-------------------------	-----

Customer Information

Rollover Warning	388
Third Party Software Copyright Acknowledgment	388
Declaration of Conformity	388
REACH	388

Radio Frequency Certification Labels	389
Replacement Parts Recommendation	435
Mobile Communications Equipment	436
eCall User Information	436
End User License Agreement	440

Appendices

Electromagnetic Compatibility	454
-------------------------------------	-----

Introduction

ABOUT THIS PUBLICATION



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



WARNING: You risk death, fire, or serious injury to yourself and others if you do not follow the instruction highlighted by the warning symbol.

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle in order to benefit from greater safety and pleasure from driving it. Use this publication, whether in-vehicle center display screen, print, in Ford mobile app or online, to familiarize yourself with the features on your vehicle.

Note: Use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.

Note: Pass on all printed owner's information when selling this vehicle.

Features and Options

This publication describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It could describe options that are not available on the vehicle you have purchased.

Providing Feedback

If you would like to provide feedback to the Owner's Manual team, please email us at OWNERMANUALFEEDBACK@ford.com.

You will not receive a direct email response. Your submission will be investigated and necessary changes will be made to the Owner's Manual content.

To help investigate your submission, please include the following information:

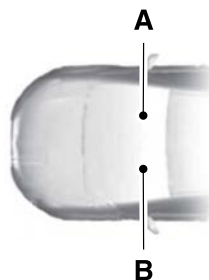
- Your vehicle model
- The country in which your vehicle was purchased
- The Owner's Manual section needing investigation

Illustrations

Note: Some of the illustrations in this publication could show features as used in different models, so could appear different to you on your vehicle.

Location of Components

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



- A Right-hand side.
B Left-hand side.

Introduction

Accessing the Digital Owner's Manual

The online version of the Owner's Manual may contain the very latest information, which may vary slightly from the in-vehicle digital Owner's Manual originally provided with your vehicle. We recommend updating the in-vehicle digital Owner's Manual when prompted using Over The Air updates.

Vehicles with a Portrait Center Display Screen

The Owner's Manual application is located in the Apps list.

Vehicles with a Landscape Center Display Screen

Depending on your vehicle, the Owner's Manual application is located in either the Apps list or the Features list.

Accessing the Online and Printed Owner's Manual

Online Owner's Manual

- Through your device's app store, you can download the Ford mobile app.
- You can visit the local Ford Website.

Note: To find the local Ford website, visit <https://corporate.ford.com/operations/locations/global-links.html>.

Note: We strongly recommend downloading a copy of the Owner's Manual and having it with you whenever you drive, and to view the information if you are unable to be inside the vehicle.

Printed Owner's Manual

In U.S. and Canada, visit www.helminc.com or see an authorized dealer.

In Europe, visit www.z-order.de or see an authorized dealer.

For all other Countries, see your authorized dealer.

USING THIS PUBLICATION

To quickly locate information about your vehicle, use the word search within the Owner's Manual application.

SPECIAL NOTICES

Consumer* Information

*Consumer: Real or legal person acting for commercial or non-occupational purposes. If a driver drives his vehicle for commercial or occupational purposes, whether on full-time or part-time basis, he may not be evaluated as a "Consumer" under the legislation.

In the event a vehicle is purchased subject to Consumer Warranty terms but driven for commercial or occupational purposes thereafter or if purchased subject to Commercial Warranty Terms and then driven out of commercial or occupational purposes, COMMERCIAL WARRANTY TERMS shall apply under general statutory provisions. This shall bind Driver and other persons who take over such vehicle. Please see Ford Warranty Terms for detailed information.

Optional rights granted to consumers pursuant to Consumer Protection Law no. 6502 and Regulation for Introductory and Owner Manuals published at the Official Gazette dated 13.06.2014 and no. 29029 and information related to authorities to which consumers may file complaints and objections are as follows:

I. Optional Rights of Consumers

1) If merchandise is understood to be defective consumer may exercise one of following rights;

Introduction

a) Reneging on contract by notifying that he is ready to return sold item,

b) Retaining sold item and asking discount from sales price pro rata to defect,

c) In case excessive expense is not required, asking free of charge repair of sold item, all expenses at seller's account,

d) If possible, asking replacement of sold item with an equivalent free of defects,

you can use one of these rights. Seller shall be liable to fulfill such request preferred by consumer.

2) Rights of free of charge repair or replacement of merchandise with an equivalent free of defects may also be exercised against manufacturer or importer. Seller, manufacturer and importer shall be severally liable for fulfillment of rights set out in this clause. Manufacturer or importer shall not be held liable if they prove that defect has arisen after merchandise is placed on the market by them.

3) If free of charge repair or replacement of merchandise with an equivalent free of defects would bring along disproportional inconvenience for seller, consumer may exercise one of rights of reneging on contract or discount from price pro rata to defect. During determination of disproportionality, matters such as value of merchandise free of defects, importance of defect and whether resorting to other optional rights would create any problems for consumer shall be considered.

4) In the event either right of free of charge repair or replacement of merchandise with an equivalent free of defects is chosen, such request must be fulfilled within maximum thirty business days from notification of this request to seller, manufacturer or importer. However, concerning merchandise included at the list attachment of regulation issued as per

article 58 of Consumer Protection Law no. 6502, consumer's request for free of charge repair shall be fulfilled within maximum repair period set out at the regulation. Otherwise, consumer shall be free to exercise other optional rights.

5) In cases consumer chooses right of reneging on contract or discount from price pro rata to defect, full price paid or amount of discount from price shall be promptly refunded to consumer.

6) Any expenses incurred because of exercising optional rights shall be covered by the party fulfilling the right chosen by consumer. Consumer, along with one of such optional rights, may also claim compensation as per provisions of Turkish Code of Obligations dated 11/01/2011 and no. 6098.

II. Consumer Complaints and Objections

Consumers may file applications regarding complaints and objections to consumer courts and consumer arbitration committees in accordance with arrangements provided at Consumer Protection Law no. 6502.

Manufacturer or Importer

Ford Otomotiv Sanayi A.S.
Akpınar Mah. Hasan Basrı Cad. No: 2
34885 Sancaktepe/Istanbul
Trade Registration No: 73232 - Istanbul
Tel: 0.216 564 71 00
Fax: 0.216 564 73 85
www.fordotosan.com.tr

Service Life

The service life of this vehicle is 10 years.

Symbols Glossary

SYMBOLS USED ON YOUR INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

Lighting and Signaling



High beams. See **Headlamp Indicators** (page 86).



Auto high beams. See **Automatic High Beam Control Indicators** (page 91).



Front fog lamps.



Rear fog lamps. See **Using the Rear Fog Lamps** (page 88).



Turn signal - right. See **Using the Turn Signal Lamps** (page 88).



Turn signal - left. See **Using the Turn Signal Lamps** (page 88).



Positioning/side lights. See **Headlamp Indicators** (page 86).



Exterior bulb failure. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 307).

Brakes



Brake failure. See **Brakes – Warning Lamps** (page 173).



Brake failure. See **Brakes – Warning Lamps** (page 173).



Electric parking brake fault. See **Electric Parking Brake – Warning Lamps** (page 175).



Anti-lock brake system malfunction. See **Brakes – Warning Lamps** (page 173).



Automatic brake hold. See **Auto Hold Indicators** (page 182).



Automatic brake hold off or unavailable. See **Auto Hold Indicators** (page 182).

Visibility



Windshield washer fluid level. See **Wipers and Washers – Warning Lamps** (page 85).

Electric Motor



Motor coolant temperature. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 304).



Non-emission powertrain fault. See **High Voltage Battery – Warning Lamps** (page 140).

Vehicle Handling



Selectable drive mode - engage.



Selectable drive mode - whisper. See **Whisper** (page 225). See **Whisper** (page 225).



Selectable drive mode - unbridle.



Selectable drive mode - unbridle extended.



Selectable drive mode - rally sport. See **RallySport** (page 224).



Steering system fault. See **Steering – Warning Lamps** (page 190).

Symbols Glossary

Driver Assistance



Cruise control. See **Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control** (page 208).



Adaptive cruise control. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators** (page 208).



Speed Limiter. See **Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicators** (page 231).



One pedal drive. See **One Pedal Drive Indicators** (page 228).



Lane keeping assist. See **Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off** (page 233).



Lane keeping assist off. See **Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off** (page 233).



Lane centering assist. See **Lane Centering Indicators** (page 211).

Safety



Seatbelt. See **Seatbelt Reminder Indicators** (page 36).



Airbag.



Stability control system active or not available. See **Stability Control Indicator** (page 188).

See **Traction Control Indicator** (page 183).



Stability control system off. See **Stability Control Indicator** (page 188). See **Traction Control Indicator** (page 183).



Tire failure/Low tire pressure. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Warning Lamps** (page 344).



Forward collision warning system off or unavailable. See **Pre-Collision Assist – Warning Lamps** (page 255).



Blind spot information system off or unavailable. See **Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off** (page 240).



Icy road conditions. See **Climate Control – Warning Lamps** (page 112).



Door(s) ajar. See **Doors and Locks – Warning Lamps** (page 57).



Driver alert system off or unavailable. See **Driver Alert Indicators** (page 258).



Driver alert system 2.0 off or unavailable. See **Driver Alert Indicators** (page 258).

Security



Hood release/ajar. See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 303).



Liftgate release/ajar. See **Liftgate – Warning Lamps** (page 71).

Electrical Systems



Battery charge level. See **12V Battery – Warning Lamps** (page 307).



Ready to drive. See **Starting and Powering Off** (page 134).

Symbols Glossary



Hybrid/electrical system failure.

See **High Voltage Battery – Warning Lamps** (page 140).

See **High Voltage Battery – Warning Lamps** (page 140).



External cord connected. See

Charging Your Vehicle – Warning Lamps (page 163).



Limited performance mode. See

High Voltage Battery – Warning Lamps (page 140).

See **High Voltage Battery – Warning Lamps** (page 140).

Data Privacy



WARNING: Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

We respect your privacy and are committed to protecting it. The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release, but as technology rapidly changes, we recommend that you visit the local Ford website for the latest information.

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have data recording functionality and the ability to permanently or temporarily store data. This data could include information on the condition and status of your vehicle, vehicle maintenance requirements, events and malfunctions. The types of data that can be recorded are described in this section. Some of the data recorded is stored in event logs or error logs.

Note: *Error logs are reset following a service or repair.*

Note: *We may provide information in response to requests from law enforcement, other government authorities and third parties acting with lawful authority or through a legal process. Such information could be used by them in legal proceedings.*

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Operating states of system components, for example battery charge level and tire pressure.
- Vehicle and component status, for example wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration and seatbelt status.

- Events or errors in essential systems, for example headlamps and brakes.
- System responses to driving situations, for example airbag deployment and stability control.
- Environmental conditions, for example temperature.

Some of this data, when used in combination with other information, for example an accident report, damage to a vehicle or eyewitness statements, could be associated with a specific person.

Services That We Provide

If you use our services, we collect and use data, for example account information, vehicle location and driving characteristics, that could identify you. We transmit this data through a dedicated, protected connection. We only collect and use data to enable your use of our services to which you have subscribed, with your consent or where permitted by law. For additional information, see the terms and conditions of the services to which you have subscribed.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

Services That Third Parties Provide

We recommend that you review the terms and conditions and data privacy information for any services equipped with your vehicle or to which you subscribe. We take no responsibility for services that third parties provide.

Data Privacy

SERVICE DATA

Our dealers collect service data through the data link connector in your vehicle. They use service data, for example error logs, to help them if you take your vehicle for repair. They share this data with our technical team, if required, to help with diagnosis. In addition to using the information for diagnosis and repair, we use and share service data with our service providers, for example parts suppliers, where required and where permitted by law, for continuous improvement or with other information that we have about you, for example your contact information, to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law. Our service providers are equally required by law to protect your data and retain it in accordance with data retention policies.

Note: *Third party repair facilities can also collect service data through the data link connector.*

EVENT DATA

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled/fastened.
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.
- Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Note: *Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (for example name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.*

To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder.

BlueCruise Data

If BlueCruise is active in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, the system may record driver attentiveness, based on the direction of eyes and duration, and photographs of the driver seat area.

Note: *No data is recorded under normal driving conditions.*

SETTINGS DATA

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have the ability to store data based on your personalized settings. The data is stored locally in the vehicle or on devices that you connect to it, for example, a USB drive or digital music player. You can delete some of this data and also choose whether to share it through the services to which you subscribe.

Comfort and Convenience Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Seat and steering wheel position.
- Climate control settings.
- Radio presets.

Entertainment Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Music, videos or album art.
- Contacts and corresponding address book entries.
- Navigation destinations.

CONNECTED VEHICLE DATA



The modem has a SIM. The modem was enabled when your vehicle was built and periodically sends messages to stay connected to the cell phone network. Subject to your consent, the vehicle may send vehicle, driving and location data. These messages could include information that identifies your vehicle, the SIM and the electronic serial number of the modem. Cell phone network service providers could have access to additional information, for example cell phone network tower identification. For additional information about our privacy policy, visit www.FordConnected.com or refer to your local Ford website.

Note: *The modem continues to send information unless you disable the modem or stop the modem from sharing data by changing the modem settings. See **Connected Vehicle** (page 351).*

Note: *The service can be unavailable or interrupted for a number of reasons, for example environmental or topographical conditions and data plan coverage.*

Note: *To find out if your vehicle has a modem, visit www.FordConnected.com.*

MOBILE DEVICE DATA

If you connect a mobile device to your vehicle, you can display data from your device on the touchscreen for example, music and album art. You can share your vehicle data with mobile apps on your device through the system. See **Enabling Apps on a Mobile Device** (page 370).

Data Privacy

The mobile apps function operates by your connected device sending data to us in the United States. The data is encrypted and includes, for example, the vehicle identification number of your vehicle, the SYNC module serial number, odometer, enabled apps, usage statistics and debugging information. We retain it only as long as necessary to provide the service, to troubleshoot, for continuous improvement and to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law.

If you connect a cell phone to the system, the system creates a profile that links to that cell phone. The cell phone profile enables more mobile features and efficient operation. The profile contains, for example data from your phonebook, read and unread text messages and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system.

If you connect a media device, the system creates and retains a media device index of supported media content. The system also records a short diagnostic log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity.

The cell phone profile, media device index and diagnostic log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when you connect your cell phone or media device. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you use the system reset function to erase the stored information. See **Performing a System Reset** (page 380).

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's module.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

Note: To find out if your vehicle has connectivity technology, visit www.FordConnected.com.

EMERGENCY CALL SYSTEM DATA

When the emergency call system is active, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off, or deactivation of the high-voltage battery. Certain versions or updates to the emergency call system may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to emergency services operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist emergency services operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the emergency call system.

Examples of data that the system could transmit are:

- Vehicle identification number.
- Vehicle propulsion storage type.
- Current time.
- Vehicle location and direction.
- Whether the call was automatically or manually initiated.
- Vehicle category.
- Number of occupants in the vehicle.

Note: You cannot deactivate emergency call systems that are required by law.

PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT

Sustainability is a priority at Ford. We are constantly looking for ways to reduce our impact on the planet while providing customers with great products and delivering a strong business. You should play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

For additional information about our sustainability progress and initiatives, visit www.sustainability.ford.com.

France Only

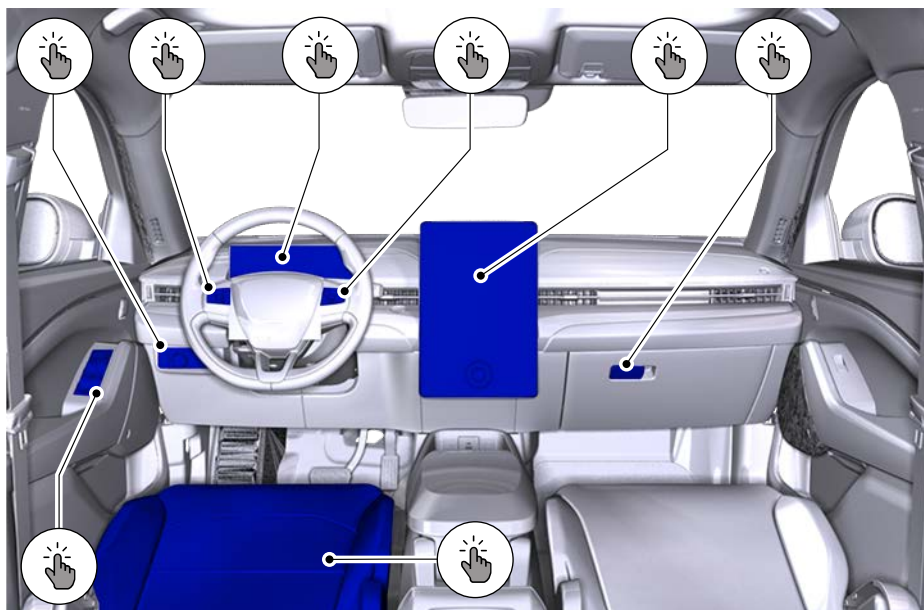


A déposer dans le réseau Ford agréé ou via le site www.valorauto.com.

Vous trouvez les informations sur le recyclage de votre Véhicule devenu Hors d'Usage via notre site:
Recyclage de votre voiture Ford : Comment ça marche ? | Ford FR.

Visual Search

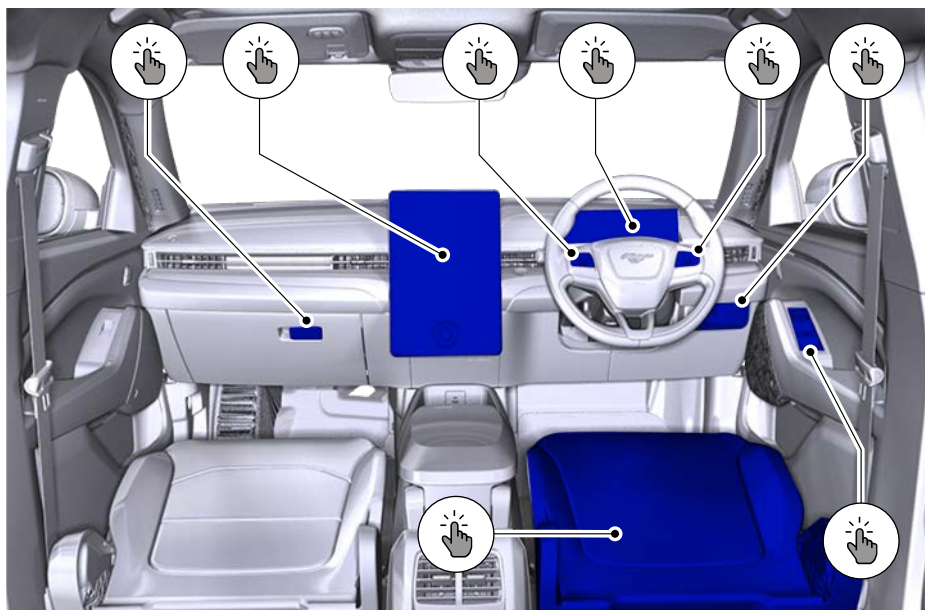
INTERIOR OVERVIEW - LHD RWD



- A See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 86).
- B See **Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off** (page 203).
- C See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 103).
- D See **Using Ford Assistant** (page 363).
- E See **Center Display Overview** (page 360).
- F See **Opening the Glove Compartment** (page 133).
- G See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 114).
- H See **Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors** (page 101).

Visual Search

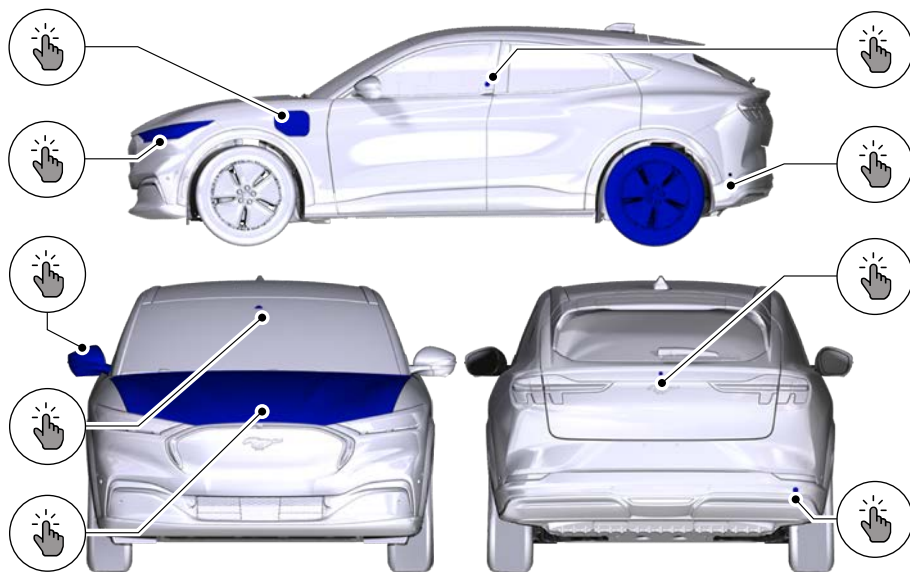
INTERIOR OVERVIEW - RHD RWD



- A See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 86).
- B See **Using Ford Assistant** (page 363).
- C See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 103).
- D See **Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off** (page 203).
- E See **Center Display Overview** (page 360).
- F See **Opening the Glove Compartment** (page 133).
- G See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 114).
- H See **Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors** (page 101).

Visual Search

EXTERIOR OVERVIEW



- A See **Locating the Charge Port** (page 148).
- B See **Using Keyless Entry** (page 60).
- C See **Tire Replacement Requirements** (page 324).
- D See **Locating the 360 Degree Cameras** (page 198).
- E See **Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors** (page 192).
- F See **Opening the Frunk from Outside Your Vehicle** (page 267).
- G See **Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors** (page 253).
- H See **Folding the Exterior Mirrors** (page 101).
- I See **Using the High Beam Headlamps** (page 86).

Child Safety

CHILD SAFETY PRECAUTIONS



Only child restraints certified to ECE-R129 or ECE-R44.03 (or later) have been tested and approved for use in your vehicle.

Note: *Mandatory use of child restraints varies from country to country.*

⚠ WARNING: Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

⚠ WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.

⚠ WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag on following the removal of the child restraint.

⚠ WARNING: Do not modify child restraints in any way.

⚠ WARNING: Do not hold a child on your lap when your vehicle is moving.

⚠ WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

⚠ WARNING: If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the child restraints checked.

⚠ WARNING: Do not put the shoulder section of the seatbelt or allow the child to put the shoulder section of the seatbelt under their arm or behind their back. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

⚠ WARNING: Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

⚠ WARNING: You must reinstall the head restraint following the removal of the child restraint.

⚠ WARNING: Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

Child Safety



WARNING: If you use a child restraint and a seatbelt, make sure that the seatbelt is not slack or twisted.



WARNING: Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with only the lap strap of the seatbelt.



WARNING: Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.



WARNING: Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.

LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT LOWER ANCHOR POINTS



Lower anchor points are on the rear outermost seats.

LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT TOP TETHER ANCHOR POINTS



Top tether anchor points are on the back of the rear seat.

CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

WHAT ARE THE CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

Anchor points are designed to allow you to quickly and safely install a child restraint.

Child Safety

CHILD RESTRAINTS

CHILD RESTRAINT POSITION INFORMATION

Seating Positions	Mass Group Categories				
	0	0+	1	2	3
	0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	9–18 kg (20–40lb)	15–25 kg (33–55lb)	22–36 kg (49–79 lb)
Front passenger seat with airbag ON .	X	X	UF ¹	UF ¹	UF ¹
Front passenger seat with airbag OFF .	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹
Rear seats. ²	U	U	U	U	U

¹ We recommend that you secure children in a government approved child restraint, on the rear seat.

² Do not use a child restraint with a support leg on the rear center seat unless stated as suitable in the child restraint manufacturer's product information.

X Not suitable for children in this mass group.

U Suitable for universal category child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

UF Suitable for universal category forward facing child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

ISOFIX Child Restraints

Seating Positions		Mass Group Categories				
		0	0	0+	1	1
		Lateral Facing	Rearward Facing	Rearward Facing	Forward Facing	Rearward Facing
		0–10 kg (0–22lb)	0–10 kg (0–22lb)	0–13 kg (0–29lb)	9–18 kg (20–40lb)	9–18 kg (20–40lb)
Front passenger seat.	Size class.	No ISOFIX				
	Size type.					
Rear outermost seat ISOFIX.	Size class.	X	E ¹	C, D, E ¹	A, B, BI ¹	C, D ¹

Child Safety

Seating Positions		Mass Group Categories				
		0	0	0+	1	1
		Lateral Facing	Rearward Facing	Rearward Facing	Forward Facing	Rearward Facing
		0–10 kg (0–22lb)	0–10 kg (0–22lb)	0–13 kg (0–29lb)	9–18 kg (20–40lb)	9–18 kg (20–40lb)
	Fixture.	X	R1 ¹	R1, R2X, R2, R3 ¹	F2, F2X, F3 ¹	R2X, R2, R3 ¹
	Size type.	X	IL	IL	IL, IUF	IL
Rear center seat.	Size class.	No ISOFIX				
	Size type.					

¹ The size class and fixture are defined for both universal and semi-universal child restraint systems. You can see the identification letters on ISOFIX child restraints.

IL Suitable for use with particular ISOFIX child restraint systems in the semi-universal category. Refer to the child restraint system manufacturer vehicle recommendation list for additional information.

IUF Suitable for use with forward facing ISOFIX child restraint systems in the universal category.

i-Size Child Restraints

	Front Passenger Seat	Rear Outermost Seats	Rear Center Seat
Rearward facing child restraint systems on front passenger seat with airbag ON .	X	-	-
i-Size child restraint systems.	X	i-U	X
Suitable booster fixture.	B2, B3 ¹	B2, B3 ¹	B2, B3 ¹

¹ The fixture is defined for booster child restraint systems. You can see the identification letters on i-Size boosters.

i-U Suitable for use with forward and rearward facing i-Size child restraint systems.

X Not suitable for use with i-Size child restraint systems.

Child Safety

CHILD RESTRAINTS RECOMMENDATION

Mass Group Categories	Manufacturer	Model	Attachment
0+ 0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	Britax Römer.	Baby Safe Plus with ISOFIX base. ¹	ISOFIX base or seatbelt only.
1 9–18 kg (20–40 lb)	Britax Römer.	Duo Plus. ¹	ISOFIX and top tether anchors or seatbelt only.
2 15–25 kg (33–55 lb)	Britax Römer.	KidFix. ^{1,2}	ISOFIX and seatbelt or seatbelt only.
3 22–36 kg (49–79 lb)	Britax Römer.	KidFix. ^{1,2}	ISOFIX and seatbelt or seatbelt only.

¹We recommend that you secure children using an ISOFIX child restraint on the rear outermost seats.

²We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only.

See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child restraints.

Child Safety

INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS



WARNING: Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are installing a child restraint.

Note: Always follow the manufacturer's instructions for installing a child restraint with a top tether.



WARNING: Do not attach the top tether strap to anything other than the correct top tether strap anchor point.



WARNING: Make sure that the top tether strap is not slack or twisted and is properly located on the anchor point.



WARNING: If you use a child restraint that has a support leg, make sure the support leg rests securely on the floor.



WARNING: Make sure the child restraint rests tightly against the vehicle seat. You may need to adjust the seats to properly secure the child restraint. Make sure that the seat backrest is in an upright position. It may also be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint.

When using a child restraint on a front seat, follow these seat positioning guidelines:

- The child restraint must not be in contact with the instrument panel.
- Position the passenger seat as far rearward as possible and route the seatbelt forward and downward from the B-pillar region to the child restraint.
- If it proves difficult to tighten the lap section of the seatbelt without slack remaining, adjust the seat backrest to the fully upright position and raise the height of the seat.

Note: When using a child restraint on a rear seat, adjust the front seat to a position to prevent contact with the child's feet or legs.

INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS

BOOSTER SEATS

Booster Seat



Secure children that weigh greater than 15 kg (33 lb) but are less than 150 cm (60 in) tall in a booster seat or on a booster cushion.

We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult seatbelt over the center of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across their hips.

Booster Cushion



WARNING: When using a booster cushion, make sure you adjust the vehicle head restraint on that seating position.

Child Safety



Secure children that weigh greater than 22 kg (49 lb) but are less than 150 cm (60 in) tall on a booster cushion.

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS



WARNING: You cannot open the rear doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.



The control is on the driver door. It enables both the child safety locks and the rear window locks.

Press the control to switch the child safety locks and the rear window lock on. Press the control again to switch them off. A light on the control illuminates when you switch them on.

The child lock and rear window lock settings remain active when you switch your vehicle off.

Note: To make sure the child safety lock is on, pull the inside door handle twice to verify the door does not open.

Note: To open the rear doors from inside the vehicle when the child lock is engaged, roll down the rear window and use the outside door handle. Or have someone outside the vehicle open the door.

Child Safety

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS – TROUBLESHOOTING

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Child Lock malfunction See manual	Try to switch the child safety locks on again. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Seatbelts

SEATBELT PRECAUTIONS



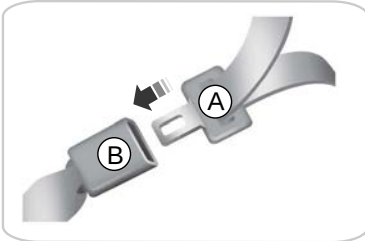
WARNING: Make sure that the seatbelts are securely stowed away when not in use and not outside your vehicle when closing the doors.



WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the seatbelt from retracting correctly. This could cause the seatbelt to become slack which could increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

FASTENING AND UNFASTENING THE SEATBELTS

All seatbelts in your vehicle are a three-point combination lap and shoulder seatbelt.



- A Seatbelt tongue.
- B Seatbelt buckle.

1. Pull the seatbelt out steadily.

Note: It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.

2. Insert the tongue into the buckle.
3. Pull the seatbelt tight to remove any slack.

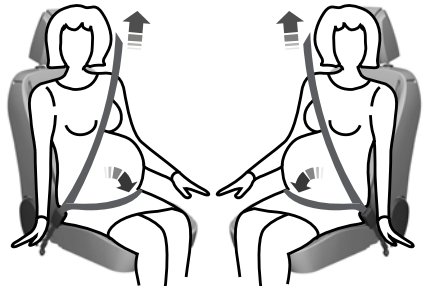
Unfastening the Seatbelts

1. Press the red button on the buckle to release the seatbelt.
2. Hold the seatbelt tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.

ADJUSTING THE SEATBELTS DURING PREGNANCY



WARNING: Position the seatbelt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap.



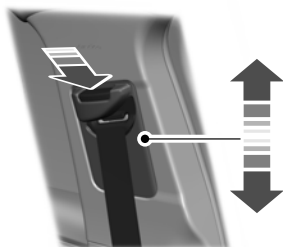
Seatbelts

Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

ADJUSTING THE SEATBELT HEIGHT



WARNING: Position the seatbelt height adjuster so that the seatbelt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the seatbelt correctly could reduce its effectiveness and increase the risk of injury in a crash.



1. Press the button and slide the height adjuster up or down.
2. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

SEATBELT REMINDER

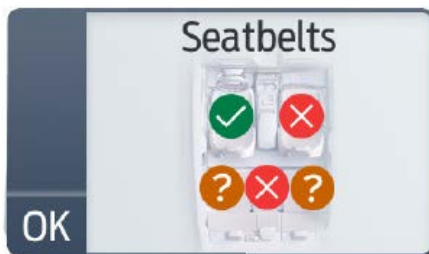
SEATBELT REMINDER INDICATORS



This lamp illuminates if you do not fasten your seatbelt when you switch the power on. The lamp switches off when you fasten your seatbelt.

When the initial warning expires for the driver, more warnings are provided for the driver and front passenger. This lamp illuminates if you or your front passenger do not fasten the seatbelt buckle and the vehicle speed exceeds 22 km/h (14 mph).

Note: To avoid inadvertent warnings, do not place large objects on the front passenger seat.



This warning displays if an occupant unfastens the rear seatbelt buckle or it becomes unfastened.

Note: If a rear seat is unoccupied, or an occupant never fastens the seatbelt buckle to begin with, the warning will not display.

Note: Front seating positions appear in this warning display. Warnings for unfastened front seatbelt buckles appear in the initial warning lamp.

Seatbelts

SEATBELT REMINDER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds if you do not fasten your seatbelt when you switch the power on. The tone switches off when you fasten your seatbelt or about one-minute elapses.

When the initial warning expires for the driver, more warnings are provided for the driver and front passenger. This warning tone sounds if you or your front passenger do not fasten the seatbelt buckle and the vehicle speed exceeds 22 km/h (14 mph).

This tone also sounds if an occupant unfastens the rear seatbelt buckle or it becomes unfastened.

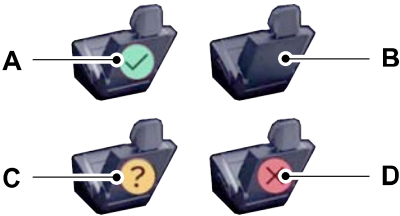
SWITCHING THE SEATBELT REMINDER ON AND OFF

We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Note: Depending on applicable laws in the country your vehicle was built for, this feature may not be available.

CHECKING SEATBELT STATUS

To view the seatbelt status, use the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel.



- A Seatbelt fastened.
- B Seatbelt not fastened.
- C Fault.
- D Seatbelt recently unfastened or for your seat and seats with occupant presence detection not fastened when you start your vehicle.

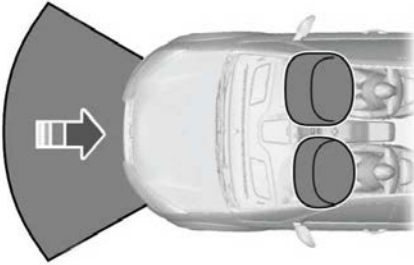
SEATBELTS – TROUBLESHOOTING

SEATBELTS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Rear belt monitor malfunction Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Airbags

HOW DO THE FRONT AIRBAGS WORK



The front airbags are designed to deploy during a significant frontal or near-frontal crash. The airbags inflate within a few thousandths of a second cushioning forward body movement and deflate on contact with the occupant. The airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor frontal crash, rear crash, side crash or a vehicle rollover.

WARNING: Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.



HOW DO THE SIDE AIRBAGS WORK

WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front or rear seatbacks, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

WARNING: To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the airbag.

The side airbags are on the outermost side of each front and rear seat backrest.

There is a label attached to the side of each backrest to indicate this.



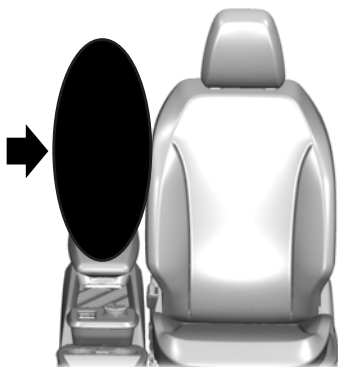
Airbags

These airbags are designed to inflate between the door panel and the occupant to enhance the protection in certain crashes.

They are designed to deploy during a significant lateral crash. They could also deploy during a significant frontal crash, or a vehicle rollover. They are not designed to deploy during a minor lateral or frontal crash, or a rear crash.

Center Mounted Side Airbag

The center mounted side airbag is on the innermost side of the driver seat. There is a label attached to the side of the backrest to indicate this.



This airbag is designed to deploy during a significant lateral crash. It could also deploy during a significant frontal crash or a vehicle rollover. The airbag reduces contact between the driver and front seat passenger in side impacts and rollovers. The airbag is not designed to deploy during a minor lateral or frontal crash, or a rear crash.

HOW DO THE KNEE AIRBAGS WORK



WARNING: Do not attempt to open the airbag cover.

The driver knee airbag deploys during significant frontal and near frontal crashes that are up to 30° from the left or the right. The airbag inflates within a few thousandths of a second and deflates on contact with the occupants, thus providing a cushion between the driver's knees and the steering column. During overturns, rear crashes and side crashes, the knee airbag will not deploy.

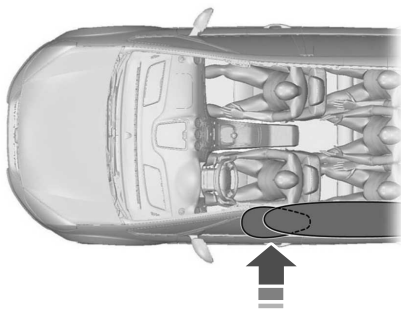
Note: *The airbag has a lower deployment threshold than the front airbags. During a minor crash, it is possible that only the knee airbag deploys.*

HOW DOES THE SAFETY CANOPY™ WORK



WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

Airbags



The airbags are above the front and rear side windows.

The airbags deploy during significant side crashes or when a certain likelihood of a rollover event is detected by the rollover sensor. In certain sideways crashes or rollover events, the airbags will be activated, regardless of which seats are occupied.

AIRBAG PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.



WARNING: Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and seatbelts must be carried out by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. Objects could become projectiles during airbag deployment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not poke sharp objects into areas where airbags are fitted. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.



WARNING: Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

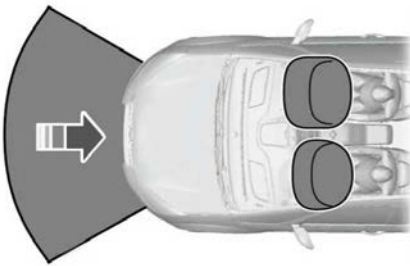
Airbags



WARNING: If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: A loud bang sounds and there is a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.

SWITCHING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG ON AND OFF



The airbag is designed to deploy during a significant frontal or near-frontal crash. The airbag inflates within a few thousandths of a second cushioning forward body movement and deflates on contact with the occupant. The airbag is not designed to deploy during a minor frontal crash, rear crash, side crash or a vehicle rollover.

Switching the Passenger Airbag Off



WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.

The switch is on the passenger side end of the instrument panel. The passenger airbag deactivation indicator is in the center console.



1. Insert the key blade into the key slot.



2. Turn the key to **OFF**.

Airbags

- When you switch the power on, check that the passenger airbag **OFF** indicator illuminates. If it does not illuminate when you switch the power on, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Switching the Passenger Airbag On



WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag on following the removal of the child restraint.

- Insert the key blade into the key slot.



- Turn the key to **ON**.
- When you switch the power on, check that the passenger airbag **ON** indicator illuminates. If it does not illuminate when you switch the power on, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

AIRBAGS – TROUBLESHOOTING

AIRBAGS – WARNING LAMPS



If it does not illuminate when you switch the power on, continues to flash or remains on when your vehicle is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

AIRBAGS – AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Sounds when the airbag warning lamp is not working.

Pedestrian Protection

WHAT IS PEDESTRIAN PROTECTION

An advanced safety system that protects pedestrians during an impact with the vehicle. The bumper has sensors that can detect a pedestrian impact and trigger the deployable hood.

HOW DOES PEDESTRIAN PROTECTION WORK



The deployable hood system releases the hood hinges and raises the rear edge of the hood by about 10 cm (4 in). This increases the gap between the hood and the components within the front compartment. It provides additional cushioning in case the pedestrian makes contact with the hood.

The system has caution labels under the hood near the hood lifters.



These labels show the location of the hood lifters for service and emergency personnel.

The system is active when you drive between 20 km/h (12 mph) and 50 km/h (31 mph).

After an impact that has activated the system, the hood rises and remains permanently attached to the vehicle, by the hood hinges and latch. Do not drive the vehicle when the hood has been deployed. If the deployable hood system has been activated, stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, and transport the vehicle to the nearest authorized dealer.

You can open the hood using the hood latch after the deployable hood has been triggered. Make sure the hood is securely closed and latched before transporting the vehicle.

Note: Do not add any equipment to the front of the vehicle that is not authorized by us. This may include hood supports, hood pins or push bars.

PEDESTRIAN PROTECTION PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not drive your vehicle if the hood has been deployed.

Pedestrian Protection



WARNING: Do not place your hand or objects or mount equipment on or near the hood lifters that may come into contact with a deploying hood lifter. Failure to follow these instructions may cause serious injury during a deployment.



WARNING: Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the deployable hood system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: If the deployable hood system activates, it will not function again. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

PEDESTRIAN PROTECTION INDICATORS



If a fault is detected in the system, the monitoring system turns on the readiness indicator in the instrument cluster.

If the readiness lamp is lit, do not attempt to repair or service the system. Take your vehicle immediately to a qualified technician.

Pedestrian Alert System

WHAT IS THE PEDESTRIAN ALERT SYSTEM

Due to the quiet operation of hybrid and electric vehicles at low speeds, the system creates a subtle sound to alert pedestrians.

The system is on when your vehicle is running and not in park (P). Some sound may be audible in the passenger compartment.

WHAT IS ECALL

eCall is an emergency call system that complies with European Union Regulation (EU) 2015/758. See **eCall User Information** (page 436).

The system uses the public cell phone network to initiate a call to the public emergency services when activated automatically in a severe accident or manually by the vehicle occupants.

eCall is designed for emergency calls in case of severe accidents or other emergencies that require the emergency services. It does not support other voice calls.

HOW DOES ECALL WORK

If an accident results in an attempt to deploy an airbag, excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable seatbelts, or to shut off the fuel pump, or to deactivate the high voltage battery, the system initiates a call to the emergency services. This call cannot be canceled.

In the case of an emergency, the system, as a means of communication aid, can help you contact specific rescue departments of public emergency services. The system does not deploy the rescue operations. The local public emergency service deploys specific rescue operations according to the actual situation.

During an emergency call, the system transmits vehicle data to the emergency service. See **Emergency Call System Data** (page 22).

Note: *If the transmission is unsuccessful, this could result in the emergency operator not receiving your vehicle data.*

Note: *If the system is unable to initiate a call to the emergency services, a voice prompt plays and the emergency call indicator illuminates.*

EMERGENCY CALL REQUIREMENTS

The system only operates in areas with a compatible cell phone network and emergency services infrastructure.

EMERGENCY CALL LIMITATIONS

Not all accidents activate the system. If an accident does trigger the system, it initiates a call to the emergency services. Do not wait for the system to initiate a call if you are able to do so. Call emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear the system within five seconds of the accident, the system could be non-functional.

Using a non-Ford audio system could result in the system not properly operating.

MANUALLY MAKING AN EMERGENCY CALL



WARNING: Use caution when making a manual emergency call when driving.

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press the SOS symbol on the overhead console to open the emergency call button cover.

3. Press the emergency call button to initiate a call to the emergency services.

Note: Press the button again before the call is connected to cancel it.

4. Speak to the operator.

Note: After completing an emergency call, the emergency operator can call your vehicle. The system automatically answers incoming calls for approximately an hour.

EMERGENCY CALL INDICATORS



WARNING: If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



The indicator is integrated into the emergency call button cover on the overhead console.

It illuminates brightly for a short time when you switch the ignition on.

Emergency Call Indicator Status	Description
Indicator off.	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Dimmed red.	Normal operation.
Rapidly flashing.	The system is initiating an emergency call.
Moderately flashing.	The system is transmitting vehicle data to the emergency services.
Slowly flashing.	The system is connected to the emergency services and communication is established.
Bright red.	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

CHANGING THE BACKUP BATTERY

The system has a backup battery and indicates when it needs to be changed. We recommend that you have the battery changed by an authorized dealer.

ECALL – TROUBLESHOOTING

ECALL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Emergency Call System malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Keys and Remote Controls

REMOTE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

A valid remote control must be within one of the three external detection ranges. These are approximately 1 m (3 ft) from the front door handles and the tailgate.

The system could not function if:

- The remote control remains stationary for about a minute.
- The vehicle battery has no charge.
- The remote control battery has no charge.
- The remote control frequencies are jammed.
- The remote control is too close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



WARNING: Do not leave a key or remote control unattended in the vehicle. Children or pets could operate the power windows, moonroof or other controls. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use your remote control to access various vehicle systems.

Note: *The buttons on your remote may vary depending on the vehicle region or options.*

One-Stage Unlocking



Press the button to unlock all doors. See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control** (page 56).

Two-Stage Unlocking



Press the button to unlock the driver's door. Press the button again within three seconds to unlock all doors. See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control** (page 56).

Lock



Press the button to lock all doors. See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control** (page 56).

Front Luggage Compartment



Press the button twice within three seconds to open the front luggage compartment. See **Opening the Frunk Using the Remote Control** (page 268).

Liftgate



Press the button twice within three seconds to open the liftgate. See **Opening the Liftgate Using the Remote Control** (page 68).

LOCATING YOUR VEHICLE



Press the lock button twice within three seconds. The turn signal lamps flash. We recommend you use this method to locate your vehicle.

Keys and Remote Controls

CHANGING THE REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY

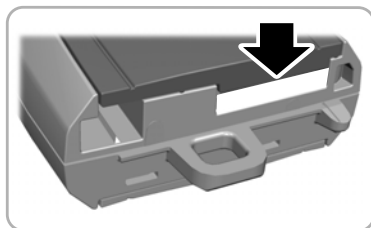


WARNING: Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.



WARNING: If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

The remote control uses one coin-type 3-volt lithium battery, CR2450, or equivalent.

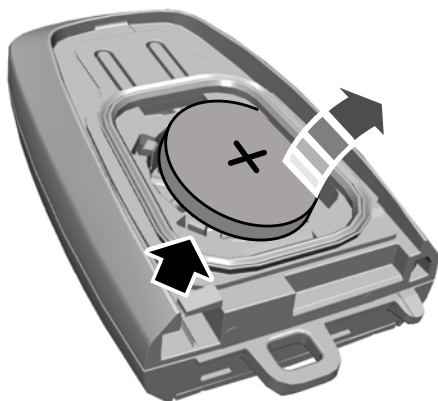


2. Twist a thin coin under the tab hidden behind the key blade head to remove the battery cover.



1. Push the release button and pull the key blade out.

Keys and Remote Controls



REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

You can purchase replacement keys or remote controls from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle.

PROGRAMMING THE REMOTE CONTROL

Contact an authorized dealer to program remote controls for your vehicle.

3. Insert a screwdriver in the position shown and carefully remove the battery.
4. Insert a new battery with the + facing upward.
5. Reinstall the battery cover onto the remote control and install the key blade.



Note: Refer to local regulations before you dispose of the remote control batteries.

Note: Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

Note: Replacing the remote control battery does not erase the programmed key from your vehicle. The remote control operates as normal.

Note: A message appears in the information display when the remote control battery is low.

Phone as a Key

WHAT IS PHONE AS A KEY

Phone as a Key allows you to use your phone in place of a passive key.

You can use your phone for the following functions:

- Remote locking and unlocking.
- Passive entry and exit.
- Passive start and drive the vehicle.
- Remote start.
- Memory function recall.

PHONE AS A KEY LIMITATIONS

Limitations can vary based on the make and model of your phone, phone location and physical obstructions.

The following items could impact Phone as a Key performance or prevent functionality in some cases:

- The typical operating range for Phone as a Key is 40 m (131 ft).
- Your **Bluetooth®** connection is not enabled, is disrupted, or out of range.
- Phone as a Key is not active or enabled on at least one phone.
- Your vehicle battery has depleted.
- Your phone battery has depleted.
- Interference from other devices using radio frequencies or physical obstructions.
- Your phone is too close to metal objects or other electronic devices.

Note: Do not leave a duplicate coded key in the vehicle. Always take your keys and phone and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle.

PROGRAMMING YOUR PHONE

To program your device as Phone as a Key:

1. Visit your device's app store to download the Ford app.
2. Create a new account or sign in to an existing account on the Ford app.
3. Add the vehicle identification number to your account and follow the prompts in the Ford app to complete the authorization process.
4. After the authorization is complete, you can set up Phone as a Key following the prompts in the Ford app.
5. After Phone as a Key is set up, you can set up the backup start passcode by following the prompts on your touchscreen.

Note: Keep your new backup start passcode with you in case of an emergency.

Resetting Phone as a Key

1. From the settings menu, press General. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Press Reset.
3. Press the app connect reset option.
4. Press Reset All.
5. Confirm you would like to continue with erasing all Phone as a Key settings, keys and backup start passcodes.
6. Press Continue.
7. Confirm you are aware you are erasing all authorized users and Ford app connect settings.
8. Press Continue.

Phone as a Key

USING THE VALET MODE

Classic Valet Mode

Enabling Valet Mode

Make sure the remote control is in your vehicle.

1. From the settings menu, press Valet Mode. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Enter a four digit code to lock the touchscreen.
3. Re-enter the same four digit code to complete enabling valet mode.

Disabling Valet Mode

1. Press Exit Valet Mode.
2. Enter your four digit code to disable valet mode and unlock your touchscreen.

Enhanced Valet Mode

Enabling Valet Mode

Have your backup start passcode completely set up before using valet mode. See **Programming Your Phone** (page 52).

Note: *If your vehicle detects a remote control, the system defaults to classic valet mode.*

1. From the settings menu, press Valet Mode. See **Center Display** (page 360).

Note: *If the system detects a valid phone as a key, a valet passcode displays on both the touchscreen and mobile app.*

Note: *If the system does not detect a valid phone as a key, it prompts you to enter your backup start passcode on the touchscreen. Once validated, a valet passcode displays on the touchscreen.*

2. Provide the valet the first seven digits of the valet passcode to enter on the keyless entry keypad to unlock your vehicle.
3. Provide the valet the ten-digit valet passcode to enter on the touchscreen to start and drive your vehicle.

Disabling Valet Mode

1. Press Exit Valet Mode.

Note: *If the system detects a valid phone as a key, valet mode disables.*

Note: *If the system does not detect a valid phone as a key, it prompts you to enter your backup start passcode. Once validated, valet mode disables.*

USING THE BACKUP START PASSCODE

Make sure you have phone as a key active on at least one phone to use a previously created backup start passcode. See **Programming Your Phone** (page 52).

1. Press the brake pedal and the push button start. If the system does not detect a valid phone as a key or remote control, a message appears on the touchscreen and prompts you for your backup start passcode.

Note: *The touchscreen times out after 30 seconds with no interaction.*

Note: *If the backup start passcode screen does not appear, press the brake pedal and push button start again.*

2. Use the touchscreen to enter your backup start passcode.
3. After entering your passcode, press return within 30 seconds.
4. Once the system validates the backup start passcode, a message alerts you to start your vehicle.

Phone as a Key

5. Press the brake pedal and the push button start within 20 seconds to start the vehicle.
6. If your vehicle does not start, repeat steps 1-5.

System Lockout

The system locks after five combined incorrect attempts of the following:

- Entering a backup start passcode.
- Resetting a current passcode.
- Entering a valet mode passcode.

Note: *The system remains locked for five minutes. After five minutes the system allows codes to be entered again.*

PHONE AS A KEY – TROUBLESHOOTING

PHONE AS A KEY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

How can I tell if my vehicle has Phone as a Key?

- The vehicle's touchscreen shows the Phone as a Key reset option.
- Additional control buttons appear on the home screen of the Ford app if you have already set up Phone as a Key on your vehicle through the Ford app.

What happens if I cannot unlock the vehicle with Phone as a Key?

- Attempt to move your phone closer to the vehicle.
- Check that the Ford app is still running and that the Phone as a Key control screen shows **Bluetooth®** is connected. If the phone is connected, attempt to press the remote unlock button in the Ford app. If the phone is not connected or the remote unlock button does not work in the Ford app, attempt to force close and restart the app.

Why do I get a No Key Detected message in the instrument cluster display when I am using Phone as a Key and my phone is in the car?

- Your phone's **Bluetooth®** connection has been disrupted or is not connected. Try reconnecting your phone's **Bluetooth®** connection.
- Move the phone closer to the center of the vehicle near the cup holder or center console.
- Verify Phone as a Key is still active, enabled and has not been revoked.

What do I do if my phone is lost, damaged or the battery has depleted?

- Use the backup start passcode that you created. See **Using the Backup Start Passcode** (page 53).

How many phones can I use for Phone as a Key?

- You can program and activate up to four phones with Phone as a Key to control your vehicle.

Phone as a Key

How does a valet drive my car if I only use Phone as a Key?

- Have the valet use the temporary valet passcode that you created. See **Using the Valet Mode** (page 53).

I uninstalled my Ford app and reinstalled it. Why am I not able to set up Phone as a Key again?

- Using the key list in the Ford app remove the key that was previously associated with your phone.
- Reset Phone as a Key from your vehicle, and then set up Phone as a Key again. See **Programming Your Phone** (page 52).

Why can I not remotely start the vehicle with Phone as a Key?

- Using the Ford app, verify your Phone as a Key setup is complete and **Bluetooth®** is connected on at least one phone. If Phone as a Key setup is not complete, complete the setup as prompted from the Ford app. See **Programming Your Phone** (page 52).

Doors and Locks

OPERATING THE DOORS FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE REMOTE CONTROL

You can only use the remote control when your vehicle is stationary.

Unlocking the Doors



Press the button to unlock all doors. One long flash of the turn signal lamps confirms that your vehicle has unlocked.

Locking the Doors



Press the button to lock all doors. One short flash of the turn signal lamps confirms that your vehicle has locked.

Note: For more information on operating the doors from outside your vehicle See *Keyless Entry* (page 60).

DOUBLE LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



WARNING: Do not use double locking when passengers or animals are inside your vehicle. The doors cannot be unlocked or opened from the inside when double locked.

Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside. You can only double lock the doors if all the doors are closed.



Press the button twice within three seconds. Three short flashes of the direction indicators confirm that your vehicle has double locked.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE DOORS

Note: For more information on operating the doors from outside your vehicle See *Keyless Entry* (page 60).

OPERATING THE DOORS FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE CENTRAL LOCKING

The power door lock control is on the front doors.



Press the button to unlock all doors.



Press the button to lock all doors.

Note: The central locking only operates if the front doors are fully closed.

OPENING THE DOORS FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

Pull the interior door handle twice to unlock and open a rear door. The first pull unlocks the door and the second pull opens the door.

Doors and Locks

AUTOUNLOCK

WHAT IS AUTOUNLOCK

Autounlock is a feature that centrally unlocks the vehicle doors when your vehicle comes to a stop and you open the driver door.

AUTOUNLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Autounlock unlocks all the doors after:

1. The vehicle speed exceeds 20 km/h (12 mph).
2. Your vehicle comes to a stop.
3. You open the driver door.

Note: Autounlock operates for only 10 minutes after the ignition is switched off.

AUTOLOCK

WHAT IS AUTOLOCK

Autolock is a locking feature that centrally locks your vehicle doors when driving.

AUTOLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Autolock locks all the doors when all of the following occur:

- All doors are closed.
- The vehicle is on.
- Your vehicle reaches a speed greater than 20 km/h (12 mph).

MISLOCK

WHAT IS MISLOCK

Mislock is a locking feature that warns you if your vehicle has not locked.

MISLOCK LIMITATIONS

When you press the lock button once, the turn signals do not flash if:

- Any door or the liftgate is open.
- The hood is open.

SWITCHING MISLOCK ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Press Locks.
3. Switch Mislock on or off.

DOORS AND LOCKS AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Door Ajar Audible Warning

Sounds when any front door is not fully closed and your vehicle is moving.

DOORS AND LOCKS – TROUBLESHOOTING

DOORS AND LOCKS – WARNING LAMPS

Door Ajar Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the vehicle on and remains on if any door is open.

Doors and Locks

DOORS AND LOCKS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

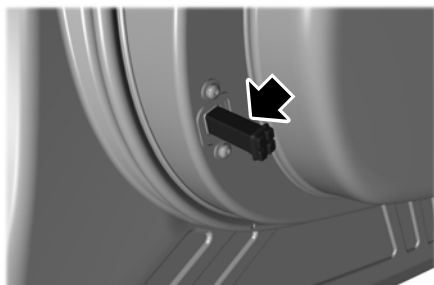
Message	Details
Driver door open	Displays if a door is open. Fully close the door.
Passenger door open	
Rear left door open	
Rear right door open	
Bonnet open	Displays if a hood is open. Fully close the hood.

Doors and Locks

DOORS AND LOCKS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

How to unlock my vehicle if the 12 volt battery is dead?

You must apply 12 volt power to the 12 volt system. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 287).



How to close my door if the actuator is extended?

Apply pressure by pushing the outside of the door until the door closes.

Keyless Entry

WHAT IS KEYLESS ENTRY

The system allows you to lock and unlock your vehicle without taking the passive key out of your pocket or purse.

KEYLESS ENTRY LIMITATIONS

Make sure your remote control is within 1 m (3 ft) of the front door handles and liftgate.

The system could not function if:

- The remote control remains stationary for about a minute.
- The vehicle battery has no charge.
- The remote control battery has no charge.
- There is interference causing issues with the remote control frequencies.
- The remote control is too close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

KEYLESS ENTRY SETTINGS

Reprogramming the Unlocking Function (If Equipped)

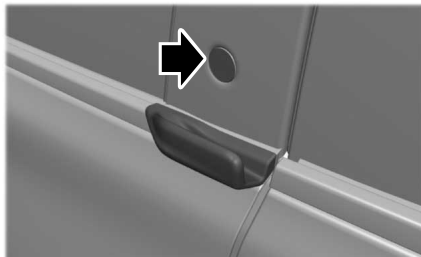
You can enable the two-stage unlocking function allowing you to unlock only the driver door when you touch the unlock sensor.

Press and hold both the lock and unlock buttons on the remote control for four seconds to disable or enable two-stage unlocking.

If you program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks, you can unlock all of the other doors from inside your vehicle using the power door lock control. You can unlock individual doors by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.

USING KEYLESS ENTRY

Unlocking the Doors



With your passive key or authorized phone within 1 m (3 ft) of your vehicle, gently press the touchpad on the door window trim to unlock and open the door.

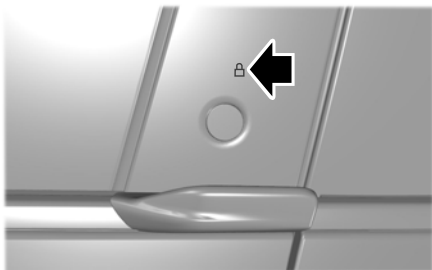
Opening the Liftgate with Passive Key



Press the exterior liftgate release button inside of the liftgate handle. The liftgate unlocks and opens. See **Opening the Liftgate From Outside Your Vehicle** (page 73).

Keyless Entry

Locking the Doors



With your remote control or authorized phone within 1 m (3 ft) of your vehicle, touch the lock icon on the driver door window trim to lock the door. The keyless entry system requires a brief delay to authenticate your device.

Note: *The door activation switch flashes one time to indicate the vehicle locks.*

Note: *Do not use the outside door handle as a roof cargo strap.*

Double Locking

With your remote control or authorized phone within 1 m (3 ft) of your vehicle, touch the lock icon twice within three seconds to double lock your vehicle.

KEYLESS ENTRY – TROUBLESHOOTING

KEYLESS ENTRY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the keyless entry system not function?

If the system does not function it may be limited. See **Keyless Entry Limitations** (page 60). If the system still does not function use the remote control or the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.

Why can I not lock my vehicle?

If you electronically lock your vehicle with a rear door or the liftgate open, the system searches for a passive key inside your vehicle after you close the last door. If the system detects a key, all doors unlock indicating that a key is inside. Your vehicle locks if another passive key is within the detection range after you close the last door.

Why does the passive key not work?

The system deactivates passive keys left inside your vehicle when you lock it. You cannot switch the ignition on using a deactivated passive key. Press the unlock button on the remote control to reactivate a passive key.

Keyless Entry Keypad

WHAT IS THE KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD

The keyless entry keypad allows you to lock and unlock your vehicle using the keypad on the window trim.

KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD LIMITATIONS

The system may not function if:

- The vehicle battery has no charge.

LOCATING THE KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD

The keypad is near the driver window and illuminates when you press it.



KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD MASTER ACCESS CODE

What Is the Master Access Code

The master access code is a factory-set seven-digit entry code. You can operate the keypad with the master access code at any time. The master access code can be displayed in the instrument cluster display.

Displaying the Master Access Code in the Instrument Cluster Display

Read and understand the following before you begin the process.

- You must have two keys inside your vehicle.
- Make sure that you close all the doors and that they remain closed throughout the procedure.
- Do not place the device on the wireless accessory charging area during the procedure.

Note: Perform all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence. If you perform any of the steps out of sequence, stop and wait for at least one minute before starting again.

1. Turn the vehicle off.
2. Place the first key into the backup slot. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position** (page 135).
3. Turn on the vehicle, without pressing the brake pedal, and wait for a few seconds.
4. Turn off the vehicle and replace the first key with the second key.
5. Turn on the vehicle, without pressing the brake pedal.

The master access code appears in the instrument cluster display for a few seconds.

Note: The code may not display until after other warning messages display.

KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD PERSONAL ACCESS CODES

Programming a Personal Entry Code

1. Enter the factory-set seven-digit code.
2. Press **1-2** on the keypad within five seconds.

Keyless Entry Keypad

3. Enter your personal seven-digit code.
You must do this within five seconds of completing Step 2.
4. Press **1-2** on the keypad to save personal code 1.

The doors lock then unlock to confirm that programming was successful.

To program additional personal entry codes, repeat Steps 1 through 3, then for Step 4:

- Press **3-4** to save personal code 2.
- Press **5-6** to save personal code 3.
- Press **7-8** to save personal code 4.
- Press **9-0** to save personal code 5.

If your vehicle comes with an operating system, you can also program the system with a personal entry code.

Note: *Programming a code using the operating system overwrites any code that was already saved on position 9-0 of the keypad.*

Hints:

- Do not set a code that uses seven of the same number.
- Do not use seven numbers in sequential order.
- The factory-set code works even if you have set your own personal code.

Erasing a Personal Code

1. Enter the factory-set seven-digit code.
2. Press and release **1-2** on the keypad within five seconds.
3. Press and hold **1-2** for two seconds.
You must do this within five seconds of completing Step 2.

All personal codes erase and only the factory-set seven-digit code works.

Anti-Scan Feature

The keypad goes into an anti-scan mode if you enter the wrong code seven times. This mode turns off the keypad for one minute and the keypad lamp flashes.

The anti-scan feature turns off after:

- One minute of keypad inactivity.
- You press the unlock button on the remote control.
- You switch the ignition on.
- You unlock your vehicle using intelligent access.

USING THE KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD

Unlocking the Driver Door



Enter the factory-set seven-digit code or your personal code. You must press each number within five seconds of each other.

Note: *All doors unlock if the two-stage unlocking feature is disabled. See **Keyless Entry Settings** (page 60).*

Keyless Entry Keypad

Unlocking All Doors

Enter the factory-set code or your personal code, then press 3-4 within five seconds.

To Release the Frunk

Enter the factory-set seven-digit code or your personal code, then press 7-8 within five seconds.

Locking the Doors



Press and hold **7-8** and **9-0** at the same time with the driver door closed.

Note: *You do not need to enter the code first.*

Double Locking

Press and hold **7-8** and **9-0** twice within three seconds with your remote control in range to double lock your vehicle.

If your remote control battery is depleted you can also enter your keypad code first, followed by pressing **7-8** and **9-0** twice within three seconds to double lock your vehicle.

KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD – TROUBLESHOOTING

KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the keypad not accept the access code?

If you enter the access code too fast on the keypad, the unlock function may not work. Slowly re-enter the access code.

Why does the keypad not function?

The keypad goes into an anti-scan mode if you enter a wrong code seven times. The anti-scan mode disables the keypad for one minute and the red light flashes.

Walk Away Lock

WHAT IS WALK AWAY LOCK

Walk away lock is a locking feature that locks the vehicle when you walk away from it with the passive key or authorized phone, or you stay near the vehicle for about two and a half minutes.

2. Press Locks.
3. Switch Walk Away Lock on or off.

HOW DOES WALK AWAY LOCK WORK

Walk away lock locks all the doors when all of the following are met:

- The vehicle is off.
- All doors, hood and luggage compartments have been closed and unlocked.
- Any passive key or authorized phone is not inside the vehicle.
- All passive keys or authorized phones leave the approach detection zone of the vehicle or more than two and a half minutes has elapsed after closing the door.

WALK AWAY LOCK LIMITATIONS

Walk away lock does not lock all the doors when any of following occur:

- The vehicle is on.
- All doors are closed and locked.
- Any of the doors, hood or luggage compartments are open.
- Any passive key or authorized phone is inside the vehicle.

SWITCHING WALK AWAY LOCK ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 360).

Easy Entry and Exit

HOW DOES EASY ENTRY AND EXIT WORK

This feature moves the driver seat rearward up to 5 cm (2 in) when you switch the ignition off. The driver seat returns to its previous position when you switch the ignition on.

SWITCHING EASY ENTRY AND EXIT ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Press Easy Entry/Exit.

If you press any adjustment or memory button when in easy exit mode, the system cancels the operation.

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate

OPENING THE LIFTGATE

OPENING THE LIFTGATE FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

With the transmission in park (P), access the liftgate settings on the touchscreen.

1. From the settings menu, press Controls. See **Center Display** (page 360).

2.



Press the liftgate icon.

Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Do not leave the liftgate open when you are driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

OPENING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

1. Unlock the liftgate using an authorized device.

Note: If an authorized device is within 1 m (3 ft) of the liftgate, the liftgate unlocks when you press the liftgate release button.



2. Press and release the liftgate control button.

Note: Allow the power system to open the liftgate. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction, replicate a strut failure, or damage mechanical components.

Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Switching the Power Liftgate On or Off

You can switch the power liftgate on or off through the vehicle settings on your touchscreen.

When switched off, the liftgate only unlatches and will not power open or close.

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate

OPENING THE LIFTGATE USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



Press the button twice within three seconds.

Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

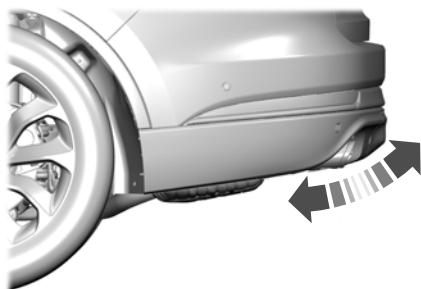
Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

OPENING THE HANDS-FREE LIFTGATE

Make sure you have the authorized device within 1 m (3 ft) of the liftgate.

1. Stand behind your vehicle, and face the liftgate.
2. Move your foot, in a single-kick motion, without pausing, under and away from the rear bumper detection area.



3. The liftgate opens.

Avoid the following actions when using the hands-free opening feature:

- Making physical contact with the bumper.
- Holding your foot under the bumper.
- Sweeping your foot from side to side, or kicking at an odd angle.

Detection Zones



The detection area is in the center of the rear bumper.

Note: Allow the power system to open the liftgate. Manually pulling the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction, replicate a strut failure, or damage mechanical components.

Note: Any physical actions that mimic a kicking motion such as splashing water, trailer chains or vacuum hoses may cause the hands-free liftgate to activate. Switch the power liftgate off through your vehicle settings or keep the authorized device away from the rear bumper detection area.

SETTING THE LIFTGATE OPENING HEIGHT

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Stop the liftgate movement by pressing the control button on the liftgate when it reaches the desired height.

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate

Note: Once the liftgate stops moving, you can manually move it to the desired height.

3. Press and hold the control button on the liftgate until a tone sounds, indicating programming is complete.

Note: You can only use the liftgate control button to program the height.

Note: You cannot program the height if the liftgate position is too low.

4. The power liftgate now opens at the programmed height. To change the programmed height, repeat the steps.

Note: You can fully open the liftgate by manually pushing it upward to the maximum open position if it opens in a lower position.

Note: The system recalls the new programmed height until you reprogram it, even if you disconnect the battery.

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



WARNING: Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before opening or closing the liftgate.

With the transmission in park (P), access the liftgate settings on the touchscreen.

1. From the settings menu, press Controls. See **Center Display** (page 360).



Press the liftgate icon.

Note: Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

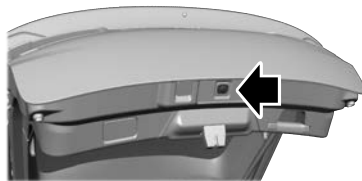
Note: Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate. The liftgate could come into contact with objects too close to your vehicle, for example a wall, garage door or another vehicle. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



WARNING: Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before opening or closing the liftgate.



Press and release the liftgate button. A tone sounds when the liftgate begins to close.

Note: Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate

Note: Make sure you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



WARNING: Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before opening or closing the liftgate.



Press the button twice within three seconds. A tone sounds when the liftgate begins to close.

Note: Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

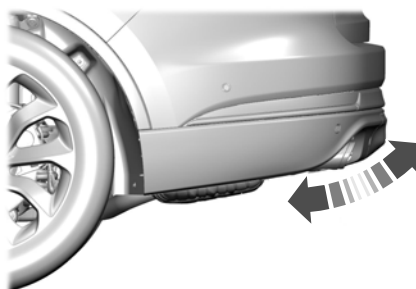
Note: Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.

CLOSING THE HANDS-FREE LIFTGATE

Make sure you have the authorized device within 1 m (3 ft) of the liftgate.

1. Stand behind your vehicle, and face the liftgate.
2. Move your foot, in a single-kick motion, without pausing, under and away from the rear bumper detection area.



3. The liftgate closes.

Note: A tone sounds when the liftgate begins to close.

Avoid the following actions when using the hands-free feature:

- Making physical contact with the bumper.
- Holding your foot under the bumper.
- Sweeping your foot from side to side, or kicking at an odd angle.

Detection Zones



The detection area is in the center of the rear bumper.

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate

Note: Allow the power system to close the liftgate. Manually pushing the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction, replicate a strut failure, or damage mechanical components.

STOPPING THE LIFTGATE MOVEMENT

Note: Do not apply sudden excessive force to the liftgate while it is in motion. This could damage the power liftgate and its components.

Note: Selections will vary depending on region or options.

You can stop the liftgate movement by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the liftgate control button on the liftgate.
- Pressing the liftgate control button inside the vehicle.
- Pressing the liftgate button on the remote control twice.
- Pressing the liftgate button on an authorized device.
- Moving your foot under and away from the center rear bumper in a single-kick motion.

LIFTGATE OBSTACLE DETECTION

Closing the Liftgate

The system stops when it detects an obstacle. A tone sounds and the system reverses to open. Once you remove the obstacle, you can continue to operate the liftgate.

Note: To prevent accidental obstacle detection, let the power liftgate close completely before you enter your vehicle.

Opening the Liftgate

The system stops when it detects an obstacle and a tone sounds. Once you remove the obstacle, you can continue to operate the liftgate.

LIFTGATE – TROUBLESHOOTING

LIFTGATE – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the liftgate is not completely closed.

LIFTGATE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Liftgate open	The liftgate is not completely closed. Close the liftgate.

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate

LIFTGATE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why won't my power liftgate function?

- It can happen in freezing conditions or when parking on downhill slopes.
- Make sure the power liftgate is enabled in the vehicle settings menu.
- Make sure the transmission is in park (P), ensure nothing is obstructing the liftgate path and there is not excessive weight on the liftgate.
- If there are continued issues, the battery voltage may be low or there may be other system issues. See an authorized dealer.

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Manual Liftgate

LIFTGATE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

OPENING THE LIFTGATE

OPENING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



Press the control button to unlatch the liftgate and then lift to open.

Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

OPENING THE LIFTGATE USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



Press the button twice within three seconds. The liftgate unlocks for 45 seconds, during which time you can open the liftgate using the outside control button.

Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Manual Liftgate

that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



A handle is located inside the liftgate to help with closing.

Note: *Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.*

PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

The passive anti-theft system prevents someone from starting your vehicle with an incorrectly coded key.

Note: Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take the keys and lock all the doors when leaving your vehicle.

HOW DOES THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM WORK

The passive anti-theft system arms when you switch your vehicle off.

It disarms when you switch your vehicle on with a correctly coded key.

Note: The system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems.

Note: Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take the keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.

ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The anti-theft alarm system warns you of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle.

HOW DOES THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM WORK

When armed, the anti-theft alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a correctly coded key or remote control.
- If you turn the power on without a correctly coded key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement inside your vehicle.
- If the inclination sensors detect an attempt to raise your vehicle.
- If someone disconnects your vehicle's 12V battery or the battery backup alarm.

If the anti-theft alarm is triggered, the alarm horn sounds for 30 seconds and the turn signals flash for 5 minutes.

Any further attempts to carry out one of the above sounds the alarm again.

WHAT IS THE PERIMETER ALARM

The perimeter alarm is designed to detect unauthorized access to your vehicle.

WHAT ARE THE INTERIOR SENSORS

The interior sensors detect movement inside your vehicle.

The interior sensors are in the overhead console.

Note: Do not cover the interior sensors.

Note: If you set the cabin comfort level for your departure time with the alarm armed, the interior sensors deactivate for the duration of the cabin preconditioning to avoid a false alarm.

Security

WHAT ARE THE INCLINATION SENSORS

The inclination sensor is designed to detect an attempt to raise your vehicle, for example to remove a wheel or to tow it away.

WHAT IS THE BATTERY BACKUP ALARM

The battery backup alarm is an additional alarm sounder that has its own battery. It can detect if your vehicle's 12V battery is disconnected to overcome the alarm system.

ARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The alarm is ready to arm when you switch your vehicle off.

Arm the alarm by locking your vehicle.

DISARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

Disarm the alarm by performing any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors with the remote control or keyless entry feature.
- Switch your vehicle on or start your vehicle.

ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM SETTINGS

WHAT ARE THE ALARM SECURITY LEVELS

You can select two levels of alarm security, motion sensors on and motion sensors off.

Motion Sensors On

Motion sensors on is the standard setting.

In motion sensors on, all equipped sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

Note: *Do not arm the alarm with motion sensors on if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle.*

Motion Sensors Off

In motion sensors off, the interior sensor and the inclination sensor are off when you arm the alarm.

All the other equipped sensors activate when you arm the alarm in this mode.

Note: *Motion sensor settings are turned on each time you start your vehicle.*

SETTING THE ALARM SECURITY LEVEL

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Press Alarm System.
3. Press Motion Sensors and choose a setting.

WHAT IS ASK ON EXIT

You can choose which level of security you require after you switch your vehicle off.

Note: *If you do not choose a setting, the system defaults to all sensors.*

SWITCHING ASK ON EXIT ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Press Alarm System.
3. Press Ask on Exit.
4. Switch Ask on Exit on or off.

Security

SECURITY – TROUBLESHOOTING

SECURITY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
No Key Detected	The system has not detected a correctly coded key.
Starting System Fault	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Vehicle Alarm To Stop Alarm, Start Vehicle.	Displays when the alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry.
Alarm	

Security

SECURITY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What should I do if there is a potential alarm problem with my vehicle?

- Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is a potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

What should I do if my vehicle is unable to start with a correctly coded key?

- Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

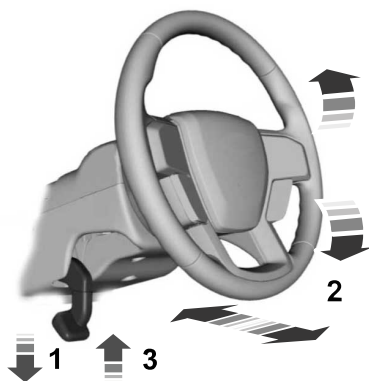
Steering Wheel

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL



WARNING: Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

Note: Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 114).



1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the position you prefer.
3. Lock the steering column.

LOCKING THE STEERING WHEEL

The steering wheel lock locks shortly after you have parked your vehicle and the passive key is outside it.

Note: The steering wheel lock does not lock when the power is on or when your vehicle is moving.

Unlocking the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel lock unlocks when the system detects a valid passive key inside your vehicle. If the steering wheel lock relocks, switch the power on to unlock it.

Note: You may have to slightly rotate the steering wheel to assist unlocking it.



WARNING: Always check that the steering is unlocked before attempting to move your vehicle.

HORN



Press on the center of the steering wheel near the horn icon to activate the horn.

SWITCHING THE HEATED STEERING WHEEL ON AND OFF



WARNING: Use caution when using the heated steering wheel if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, exhaustion or other physical conditions. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, especially if the heated steering wheel is used for long periods of time.



To activate the heated steering wheel, press the button on the touchscreen. An indicator illuminates when the heated steering wheel is on. To turn it off, press the heated steering wheel button again.

Steering Wheel

Note: *The vehicle must be switched on to use the heated steering wheel.*

Note: *A sensor regulates the temperature of the steering wheel.*

Note: *The heated steering wheel may remain on after remote starting your vehicle, depending on the remote start settings. It may also turn on when you start your vehicle if it was on the last time the vehicle was switched off.*

Note: *In warm temperatures, the steering wheel quickly reaches its maximum temperature and the system reduces the current to the heating element. This could cause you to think that the system has stopped working but it has not. This is normal.*

Wipers and Washers

WIPERS

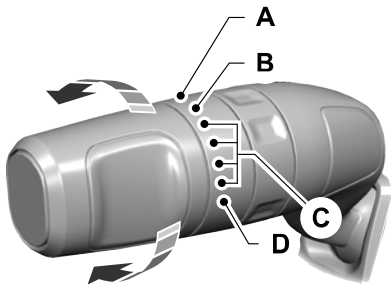
WIPER PRECAUTIONS

Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This could scratch the glass or damage the wiper blades. Use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.

Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

Switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

SWITCHING WINDSHIELD WIPERS ON AND OFF



- A High-speed wipe.
- B Low-speed wipe.
- C Intermittent wipe/Auto wipe.
- D Off.



Use the rotary control to operate the windshield wipers.

AUTOWIPERS

WHAT ARE AUTOWIPERS

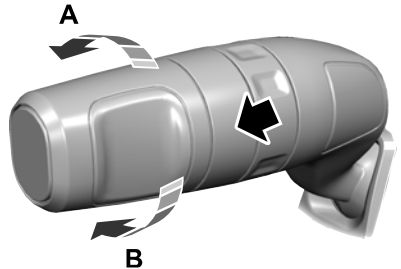
Autowipers turns on and controls the speed and frequency of the windshield wipers.

AUTOWIPERS SETTINGS

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Press Wipers.
3. Switch Rain sensing on or off.

Note: When you switch the feature off, the wipers do not operate based on the rain sensor. When you switch on the windshield wipers to the intermittent wipe position with the feature off, the wipers use the wipe speed set by the rotary control.

ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF THE RAIN SENSOR



- A High sensitivity.
- B Low sensitivity.

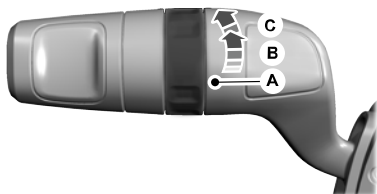
Use the rotary control to set the rain sensor sensitivity.

Wipers and Washers

When you select high sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a small amount of water on the windshield.

When you select low sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a large amount of water on the windshield.

SWITCHING THE REAR WINDOW WIPER ON AND OFF



- A Rear window wiper off.
- B Intermittent wipe.
- C Continuous wipe.



Use the rotary control to operate the rear window wiper.

REVERSE WIPE

WHAT IS REVERSE WIPE

Reverse wipe turns on the rear window wiper when you shift into reverse (R) and the windshield wipers are on.

REVERSE WIPE SETTINGS

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
2. Press Wipers.

3. Switch Rear wiper on or off.

CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES

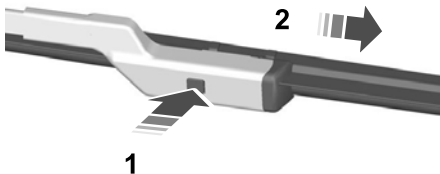


Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

REPLACING THE FRONT WIPER BLADES

Make sure your vehicle is off before beginning this procedure.

Note: Do not manually move the wiper arms to service position, doing so may damage the wiper motor. To place the wiper arms in a service position, switch your vehicle on in accessory mode, switch on the wipers and switch your vehicle off when the wipers are at their highest position.



1. Lift the wiper arm and then press the wiper blade locking button.

Note: Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.

Wipers and Washers

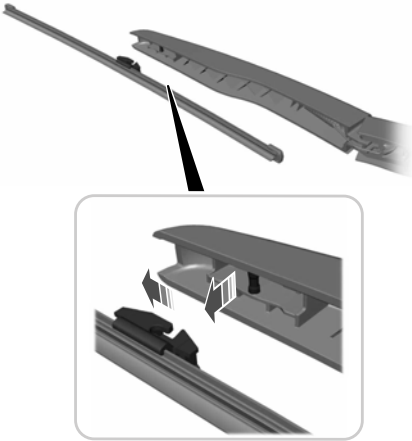
2. Remove the wiper blade.

Note: Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

REPLACING THE REAR WIPER BLADES



1. Lift the wiper arm.

Note: Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.

2. Remove the wiper blade.

Note: Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

WASHERS

WASHER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: If you operate your vehicle in temperatures below 5°C (41°F), use washer fluid with antifreeze protection. Failure to use washer fluid with antifreeze protection in cold weather could result in impaired windshield vision and increase the risk of injury or accident.

Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.

Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

USING THE WINDSHIELD WASHER



Press and hold the button at the end of the lever to operate the windshield washer.

Note: A courtesy wipe occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid when switched on. See **Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and Off** (page 84).

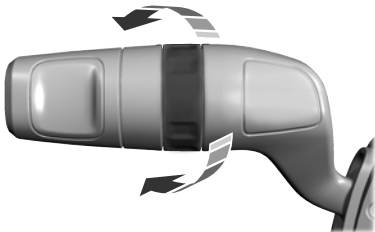
Wipers and Washers

SWITCHING THE COURTESY WIPE ON AND OFF

- 1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 360).
- 2. Press Wipers.
- 3. Switch Courtesy Wipe on or off.

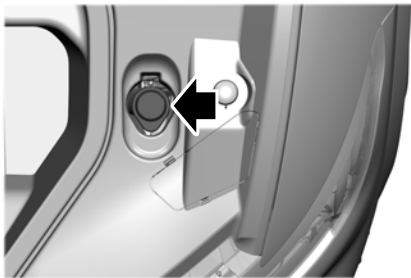
Note: When you switch the feature on, the wipers make an additional single wipe at the end of the washer request. When you switch it off, the wipers finish the current washer request.

USING THE REAR WINDOW WASHER



Rotate the control to the top or bottom position to operate the rear window washer.

ADDING WASHER FLUID



WASHER FLUID SPECIFICATION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill as required.

Materials

Name	Specification
Screen Wash - Winter Premium 55 PU7J-19C544-**	WSS-M8B18-A2

Wipers and Washers

WIPERS AND WASHERS – TROUBLESHOOTING

WIPERS AND WASHERS – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the windshield washer fluid is low.

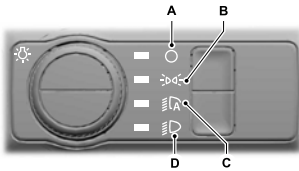
WIPERS AND WASHERS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why are there streaks and smears on the windshield?

- The wiper blades could be dirty, worn or damaged. Check the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 82). If the wiper blades are dirty, clean them with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth. If the wiper blades are worn or damaged, install new ones. See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 82).

Exterior Lighting

EXTERIOR LIGHTING CONTROL



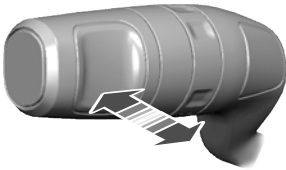
- A Lamps off.
- B Parking lamps on.
- C Autolamps on.
- D Headlamps on.

Rotate the control to make a selection.

Note: The lighting control defaults to autolamps every time you switch your vehicle on.

HEADLAMPS

USING THE HIGH BEAM HEADLAMPS



Push the lever away from you to switch the high beams on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

Slightly pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the headlamps.

Note: Continuous activation only with headlamps on.

SWITCHING HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY ON AND OFF

To switch headlamp exit delay on, pull the turn signal lever toward you when the headlamps are off and the ignition is off. A short tone sounds when the system is on.

To switch headlamp exit delay off, pull the turn signal lever toward you again or switch your vehicle on.

Note: The headlamps turn off after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door closes.

SWITCHING THE HEADLAMPS FOR DRIVING ON THE LEFT OR RIGHT-HAND SIDE OF THE ROAD

The headlamps are designed to support the left or right-hand side driving. You do not need to take any action.

ADJUSTING THE LEVEL OF THE HEADLAMPS

Your vehicle has a dynamic leveling system. The headlamps do not require additional aim adjustment.

HEADLAMP INDICATORS

Lamps On



Illuminates when you switch the low beam headlamps or the parking lamps on.

Exterior Lighting

Headlamp High Beam



Illuminates when you switch the high beam headlamps on.

HEADLAMPS – TROUBLESHOOTING

HEADLAMPS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why is there condensation in the headlamps?

- Headlamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

How much condensation is acceptable?

- The presence of a fine mist or small droplets without streak marks is normal condensation. This may occur under certain environmental conditions and will clear on its own.

How long does it take for the acceptable condensation to clear?

- Clearing time may vary depending on the outside temperature and environment, the drive duration and speed.

How much condensation is unacceptable?

- A water puddle inside the lamp. Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

What should I do if unacceptable condensation is present?

- Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Why do my headlamps turn off when I have them switched on when I switch my vehicle off?

- The battery saver turns the headlamps off after a short period of time after you switch your vehicle off.

AUTOLAMPS

WHAT ARE AUTOLAMPS



WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the headlamps on in low visibility conditions, for example daytime fog.

Autolamps turn the headlamps on in low light situations or when the windshield wipers operate.

AUTOLAMP SETTINGS

Autolamp Exit Delay

You can adjust the amount of time the autolamps remain on after you switch off your vehicle. Use the touchscreen to choose a delay setting.

- From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
- Press Lighting.

Exterior Lighting

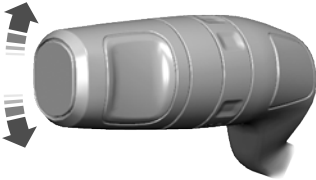
3. Press Autolamp Delay.
4. Select a setting.

Note: If the setting is off, the external lamps switch off immediately when you shut down your vehicle.

Note: You can pull the turn signal toward you to manually switch off the autolamp exit delay.

EXTERIOR LAMPS

USING THE TURN SIGNAL LAMPS



Push the lever up or down to switch the turn signal lamps on.

Set the lever to the middle position to switch the turn signal lamps off.

Note: Tap the lever up or down to make the turn signal lamps flash three times.

Turn Signal Lamp Indicator



It flashes when you switch the turn signal lamps on.

Note: An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed turn signal lamp.

SWITCHING THE DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS ON AND OFF



WARNING: The daytime running lamps system may not activate the rear lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Make sure you switch the headlamps on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.

Daytime running lamps are always on unless you switch on the headlamps.

USING THE REAR FOG LAMPS

To switch the lamps on or off:

1. Set the lighting control to the headlamps or autolamps position.

Note: When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, you cannot switch the rear fog lamps on unless the low beam headlamps are on.

- 2.



Press the button on the lighting control to switch the rear fog lamps on or off.

Note: Only switch the rear fog lamps on during reduced visibility.

Rear Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

Exterior Lighting

SWITCHING WELCOME LIGHTING ON AND OFF

The system turns on the exterior lamps when you approach your vehicle with an authenticated device, unlock your vehicle or interact with any of the doors. If you open or close any door, the lamps stay on for a short period of time to provide courtesy lighting.

Note: *Welcome lighting still displays when you use your remote control to unlock your vehicle or interact with any of the doors.*

To switch the system on or off:

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Press Lighting.
3. Switch Welcome Lighting on or off.

Note: *Depending on your vehicle's configuration, you may not have the option to switch the feature on and off.*

To conserve power, the system may not work when you are approaching your vehicle if:

- The 12-volt battery is low.
- The system was triggered 10 times prior to starting the vehicle.
- The vehicle is left unused for a few days.

EXTERIOR LAMPS ON AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when you open the driver door and the exterior lamps are on.

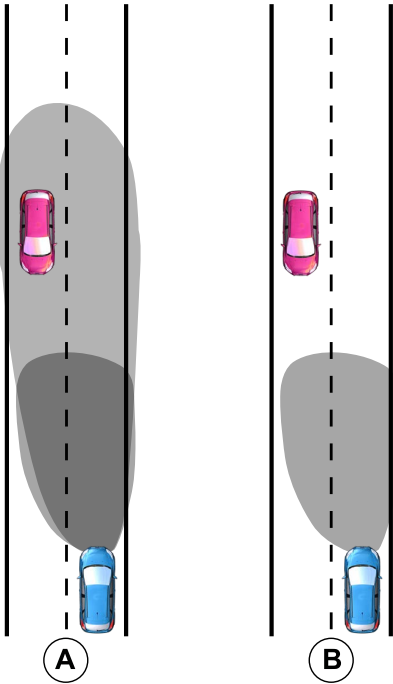
AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL

HOW DOES AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL WORK

Automatic high beam control turns the high beams on if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. If it detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps, or street lighting ahead, the system turns the high beams off.

A camera sensor, centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle, continuously monitors conditions to turn the high beams on and off.

Exterior Lighting



- A Without automatic high beam control.
- B With automatic high beam control.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the high beams on or off.



WARNING: The system may not switch the high beams off if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles, for example guard rails.



WARNING: You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.



WARNING: In situations with poor visibility, such as fog, heavy rain or other inclement weather, you may need to override or completely switch off the system.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

The system turns the high beams on if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough that you require high beams.
- There is no traffic in front of your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The system turns the high beams off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- The ambient light level is high enough that you do not require high beams.
- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or a leading vehicle's tail lamps.

Exterior Lighting

- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).

Note: The deactivation speed may be lower on curves.

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL ON AND OFF

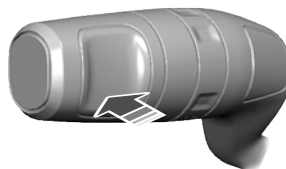
1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Press Lighting.
3. Switch Auto High Beam on or off.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL



Push the lever away from you to switch the high beams on.

Push the lever away from you again to switch the high beams off.

Push the lever away from you for a third time to switch automatic high beam control back on.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

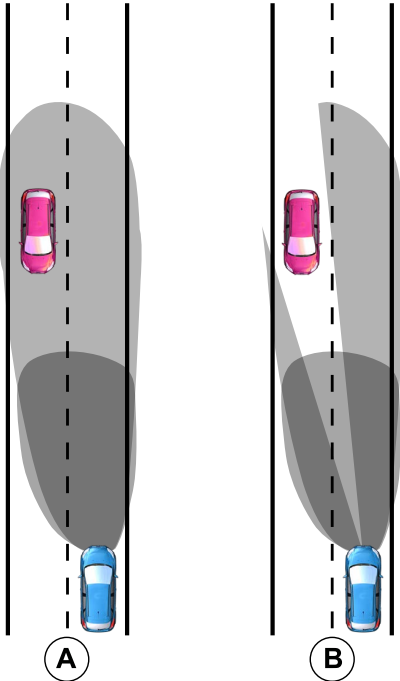
Message	Details
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera malfunction Service required	The camera has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Exterior Lighting

GLARE FREE LIGHTING

HOW DOES GLARE FREE LIGHTING WORK

Glare free lighting enhances visibility and minimizes glare for other road users.



- A Without glare free lighting.
- B With glare free lighting.

GLARE FREE LIGHTING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not adapt the light.



WARNING: The system may not adapt the lighting to avoid glare if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles such as guard rails.



WARNING: You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.



WARNING: You may need to override the system during inclement weather.



WARNING: Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.

GLARE FREE LIGHTING REQUIREMENTS

The system turns on if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough.
- Your vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

Exterior Lighting

The system adapts the lighting to avoid glare if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or rear lamps.

GLARE FREE LIGHTING LIMITATIONS

The system turns off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- The ambient light level is high enough.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).

Note: *The deactivation speed is lower on curves.*

SWITCHING GLARE FREE LIGHTING ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 360).

2. Press Lighting.
3. Switch Glare Free Lighting on or off.

GLARE FREE LIGHTING INDICATORS



Illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

OVERRIDING GLARE FREE LIGHTING



Push the lever away from you to switch the high beams on.

Push the lever away from you again to switch the high beams off.

Push the lever away from you for a third time to switch glare free lighting back on.

Exterior Lighting

GLARE FREE LIGHTING – TROUBLESHOOTING

GLARE FREE LIGHTING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera malfunction Service required	The camera has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Interior Lighting

SWITCHING ALL OF THE INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF

The lamps turn on under the following conditions:

- You open any door.
- You press a button on the remote control.
- You press the all lamps on button on the overhead console.



Press to switch all interior lamps on or off.

SWITCHING THE FRONT INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



The front interior lamp switches are on the overhead console.

Note: The position of each button on the overhead console depends on your vehicle.

Individual Map Lamps



Press to switch the left-hand individual dome lamp on and off.



Press to switch the right-hand individual dome lamp on and off.

SWITCHING THE REAR INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



The rear interior lamps may be above the rear seat or above the rear windows.



Press to switch the lamps on or off.

Note: If you switch the rear lamps on through the overhead console, you cannot switch them off with the rear lamp switch.

INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

WHAT IS THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

The interior lamp function switches the courtesy and door lamps on or off.

SWITCHING THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION ON AND OFF



Press to switch the interior lamp function on and off.

Note: The indicator lamp illuminates amber when the door function is off.

Interior Lighting

ADJUSTING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL LIGHTING BRIGHTNESS

The instrument lighting dimmer buttons are on the lighting control.



Repeatedly press one of the buttons to adjust the brightness.



Note: *There are six levels of brightness adjustments available during the day and twelve levels of brightness adjustments available at night.*

AMBIENT LIGHTING

SWITCHING AMBIENT LIGHTING ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press General. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Scroll down to the Ambient Lighting menu.
3. Press to switch ambient lighting on or off.

ADJUSTING AMBIENT LIGHTING

1. From the settings menu, press General. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Scroll down to the Ambient Lighting menu.
3. Drag the slider to the desired brightness.

INTERIOR LIGHTING – TROUBLESHOOTING

INTERIOR LIGHTING – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why do my courtesy lamps or interior lamps turn off when I have them switched on when I switch my vehicle off?

- The battery saver turns the courtesy lamps and interior lamps off after a short period of time after you switch your vehicle off.

Windows

OPENING AND CLOSING THE WINDOWS



WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle and do not let children play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: When closing the power windows, verify that they are free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: If an obstruction is detected, release the switch and reverse the window immediately. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not leave a key or remote control unattended in the vehicle. Children or pets could operate the power windows and could become trapped in a closing window. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



Press the window control switch to open the window. Lift the window control switch to close the window.

Note: The power windows operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off or until you open a front door.

To reduce wind noise or pulsing noise when one window is open, slightly open the opposite window.

One-Touch Open

Fully press the window control switch and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

One-Touch Close

Fully lift the window control switch and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

Resetting One-Touch Close

Carry out all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence.

1. Close the window.
2. Press and hold the window control switch until the window is fully open. Keep the window control switch pressed for a few seconds.
3. Lift and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the window control switch held for a few seconds.
4. Press and hold the window control switch until the window is fully open. Keep the window control switch pressed for a few seconds.
5. Lift and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the window control switch held for a few seconds.

Note: Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.

GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

WHAT IS GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

You can use the remote control to open or close the windows with the ignition off.

Windows

USING GLOBAL OPENING

1. Press and release the unlock button on the remote control.
2. Press and hold the unlock button on the remote control.
3. Release the button when the windows start to open.

Press the lock or the unlock button on the remote control to stop global opening.

Note: *You can use global opening for a short period of time when you unlock your vehicle using the remote control.*

SWITCHING GLOBAL OPENING ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
2. Press Windows.
3. Switch Remote open on or off.

USING GLOBAL CLOSING



WARNING: When closing the power windows, verify that they are free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

1. Press and hold the lock button on the remote control.
2. Release the button when the windows start to close.

Press the lock or the unlock button on the remote control to stop global closing.

Note: *Bounce-back is on during global closing. See **What Is Window Bounce-Back** (page 98).*

SWITCHING GLOBAL CLOSING ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
2. Press Windows.
3. Switch Remote close on or off.

WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

WHAT IS WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

The window stops and reverses if it detects an obstruction when closing.

OVERRIDING WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK



WARNING: If you override bounce-back, the window does not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

1. Close the window until it reaches the point of resistance and let it reverse.
2. Lift and hold the window control switch within two seconds to override bounce-back and close the window. Bounce-back is now disabled and you can close the window manually.

Note: *The window goes past the point of resistance and you can fully close it.*

Note: *If the window does not close, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

LOCKING THE REAR WINDOW CONTROLS



WARNING: When children and pets are in the rear seat, use the power window lockout button to prevent accidental operation of the power windows.

When the rear window lock/child safety lock switch is engaged, the window switches mounted on the rear door panels are deactivated.



The control is on the driver door. It enables both the rear window locks and the child safety locks.

Press the control to switch the rear window locks and child safety locks on. Press the control again to switch them off. A light on the control illuminates when you switch them on.

The rear window lock and child lock settings remain active when you switch off your vehicle.

Interior Mirror

INTERIOR MIRROR PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.

AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR

WHAT IS THE AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR

The mirror dims to reduce the effect of bright light from behind. It returns to normal when the bright light from behind is no longer present or if you shift into reverse (R).

AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR LIMITATIONS

Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror.

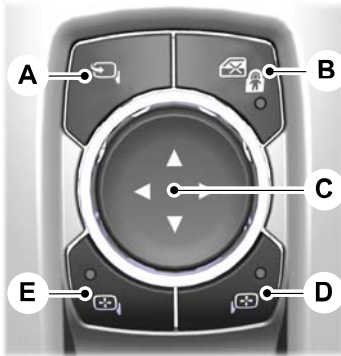
Note: A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint could prevent light from reaching the sensor.

Exterior Mirrors

ADJUSTING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS



WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



- A Power fold.
- B Window and child safety lock.
- C Adjustment control.
- D Right-hand mirror.
- E Left-hand mirror.

To adjust the mirrors, switch your vehicle on, with the push button start in accessory mode or your vehicle running.

1. Select the mirror you want to adjust. The control light turns on.
2. Use the adjustment control to adjust the position of the mirror.
3. Press the mirror control again. The control light turns off.

FOLDING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS

The exterior mirrors fold when you lock your vehicle and unfold when you unlock your vehicle.

Note: This feature requires you to switch the exterior mirrors autofold on.



For tight parking conditions, press the control to fold the mirrors.

Press the control again to unfold the mirrors.

Note: Do not stop the mirrors midway through their movement. Wait until the mirrors stop moving and press the control again.

If you press the control to fold in the mirrors with autofold on, the mirrors do not unfold when you unlock your vehicle.

Note: The power folding mirrors operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off.

Note: If you fold and unfold the mirrors several times within one minute, the power fold function may turn off to protect the motors from overheating.

Switching Autofold On and Off

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Press Mirrors.
3. Switch Autofold on or off.

Loose, Noisy or Intermittently Working Mirrors

If you manually fold the power folding mirrors, they may not work properly even after you reposition them. Reset the mirrors if:

- They vibrate when you drive.
- They feel loose.

Exterior Mirrors

- They do not stay in the folded or unfolded position.
- One of the mirrors is not in its normal driving position.
- The mirrors are intermittently working.

To reset the power fold feature, use the power folding mirror control to fold and unfold the mirrors. You may hear a loud noise as you reset the power folding mirrors. This sound is normal. Operate the power folding mirrors an additional 3 to 4 times to synchronize the mirrors.

If the above process does not help you to fix the mirror, perform the following steps.

1. Fold or retract both mirrors manually.
2. Using the power folding control switch, operate the mirrors until you hear an audible click.
3. Operate the power folding an additional 3 to 4 times to synchronize the mirrors.

Repeat this process as needed each time you manually fold the mirrors.

Directional Indicator Mirrors

When your vehicle is running, the forward facing portion of the appropriate mirror housing blinks when you switch on the turn signal.

Memory Mirrors

You can save and recall the mirror positions through the memory function. See **Locating the Memory Function Buttons** (page 126).

Puddle Lamps

The puddle lamps turn on when you approach your vehicle with a remote control or phone. If your vehicle has auto folding mirrors, the puddle lamps are only on if the mirrors are unfolded and turn off when the mirrors fold.

Heated Exterior Mirrors

See **Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off** (page 111).

360 Degree Camera

See **Locating the 360 Degree Cameras** (page 198).

Blind Spot Information System

See **What Is Blind Spot Information System** (page 239).

AUTO-DIMMING EXTERIOR MIRROR

WHAT IS THE AUTO-DIMMING EXTERIOR MIRROR

The driver exterior mirror dims when the interior auto-dimming mirror turns on.

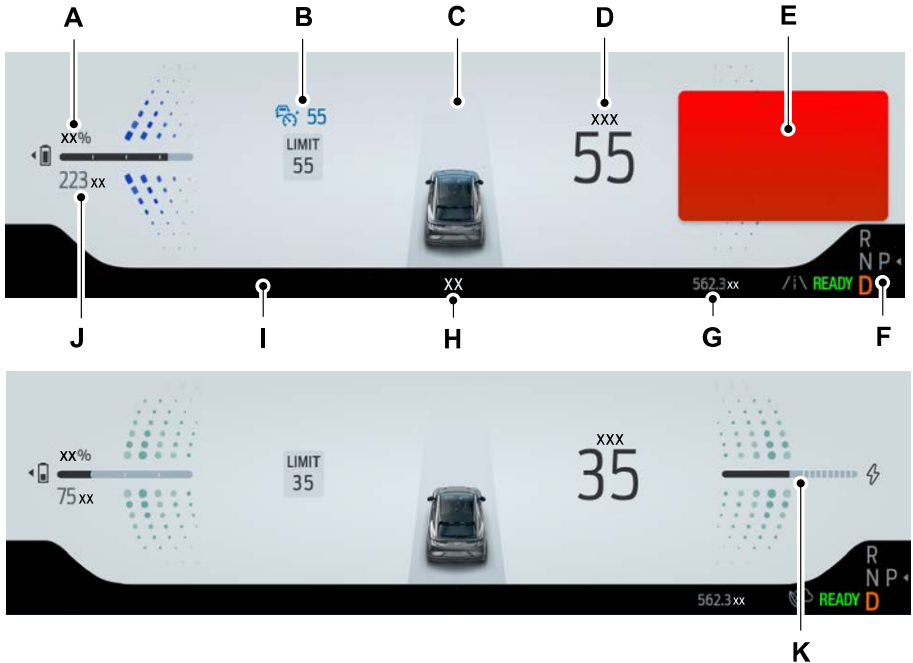
Instrument Cluster

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW

Note: The instrument cluster display can be customized to display information in several different layouts. Maximum zone complexity shown.

Note: The instrument cluster display changes based on feature settings selected in the center display screen or set with steering wheel controls.

Note: The pop-up message display area fully occupies the power gauge area when a pop-up warning is active.



- A High voltage battery gauge.
- B Driver assist message display area.
- C Driver assist area.
- D Speedometer.
- E Pop-up message display area.
- F Gear indicator.

Instrument Cluster

- G Odometer.
- H Compass or outside air temperature.
- I Information bar.
- J Range display area.
- K Power gauge.

POWER GAUGE

The power gauge displays the amount of power going to the wheels when accelerating or maintaining speed. When the system limits the available maximum power, the right side of the gauge shows gray lines representing the proportional reduction in available power. When slowing down by lifting your foot off the accelerator pedal or pressing the brake, the gauge displays the amount of power the regenerative system captures and returns to the high voltage battery.

SPEEDOMETER

Indicates the vehicle speed.

VEHICLE RANGE DISPLAY

Displays the approximate range your vehicle can travel on the battery's current state of charge. Estimates vary based on the energy used when driving and the energy available in the high voltage battery.

The amount of energy your vehicle uses when driving is affected by:

- Mild or aggressive acceleration or braking.
- Your vehicle's speed.
- Use of accessories, such as climate control.
- Ambient temperature and weather conditions.

- Driving in a city or on a highway.
- Driving on flat or hilly roads.
- Towing.

The available energy capacity in the high voltage battery is affected by cold temperatures and battery degradation. See **Preserving Your High Voltage Battery** (page 137).

If you power on your vehicle while pressing the brake pedal and your navigation system has an active route, the distance to your destination or next charging station displays.

Note: *It is normal for the vehicle range estimates to vary due to changes in average energy usage and battery temperature. This could cause different range estimates each time you fully charge your battery. See **Maximizing Your Driving Range** (page 282).*

Note: *When you leave your vehicle unplugged, it periodically uses energy from the high voltage battery to recharge the 12-volt accessory battery, resulting in a reduced driving range.*

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY GAUGE

Displays the high voltage battery state of charge in the form of a gauge or a percentage. A full fill or 100% charge represents the total amount of energy you get from plugging in your vehicle.

The gauge is normally black. When a low battery condition is reached the gauge is amber. When the battery is depleted the gauge is red.

If you power on your vehicle without pressing the brake pedal, or if your vehicle is plugged in, the full battery gauge displays.

Charging Status

Additional charge information is displayed when your vehicle is plugged in. Charging status includes the charge start or charge end time as appropriate. You can modify your vehicle charge settings on the touchscreen. See **Charging Settings** (page 158).

Charge Required to Reach Destination

When the full battery gauge is displayed and your navigation system has an active route, a symbol is added that represents the high voltage battery charge level needed to reach your destination or next charging station. In this state, if your vehicle is also plugged in and your current battery charge level is less than the level required to reach your destination or next charging station, the time when your vehicle reaches the level of charge required to arrive at your next stop is displayed.

Instrument Cluster Display

BRAKE COACH

The brake coach appears after your vehicle has come to a stop. It coaches you to brake in a manner that maximizes the amount of energy returned through the regenerative braking system.

The percent displayed indicates the regenerative braking efficiency, with 100% representing the maximum amount of energy recovery.

Note: *While regenerative braking works in all drive modes, brake coach display may not be available in all drive modes.*

You can switch brake coach on or off in the settings menu on your touchscreen.

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Switch Brake Coach on or off.

Trip Computer

ACCESSING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. From the app launcher, press Trips.
See **Center Display** (page 360).

RESETTING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. From the app launcher, press Trips.
See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Press Trip 1 or Trip 2.
3. Press Reset.

Note: *The current trip resets every time you start your vehicle.*

TRIP DATA

Trip data includes distance, time and energy economy. Better energy economy, meaning greater efficiency or lower consumption, results in increased driving range.

Where Did My Energy Go

Displays a breakdown of energy consumption for your trip.

- Climate Use – This includes energy used by your vehicle's high voltage climate control components such as the electric A/C compressor and the electric heater.
- Driving and Route – This includes energy used to propel your vehicle based on your driving style and route. Your driving style includes how fast you drive and whether your acceleration and braking is mild or aggressive. Your route includes factors such as the amount of city or highway driving and road grades.

- Accessories – This includes energy used for low voltage accessories such as climate system fans, heated seats and lighting.
- Exterior Temperature – This includes energy losses due to outside temperature and other conditions which reduce vehicle system efficiency.

How Is My Driving

Displays scores for trip driving behavior. Higher scores result in better energy economy.

- Acceleration – Light to moderate acceleration improves your score.
- Braking – Slow and steady braking improves your score.
- Speed – Maintain reasonable vehicle speeds for best scores. Your score rapidly drops above 112 km/h (70 mph).



You can view additional trip data by pressing the icon on your touchscreen.

Remote Start

USING REMOTE START



WARNING: Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power outlet whenever the device is not in use. Power outlets power up during remote start.

The system allows you to remotely start your vehicle to heat or cool the interior to a preset temperature.

Follow the instructions in the vehicle app to start and stop your vehicle.

Note: *The vehicle app must be paired with your vehicle to remotely start using the app.*

Note: *Depending on your vehicle app, you may need to be within a certain range for the vehicle to successfully remote start.*

When you successfully remote start your vehicle:

- The vehicle doors lock.
- The turn signal lamps flash twice.
- The parking lamps turn on when the vehicle is running.
- The vehicle remains secured when you have remotely started the vehicle. A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch your vehicle on and drive your vehicle.
- All other vehicle systems remain off when you have remotely started the vehicle.

The horn sounds if the system fails to start.

Note: *You cannot adjust any comfort settings until you switch your vehicle on from inside your vehicle.*

Remote start does not work under the following conditions:

- Remote start is not enabled.
- The alarm horn is sounding.
- The hood is open.

- The transmission is not in park (P).
- Your vehicle is already on.
- The vehicle battery is below the minimum operating voltage.

Note: *A maximum of two remote starts are allowed. After that you have to switch your vehicle on and off before you can use remote start again.*

REMOTE START SETTINGS

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
2. Press Remote Start Setup.

You can adjust the following in the remote start settings menu:

- Enable or disable remote start.
- Climate control settings.
- Heated seat settings.
- Heated steering wheel settings.
- Remote start duration.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)

IDENTIFYING THE CLIMATE CONTROL UNIT



Use the controls in this area to change the climate inside of your vehicle.

Depending on your vehicle options, the controls could look different than what you see here.

SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF



Press the button to access the climate controls.



Press the button.

SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

Note: Recirculated air may turn off automatically, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.

SWITCHING AIR CONDITIONING ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Note: Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.

Note: To keep the system and its components fully functional, switch air conditioning on and let your vehicle idle at least once per month for a minimum of two minutes.

SWITCHING DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button to access the climate controls.



Press the button.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

Note: The maximum defrost button is also on the lighting control.

Note: To prevent the window from fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)

Note: The heated rear window and windshield turn on when you select maximum defrost.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM COOLING ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Note: When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

SWITCHING THE ELECTRIC HEATER ON AND OFF

When E-Heat is on, an electric heater warms the cabin and keeps the windows from fogging. Turning E-Heat off saves battery power, which extends your driving range. The electric heater is the only source of heat to warm the cabin.



Press the button to access climate control.



Press the button to turn the electric heater on and off.

Note: The default setting is on.

Note: Disabling the system maximizes your driving range.

Note: The system does not work in some climate control modes.

Note: This button does not switch off the climate control system.

Note: In certain conditions, for example warm weather, the system activates or runs with reduced performance when switched on.

SWITCHING THE HEATED WINDSHIELD ON AND OFF



Press the button on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.



Press the button to clear the windshield of thin ice and fog. The heated windshield turns off after a short period of time.

To manually switch off the heated windshield at any time, press the button again.

Note: The system does not operate if the battery charge level is low.

Note: The heated windshield automatically turns off after the windshield is expected to be clear based on the current outside temperature.

Note: The heated windshield remains on after remote starting the vehicle, based on your remote start settings.

Note: During initial start-up, the windshield has a shimmering appearance. This is normal and only lasts for one minute.

SWITCHING THE HEATED REAR WINDOW ON AND OFF



Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

Note: Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window, this could damage the heated rear window grid lines not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)

SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED



Press the button to set the blower motor speed.

SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on. See **Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off** (page 110).

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

SETTING THE TEMPERATURE

Press the temperature controls on either side of the climate control to set the temperature for that side.



You can press + or - to set the temperature.

DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



Press the button on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.



Press the button.

Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents



Press the button on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.



Press the button.

Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



Press the button on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.



Press the button.

AUTO MODE

SWITCHING AUTO MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button to switch auto mode on. Repeatedly press the button to adjust auto mode.

Adjust the blower motor control or air distribution control to switch auto mode off.

SWITCHING DUAL MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button to access the climate controls.



Press the button.

Note: When dual mode is off, setting the temperature using the driver side controls, sets the temperature for both sides.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)

Note: Setting the temperature using the passenger side controls, sets the passenger temperature and switches dual mode on.

CLIMATE CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS

 **WARNING:** Even if the temperature rises to above 4°C (39°F) there is no guarantee that the road is free of hazards caused by inclement weather.

 Illuminates when the outside air temperature is between 4°C (39.2°F) and 0°C (32.0°F).

AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM REFRIGERANT

 **WARNING:** The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Your vehicle has an under hood label that identifies the refrigerant used by the air conditioning system.

Note: Only allow a trained and certified technician service the refrigerant system to ensure proper and safe operation, per the society of automotive engineers J2845.

Note: Never repair or replace the air conditioning evaporator with one from a salvage vehicle. Only replace it with a new evaporator to ensure proper and safe operation.

The meaning of each symbol on the under hood label are as follows:



Caution



Air conditioning system.



System lubricant type.



See vehicle service manual for service information.



Requires registered technician to service.



Flammable refrigerant.



Replace safety system components. Do not repair, reuse or try to salvage.

Interior Air Quality

WHAT IS THE CABIN AIR FILTER

The cabin air filter improves the quality of air in your vehicle by trapping dust, pollen and other particles.

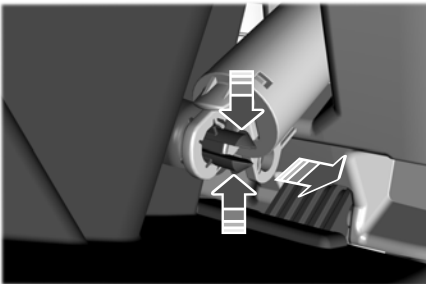
REPLACING THE CABIN AIR FILTER

Replace the filter at regular intervals.

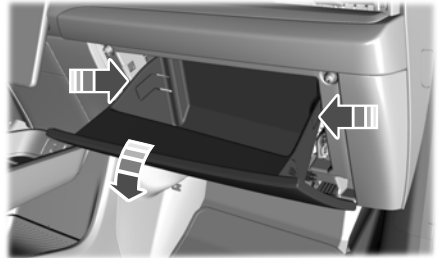
The cabin air filter is behind the glove compartment.

To remove the lower glove compartment and access the filter:

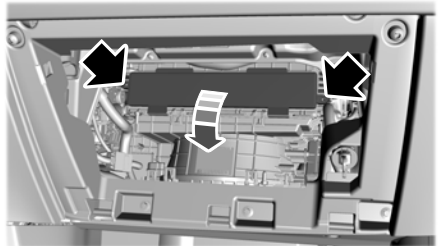
1. Open the glove compartment.
2. Detach the damper by depressing the tabs and pulling it away from the glove compartment.



3. Press the tabs on each side to release the glove compartment.



4. Fully lower the glove compartment.
5. Unclip both sides of the filter door and swing door down to access filter.



6. Remove the old filter and replace with a new filter.

Front Seats

FRONT SEAT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.



WARNING: Do not recline the seat backrest too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seatbelt, resulting in personal injury in the event of a crash.

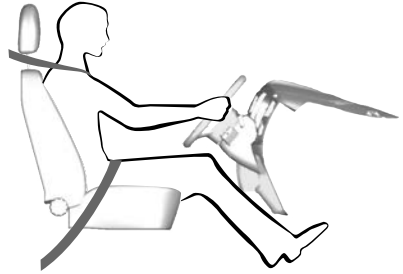


WARNING: Do not place objects higher than the top of the seat backrest. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



WARNING: Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.

SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION



When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest so that your torso is more than 30 degrees from the upright position.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 25 cm (10 in) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.

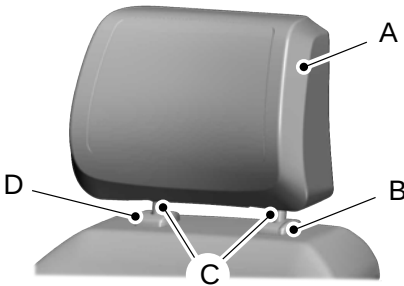
Front Seats

- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

MANUAL SEATS

HEADRESTRAINT COMPONENTS



The head restraints consist of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Guide sleeve adjust and release button.
- C Two steel stems.
- D Guide sleeve unlock and remove button (If equipped).

ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT



WARNING: Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.



WARNING: The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.



WARNING: Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

Note: *Adjust the seat backrest to an upright driving position before adjusting the head restraint. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head. Make sure that you remain comfortable. If you are tall, adjust the head restraint to its highest position.*

Pull the head restraint up to raise it.

To lower the head restraint:

1. Press and hold the adjust and release button.
2. Push the head restraint down.

Front Seats

REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

1. Pull up the head restraint until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold the adjust and release button and the unlock and remove button.
3. Pull up the head restraint.

INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD



WARNING: Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward. Not securing the seat into the locked position can be dangerous in a crash and could cause serious personal injury or death.



ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST



WARNING: Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position.



WARNING: Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's seatbelt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a crash.



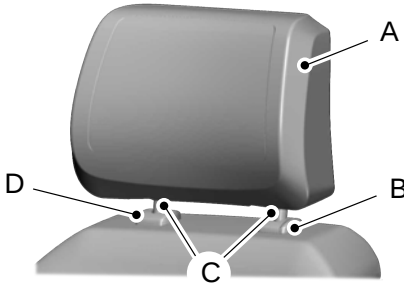
ADJUSTING THE SEAT HEIGHT



Front Seats

POWER SEATS

HEADRESTRAINT COMPONENTS



The head restraints consist of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Guide sleeve lock and release button.
- C Two steel stems.
- D Guide sleeve.

ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT - VEHICLES WITH: FRONT FIXED HEAD RESTRAINTS



The non-adjustable head restraints consist of a trimmed foam pad and plastic finish panels covering the upper structure of the seat backrest.

Properly adjust the seat backrest to an upright driving or riding position, so that the head restraint is positioned as close as possible to the back of your head.

ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT - VEHICLES WITH: FRONT ADJUSTABLE HEAD RESTRAINTS



WARNING: Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.



WARNING: The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.



WARNING: Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

Note: Adjust the seat backrest to an upright driving position before adjusting the head restraint. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head. Make sure that you remain comfortable. If you are tall, adjust the head restraint to its highest position.

Pull the head restraint up to raise it.

To lower the head restraint:

Front Seats

1. Press and hold the adjust and release button.
2. Push the head restraint down.

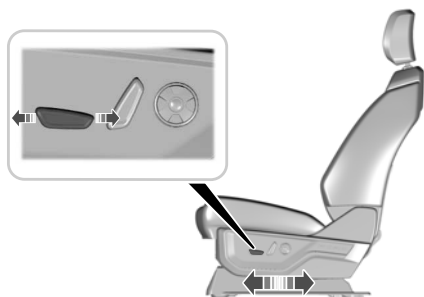
REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

1. Pull up the head restraint until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold the adjust and unlock button.
3. Pull up the head restraint.

INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

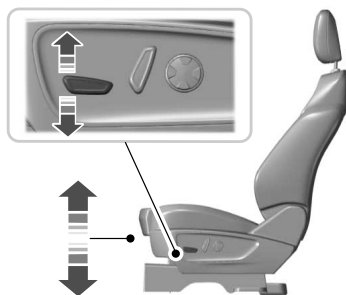
Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD

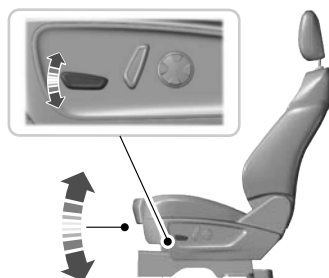


ADJUSTING THE SEAT CUSHION

(If Equipped)



Tilting the Seat Cushion (If Equipped)



ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST

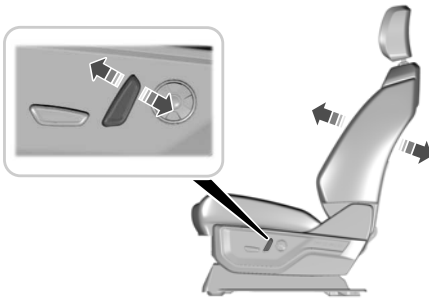


WARNING: Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's seatbelt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a crash.



WARNING: Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position.

Front Seats



ADJUSTING THE SEAT HEIGHT



ADJUSTING THE LUMBAR SUPPORT



HEATED SEATS

HEATED SEAT PRECAUTIONS

⚠ WARNING: Use caution when using the heated seat if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions. The heated seat could cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

⚠ WARNING: Do not poke sharp objects into the seat cushion or seat backrest. This could damage the heated seat element and cause it to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

⚠ WARNING: Do not place anything on the seat that blocks the heat, for example a seat cover or a cushion. This could cause the seat to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry.

SWITCHING THE HEATED SEATS ON AND OFF

The vehicle must be on to use this feature.

Front Seats



Press the heated seat symbol, then select your preferred heat level or off. The more indicators that display, the warmer the temperature of the seat. You can also press the heated seat symbol on the audio volume knob, then select your preferred heat level or off.

Note: *Based on your remote start settings, the heated seats may remain on after you remote start your vehicle. The heated seats may also turn on when you start your vehicle if they were on when you switched your vehicle off.*

Automatic Heated Seats

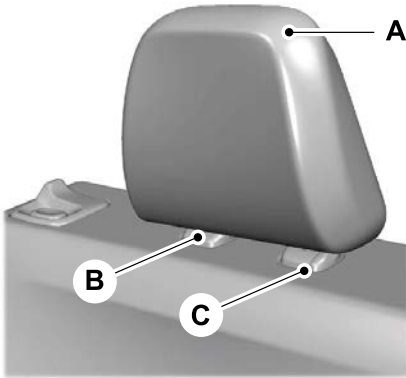
When you switch on the auto setting, the heated seats switch on to match your climate control setting.

Rear Seats

MANUAL SEATS

HEADRESTRAINT COMPONENTS

Rear Seat Outermost Head Restraints



The head restraint consists of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Two steel stems.
- C Guide sleeve adjust and release button.
- D Guide sleeve unlock and remove button.

ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

The outermost head restraints are non-adjustable.

Pull the center head restraint up to raise it.

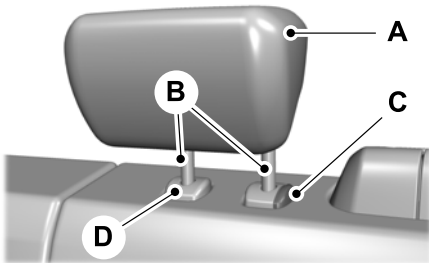
To lower the center head restraint:

1. Press and hold the adjust and release button.
2. Push the head restraint down.

The head restraints consist of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Guide sleeve.
- C Locking guide sleeve.

Rear Seat Center Head Restraint



REMOVING THE HEADRESTRAINT

1. Fold the seat backrest forward before removing the head restraint.
2. Pull up the head restraint until it reaches its highest position.
3. Press and hold the adjust and release button and the unlock and remove button - if equipped.
4. Pull up the head restraint.

INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

1. Fold the seat backrest forward before installing the head restraint.
2. Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

Rear Seats

FOLDING THE SEAT BACKREST



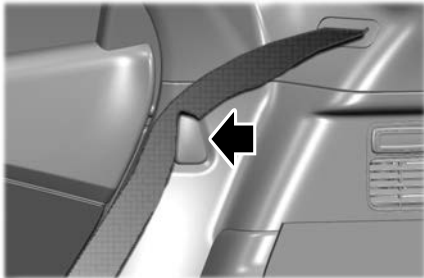
WARNING: To prevent possible damage to the seat or seatbelts, make sure that the seatbelts are not fastened before folding the seatback.



WARNING: When folding or unfolding the seats, take care not to get your fingers caught between the seat backrest and seat frame. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.



Press the button and fold the seat backrest forward.



When the rear outermost seat backrests are folded, place the seatbelts in the stowage clip. This prevents the seatbelt from getting caught when the backrest is unfolded.

UNFOLDING THE SEAT BACKREST



WARNING: When unfolding the seat backrests, make sure that the seatbelts are not trapped behind the seat.



WARNING: Make sure that the seats and the seat backrests are secure and fully locked in their catches.

Lift the seat backrest up to unfold it. Make sure the seat latch engages.

Rear Occupant Alert System

WHAT IS THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM

The rear occupant alert system monitors vehicle conditions and notifies you to check for rear seat occupants when you switch the ignition off. The notifications can be in the form of warnings inside the vehicle and sounding of the horn if activated for a short period of time.

HOW DOES THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system monitors the activity of the buckle on the rear seatbelt and the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

When **Child Seat Installed** is selected, the system monitors only the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

When **Child Seat Installed** is not selected, the system monitors the rear seatbelt buckle activity and the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

A message displays in the touchscreen and an audible warning sounds when you switch the ignition off after any of the following conditions have been met:

- A rear door is opened or closed while the ignition is on.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of a rear door opening and closing.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of the alert having displayed or sounded.

If you do not open a rear door within a short period of time of the message appearing in the center display, the first audible warning sounding and driver door open to close, the horn sounds for a short period of time.

Note: *Horn sounds only when the **Rear Occupant Alert** is set to **Alert & Horn**. If you change the setting, then there is no horn sound.*

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.



WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system does not detect the presence of objects or passengers in the rear seat. It monitors the activity of the buckle on the rear seatbelt and the opening and closing of the rear doors.

Note: *It is possible to receive an alert when there is no rear seat occupant, but alert conditions are met.*

Rear Occupant Alert System

Note: It is possible to receive no alert when there is an occupant in the rear seat, if alert conditions are not met. For example, if a rear seat occupant does not enter the vehicle through a rear door.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM SETTINGS

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
2. Press Rear Occupant Alert.
3. Select Alert & Horn or Alert Only or Off.

Note: The default setting is Alert Only.

Note: If you choose Alert only, the horn does not sound even when the alert conditions are met.

Note: Performing a system reset causes the system to switch on again.

Switching Child Seat Installed On and Off

When the system is switched on, it monitors the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
2. Press Rear Occupant Alert.
3. Switch Child Seat Installed on or off.

Note: The default setting is on.

Switch the system on when the child restraint is mounted on any of the following:

- Forward facing seat.
- Rear facing seat.
- Toddler in a LATCH system child seat.

Switch the system off when the child is using any of the following:

- Seatbelt.
- Booster seat.

Semiannual Reminder

When you switch the system off, a message appears every six months as a reminder that the system is off. You can switch the system back on or leave it off.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM INDICATORS



Message
Check rear seats for occupants.

Displays when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met.

The message displays for a short period of time. Press **Close** to acknowledge and remove the message.

Note: The graphic may be different for your vehicle.

Rear Occupant Alert System

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM AUDIBLE WARNINGS

The first audible warning is an alert tone within the vehicle, which sounds when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met. The warning sounds for a short period of time.

The second audible warning is from the horn. It sounds when you do not open a rear door within a short period of time of the message appearing in the center display, the first audible warning sounding, and driver door open to close. The warning sounds for a short period of time.

Memory Function

WHAT IS THE MEMORY FUNCTION

The memory function recalls the position of these features:

- Driver seat.
- Power mirrors.

MEMORY FUNCTION PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Before activating the memory seat, make sure that the area immediately surrounding the seat is clear of obstructions and that all occupants are clear of moving parts.



WARNING: Do not use the memory function when your vehicle is moving.

LOCATING THE MEMORY FUNCTION BUTTONS



The memory function buttons are on the driver door.

SAVING A PRESET POSITION

1. Switch the vehicle on.
2. Adjust the memory features to your preferred position.
3. Press and hold the preferred preset button until you hear a single tone.

You can save up to three preset memory positions at any time.

RECALLING A PRESET POSITION

Press and release a preset button.

Note: You can recall a preset memory position when the vehicle is off, or when you place the transmission in park (P) or neutral (N) if the vehicle is on and it is not moving.

Note: Pressing any of the preset buttons during a memory recall cancels the operation.

You can also recall a preset memory position by:

- Pressing the unlock button on your remote control if you linked it to a preset position.
- Unlocking the intelligent driver door handle if a linked remote control is present.

Using a linked remote control to recall your memory position when the vehicle is off moves the seat and steering column to the easy entry position.

Linking a preset position to your remote control or passive key. See **Linking or Unlinking a Personal Profile** (page 373).

USB Ports

LOCATING THE USB PORTS

USB A



USB C



Data Transfer USB Ports



The USB ports are in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- Inside the media bin.
- Inside the center console.

Note: These USB ports can also charge devices.

Note: Not all USB ports in your vehicle have data transfer capabilities.

Note: We recommend using only USB-IF certified cables and adapters. Non-certified cables and adapters may not work.

Charge Only USB Ports



The USB ports are in the following locations:

- Inside the media bin below the instrument panel.
- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- In the cargo area.

PLAYING MEDIA USING THE USB PORT



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Connect your device to the USB port.

Press App Launcher on the touchscreen. Press Media App. See **Center Display** (page 360).



Press the USB option.

USB Ports

Note: If USB device was not the previous source.



Press the button to play a track. Press the button again to pause the track.



Press the button to skip to the next track.

Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.



Press the button once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind.



CHARGING A DEVICE

Connect your device to the USB port.

Data Transfer USB Ports



You can charge your device through the data transfer USB port when SYNC is on.

Charge Only USB Ports

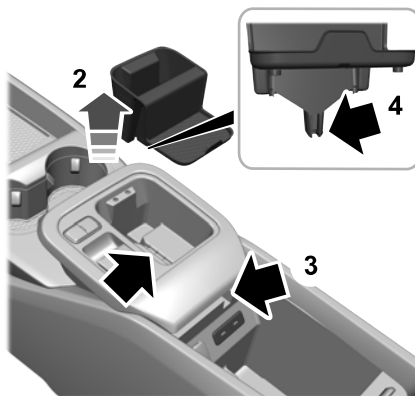


You can charge your device through the charge only USB port when the vehicle is in accessory mode or when the vehicle is running.

Connecting a device to USB ports inside the center console

You can connect your device to the USB ports inside the center console using the following steps.

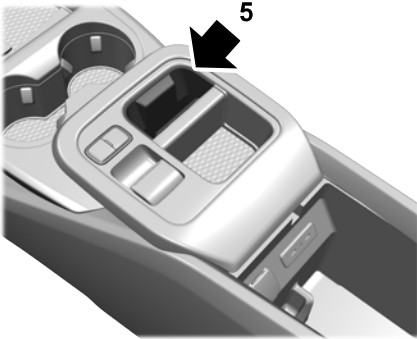
1. Locate the charge only USB ports and the power cord inside the center console.



2. Remove the center console storage mat.

USB Ports

3. Connect the power cord into the port and route the power cord through the opening and push into the storage area.
4. Insert the power cord through the opening in the center console storage mat.



5. Replace the mat and pull the extra cord from the console. Connect the device and place it in the slot.

Power Outlet

WHAT IS THE POWER OUTLET

The power outlet can power devices using a 12 V outlet adapter.

POWER OUTLET PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not plug electrical devices into the power outlets that exceed the maximum power rating. Incorrect use of the power outlets can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or personal injury.

When you switch the vehicle on, you can use the power outlets to power 12 V appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 A.

To prevent damage to the vehicle's battery:

- Do not use the power outlets over the vehicle capacity of 12 V DC 180 W or a fuse could blow.
- Do not plug in any device that supplies power to the vehicle through the power outlets. This could result in damage to vehicle systems.
- Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug. Always keep the power outlets caps closed when not in use.
- Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power outlets.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power outlets longer than necessary when the vehicle is off.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.
- Using devices for extended periods may require starting and running the engine to recharge the battery.

LOCATING THE POWER OUTLETS

Power outlets may be in the following locations:

- In the media bin below the instrument panel.
- Inside the main center console bin.
- On the rear of the main center console bin.
- In the cargo area.

Wireless Accessory Charger

WHAT IS THE WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER

The wireless accessory charger allows you to charge one compatible Qi wireless charging device on the charging area.

WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Wireless charging devices can affect the operation of implanted medical devices, including cardiac pacemakers. If you have any implanted medical devices, we recommend that you consult with your physician.



WARNING: Remove all metal objects like coins and keys from the charging surface and remove any metal objects attached to your mobile phone before placing the device on the charging surface. Some mobile devices or cases may attract metal objects. Metal objects on the charging surface or attached to the phone may become hot while charging is active. If an object is left on or near the charging surface or attached to the phone while the device is charging, let the objects cool before removing to prevent personal injury.

Keep the charging area clean and remove foreign objects prior to charging a device.

Do not place items with a magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip, for example passports, parking tickets, transportation passes or credit cards, near the charging area when charging a device. Damage could occur to the magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip.

Do not place metal objects, for example remote controls, coins and candy wrappers, on or near the charging area when charging a device. Metal objects may heat up and degrade the charging performance, in addition to causing interruptions in charging.

Charging could be interrupted, degraded, or could stop if any of the following occur:

- The system detects a foreign object.
- The device is misaligned on the charging area.
- The device moves on the active charging area when the vehicle is in motion.
- The vehicle ambient temperature is too high.
- You attempt to charge a non-Qi compatible device on the wireless charger.

Note: During charging, the device and the charger could heat up, this is normal. If the battery gets hotter than usual, the device may stop charging.

LOCATING THE WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER



The charging area is in the front console below the instrument panel.

CHARGING A WIRELESS DEVICE

Place the device on the center of the charging surface with the charging side down. The charging stops after your device reaches a full charge.

You can use the charger when the vehicle is in accessory mode, when the vehicle is running or when the touchscreen is on.

Wireless Accessory Charger



Displays on the status bar when wireless charging is in progress.

Note: *The charging performance may be affected if your device is in a case. It may be necessary to remove the case to wirelessly charge your device.*

Note: *Software and firmware updates may affect device compatibility, including the use of unofficial software or firmware. You should verify charging functionality with your specific devices in-vehicle.*

Storage

CUP HOLDERS

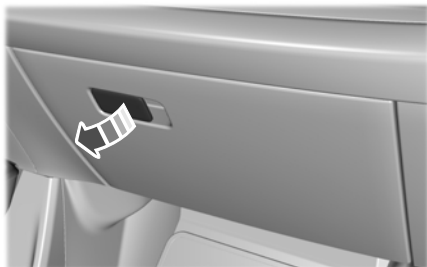
CUP HOLDER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Use caution when stowing items or hot drinks in the cup holders. Items could become loose or spill during hard braking, acceleration or crashes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

GLOVE COMPARTMENT

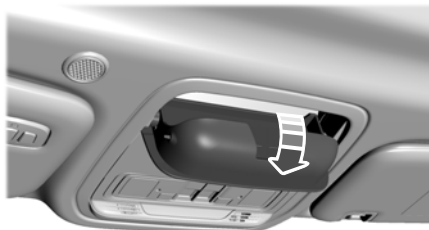
OPENING THE GLOVE COMPARTMENT



Pull the latch to the left to open the glove compartment.

GLASSES HOLDER

LOCATING THE GLASSES HOLDER



The glasses holder is in the overhead console.

Press near the rear edge of the door to open it.

Starting and Powering Off

STARTING AND POWERING OFF PRECAUTIONS

- The system may not function if the remote control is close to metal objects or electronic devices, such as keys or a cell phone.
- A valid remote control must be inside your vehicle to switch the power on and start your vehicle.
- Remote controls left inside your vehicle when locked are disabled. A message may appear in the instrument cluster display indicating that there is no key detected when you try to start your vehicle. Press the unlock button on the remote control to enable it, and then start your vehicle.
- Make sure all occupants fasten their seat belt.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the vehicle is in park (P).
- Make sure there is no charge cord coupler connected to the vehicle.

STARTING THE VEHICLE

1. Fully press the brake pedal.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



2. Press the push button start.

You can also start your vehicle using Valet Mode or a Backup Start Passcode. See **Phone as a Key** (page 52).

POWERING OFF



WARNING: Do not switch off your vehicle when it is moving. This results in a significant decrease in braking and steering assistance. If the vehicle is switched off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, could also turn off. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Note: If you unintentionally switch your vehicle off, shift into neutral (N) and press the push button start to restart your vehicle.

When your vehicle is not moving and is started, or the power is in accessory mode, press and release the push button start without pressing the brake pedal. This shuts off the vehicle and all electrical accessories.

Only in a case of emergency, when your vehicle is moving, press the push button start three times within two seconds, or press and hold for at least one second. Shift into neutral (N) and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop. When your vehicle comes to a complete stop, shift into park (P).

RESTARTING THE VEHICLE AFTER POWERING OFF

Fast Restart

The fast restart feature allows you to restart your vehicle within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid remote control.

Starting and Powering Off

Within 10 seconds of switching your vehicle off, press the brake pedal and press the push button start. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start your vehicle if it does not detect a valid remote control.

Once your vehicle starts, it remains on until you press the push button start, even if it does not detect a valid remote control.

If you open the driver's door for 2 seconds or longer while your vehicle is on and the selector is in park (P), you cannot shift out of park (P) if the system does not detect a valid remote control device.

VEHICLE POWER DOWN TIMER

WHAT IS THE VEHICLE POWER DOWN TIMER

Vehicle power down timer automatically shuts down your vehicle if it has been powered on and stationary for an extended period of time.

HOW DOES THE VEHICLE POWER DOWN TIMER WORK

Before your vehicle shuts down, a message appears in the instrument cluster display showing a timer counting down from 30 seconds. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, your vehicle shuts down.

After the shutdown, another message appears in the instrument cluster display to inform you that your vehicle has shut down in order to save battery energy.

Start your vehicle as normal.

SWITCHING THE VEHICLE POWER DOWN TIMER ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 360).

2. Switch Vehicle Power Down Timer on or off.

Note: You cannot permanently switch off the vehicle power down timer. If you switch it off, it turns on each time you switch the vehicle on.

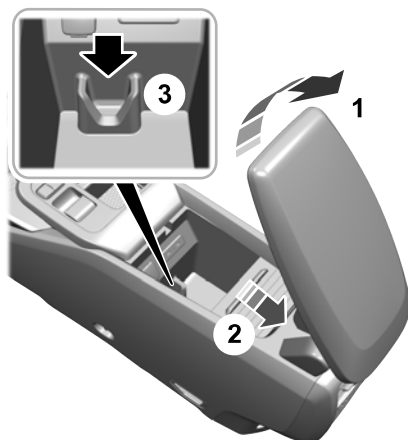
OVERRIDING THE VEHICLE POWER DOWN TIMER

You can stop the shutdown or reset the timer before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.
- Pressing the **OK** or **RESET** button during the 30-second countdown.

ACCESSING THE PASSIVE KEY BACKUP POSITION

If you are unable to start your vehicle, follow the steps below.



Starting and Powering Off

3. Place the passive key into the backup slot.
4. With the passive key in this position, press the brake pedal, then press the push button ignition to switch the power on and start your vehicle.

STARTING AND POWERING OFF – TROUBLESHOOTING

STARTING AND POWERING OFF – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the vehicle not start?

- The system does not function if the remote control frequencies are jammed, or if the remote control battery has no charge. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position** (page 135).
- The system does not function if the 12-volt battery has no charge. 12-volt battery depletion can occur if the high voltage battery state of charge is low.

High Voltage Battery

WHAT IS THE HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY

The high voltage battery is a highly sophisticated lithium ion battery system, used to store electrified energy to power your vehicle.

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: This battery pack should only be serviced by an authorized electric vehicle technician. Improper handling can result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Keep your hands and clothing clear of the cooling fan.

Your vehicle consists of various high-voltage components and wiring. All of the high-voltage power flows through specific wiring assemblies labeled as such or covered with a solid orange convolute, or orange striped tape, or both. Do not come in contact with these components.

PRESERVING YOUR HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY

When using the battery at a low state of charge, your vehicle could start disabling accessory features to protect battery life.

If your vehicle reaches a 0% state of charge, recharge your vehicle as soon as possible.

In everyday use it is acceptable to use the full state of charge window, however there are a few best practices in order to maintain the health and life of your battery.

Note: If you are unsure of the battery type used in your vehicle locate the vehicle identification label located on the dash board or driver door. If the 8th vin digit is a 4 or 5 you have a Lithium Iron Phosphate (LFP) battery, and if there is any other digit or letter you have the Nickel Cobalt Manganese (NCM) style battery.

Overnight Charging

You can increase the longevity and performance of your high voltage battery by using the charge scheduling and departure and comfort settings on your touchscreen or in the FordPass app. Charge Scheduling improves the high voltage battery's longevity by delaying the start of charging and setting a maximum charging limit.

Extended Range Nickel Cobalt Manganese (NCM) Batteries

Set your preferred charging times to be at least 2-3 hours after your typical plug in time. This allows the battery to cool before charging begins. Additionally, setting the maximum charge level to 90% for everyday usage reduces strain on the battery.

Standard Range Lithium Iron Phosphate (LFP) Batteries

Set the maximum charge level to 100% and charge to 100% at least once per month to maintain range accuracy.

You can improve driving range and performance by scheduling departure times and cabin comfort level with the Departure and Comfort feature. This will not only warm or cool the cabin but also condition the battery to ensure best driving range and performance by the set departure time.

High Voltage Battery

DC Charging

Frequent use of DC charging could result in reducing your battery's efficiency and lifespan. This is more pronounced on the standard range battery pack versus the extended range battery pack. See **DC Charging** (page 155).

Storage Temperature

Storing your vehicle in temperatures between 0°C (32°F) and 45°C (113°F) is the most beneficial for the high voltage battery.

At temperatures just above the freezing point or lower, you should plug your vehicle in to maintain battery performance and maximize driving range.

Storage State of Charge

When storing your vehicle for an extended period of more than 30 days follow the instructions below depending on your vehicle's battery type.

Extended Range Nickel Cobalt Manganese (NCM) Batteries

During regular use, you can increase the battery life by maintaining the state of charge below 100%. The battery state of charge should be at approximately 50%. Storing your vehicle's high voltage battery at higher states of charge is less favorable than storing at lower states of charge.

Note: *To achieve this state of charge for storage, you can drive your vehicle down to 50% and set a charge limit for your location. See **Charging Settings** (page 158).*

Standard Range Lithium Iron Phosphate (LFP) Batteries

During regular use, you can increase the battery life by maintaining the state of charge at 100%. When storing for an extended time that the battery state of charge be at approximately 50%. See **Charging Settings** (page 158).

RECYCLING AND DISPOSING OF THE HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY

Please recycle in accordance with local regulations.

ENERGY CONSUMPTION FIGURES

Energy Consumption

The declared WLTP energy consumptions, CO₂-Emissions and electric range are determined according to the technical requirements and specifications of the European Regulations (EC) 715/2007 and (EU) 2017/1151 as last amended. The applied standard test procedures enable comparison between different vehicle types and different manufacturers. Comparisons between WLTP-tested and NEDC-tested vehicles should not be made in relation to electric range and electricity consumption.

European Directive 1999/94/EC

In addition to the fuel efficiency of a car, driving behavior as well as other non-technical factors play a role in determining a car's fuel/energy consumption, CO₂ emissions and electric range. CO₂ is the main greenhouse gas responsible for global warming.

High Voltage Battery

ENERGY CONSUMPTION FIGURES - EXCLUDING: GT

Electric Range City	Electric Range	Electric Energy Consumption	Weighted, Combined CO ₂
km (mi)	km (mi)	kWh/100km (mi/kWh)	g/km
480-739 (298-459)	400-610 (249-379)	16.5-19.5 (3.8-3.2)	0

High Voltage Battery

ENERGY CONSUMPTION FIGURES - GT

Electric Range City	Electric Range	Electric Energy Consumption	Weighted, Combined CO ₂
km (mi)	km (mi)	kWh/100km (mi/kWh)	g/km
588 km (365.4 mi)	500 km (310.7 mi)	20 (3.1)	0

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY – TROUBLESHOOTING

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the powertrain requires service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

High Voltage Battery



Illuminates blue under normal conditions. If it illuminates amber, the battery is low on charge. If it illuminates red, the battery is depleted.

Limited Performance



Illuminates if your vehicle has limited performance due to a cold or hot battery. Drive with caution. Keep your vehicle connected to a charging system when not in use to maintain battery temperature.

Stop Safely



Illuminates if an electrical component requires service or a failure that causes your vehicle to shut down or enter into a limited operating mode.

Charging Your Vehicle

CHARGING EQUIPMENT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Read all instructions and warnings in this publication before using the charging equipment.



WARNING: Do not use an electrical outlet that is immersed or submerged in water, snow, or in an electrical storm. When using the charging equipment, avoid moisture, water and snow at all times. Failure to follow these instructions could result in fire, electric shock, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The wall outlet and charging equipment must be in good condition and installed to comply with provisions of up-to-date local codes and regulations. Do not use an ungrounded wall outlet. Have a qualified, licensed electrician install and check the wall outlet, if you suspect that it is not properly grounded, the connection feels loose, or the outlet is damaged. The wall plug must fit firmly and fully into the outlet. Do not use extension cords, surge protectors, timers or other adapters. Failure to follow these instructions could result in electric shock, property damage, personal injury, or death.



WARNING: Do not drop the control box or coupler. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, fire, electric shock, death or property damage.



WARNING: Visually inspect the charging equipment before each use. Do not use the charging equipment if it is damaged. Do not attempt to open or repair any part of the charging equipment components as it will not

operate. Charging equipment components contain critical safety devices in the wall outlet plug and connector that cannot be serviced. Contact your local dealer for assistance. Failure to follow these instructions could result in fire, electric shock, or personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use the charging equipment in temperatures outside of the operation range of -30°C (-22°F) to 50°C (122°F). Store the charging equipment in a clean dry place between the temperatures of -30°C (-22°F) to 85°C (185°F). Stow the control box indoors on the hanger or all the charging equipment in the bag after use to prevent damage to the charging equipment and personal injury.



WARNING: Do not connect or disconnect any pluggable components of the charging equipment when in use or charging. Do not put fingers or any object into the electric charge coupler. Supervise any children in the vicinity of the charging equipment when plugged into the wall outlet. Failure to follow these instructions could cause damage to the charging equipment or cause personal injury or death.



WARNING: This equipment has arcing or sparking parts. Do not expose to flammable vapors. Position this equipment at least 450 mm (18 in) above the floor.



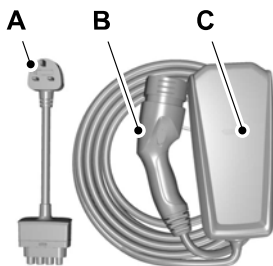
WARNING: High voltage is present in your electric meter housing and power distribution panel. Contact with high voltage can result in fire, electric shock, personal injury or death.

Charging Your Vehicle

CHARGING EQUIPMENT OVERVIEW

The universal home charge cord has a low power connector to use with a 230V outlet. A high power connector can be purchased separately as an accessory. Connector type varies by market.

Specification Type	Specification Value
Charger Model	IEC
Voltage	230 VAC
Maximum Current	32 amps max continuous
Frequency	50Hz
Power draw when idle	< 2 Watts
Power draw when charging	< 4 Watts
Cable length	6.1 m (20 ft)
Weight	4.2 kg (9.3 lb)
Operating temperature	-30°C (-22°F) to 50°C (122°F)
Storage temperature	-30°C (-22°F) to 85°C (185°F)
Environmental	IP65
Ventilation	Not required
Maximum Altitude	4000m



- A Connector.
- B Coupler.
- C Control Box.

The universal home charge cord is in the rear luggage compartment under the load floor and allows you to charge the vehicle's battery using a standard household outlet.

You must plug the connector into the control box first. Then plug the connector into the household outlet, and then plug into the vehicle charge port.

The power indicator illuminates blue when the connector is properly inserted into the control box and dedicated wall outlet.

Note: To insert the connector, firmly grasp the connector by the cable or plug and push into the control box until an audible click is heard. Make sure the connector is fully inserted and flush with the control box before inserting it into the outlet. Improper insertion causes a longer charge session or faults.

Note: Follow the installation instructions provided with the charger.

Note: We recommend using the supplied plugs and connectors.

Note: Use the correct connector for the appropriate market in which you are charging your vehicle.

Charging Your Vehicle

Note: If you do not use a dedicated circuit, the circuit breaker could trip or open. If a dedicated circuit is not available, contact a licensed professional electrician regarding the installation of a dedicated outlet.

Note: The universal home charge cord will not charge and give a fault indication, if ground is not present.

Note: Plug the connector for the universal home charge cord directly into the wall plug receptacle. Do not plug the universal home charge cord into any form of extension cord.

Note: If the wall bracket is not used for mounting the charging equipment, plug the charging equipment into an outlet closer to ground.

Note: Handle the coupler with care. Do not drop the coupler. The coupler and the cable should be mounted to the wall when not in use.

Universal Home Charge Cord Auto-Restart

Auto-restart helps make sure that your vehicle is charged and ready for use when needed. A charge could be interrupted if errors are detected. Charging resumes once the error is no longer detected. The red indicator illuminates during an error condition.

The exception to the immediate auto-restart is when the interruption is due to a charger ground fault circuit interruption (GFCI) event. The charger attempts to restart 15 minutes after a (GFCI) event. After the fourth attempt to restart, the charger shuts down and the red indicator stays on.

If the fault persists, do not continue to try to charge your vehicle. Contact your authorized dealer.

MOVING AND STORAGE INSTRUCTIONS

Make sure you wrap the universal home charge cord after charging.

When charging is complete, replace the universal home charge cord in the rear luggage compartment under the load floor.

Note: Do not hold the universal home charge cord by the power cable.

Note: To remove the connector, firmly grasp the connector by the cable or plug and pull away from the control box.

CARE INSTRUCTIONS

Do not use cleaners or solvents as this could damage the universal home charge cord. Do not place stress on the charger cables. If the unit overheats, remove the universal home charge cord from direct sunlight.

SAFETY FEATURES

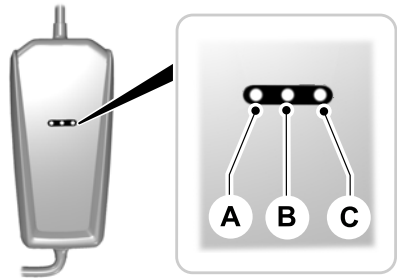
The charger includes the following safety features to protect against the risk of electric shock:

- Service ground check: The charger constantly checks for the presence of a service ground connection. If the service ground ever fails, the charger's red indicator illuminates and shuts down power to the vehicle.
- Thermal event sensor: Charger module senses out-of-ordinary thermal events and decreases charging current or shut the unit down if required.
- GFCI protection: The charger has a ground fault circuit interruption (GFCI) reaction system to protect against electric shock. If the charger module detects an output ground fault, it shuts down power to the output cable and the red indicator illuminates.

Charging Your Vehicle

- **Insulation:** The charger module, connector, cable assembly, and charge coupler are completely insulated, no exposed live parts, to protect against electric shock.
- **Unintentional disconnection:** The charge coupler is designed to minimize unintentional disconnection. A pilot signal wire in the cable and charge coupler eliminates the possibility of electric shock when not connected to a vehicle or if an unintended disconnect occurs during a charge. Disconnection during charging is safe.

CHARGING EQUIPMENT INDICATORS



- A Amber fault indicator
- B Blue status indicator
- C Red trouble indicator

Note: When first plugged into a wall outlet the amber, blue and red indicators blink once. Then the blue indicator turns on, followed by a blink of the red indicator. After, the blue indicator turns off then back on. This cycle happens twice if a different connector is used from a previous charge.

Unpowered

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	OFF	OFF	The mobile power cord is not powered.

Make sure the outlet is operational, and the circuit breaker is in the ON position or try using another outlet. Ensure the connector is fully inserted into mobile power cord. Ensure the plug is not severely degraded. If the error persists, contact your authorized dealer.

Charging Your Vehicle

Charging

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	PULSING	OFF	The mobile power cord is charging.

No action required.

Standby

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	ON	OFF	The mobile power cord is powered and ready to charge. At the current time the mobile power cord is not charging the vehicle.

If you expect the mobile power cord to be charging the vehicle, make sure the vehicle coupler is properly inserted into the vehicle. Check and adjust your charging time preferences in the on screen display. If your vehicle is still not charging, contact your authorized dealer.

Startup and Rebooting

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
ON	ON	ON	The mobile power cord is recovering after encountering an error.

Universal home charge cord is powering up or recovering after an error. If the mobile power cord cycles for more than 2-3 minutes, unplug the vehicle coupler. Unplug and replug in the connector. If the issue persists, contact your authorized dealer.

Charging Your Vehicle

Charging Reduced, Internal Issue

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
ON	PULSING	OFF	The mobile power cord is charging at a reduced rate due to overheating.

Make sure the connector and the control box are properly connected. Unplug and replug in the connector. If the mobile power cord is warm or in a hot environment, try charging in a cooler area. Try a different outlet. Try a different connector if you have one available. If the error persists, contact your authorized dealer.

Charging Reduced, AC Plug Or Wall Outlet

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
BLINK	PULSING	OFF	The mobile power cord is charging at a reduced rate due to overheating of the connector or the wall outlet.

Make sure the connector and control box are properly connected. Unplug and replug in the connector. Ensure the connector is fully seated. If the universal home charge cord is warm or in a hot environment, try charging in a cooler area. Try a different outlet. Try a different connector if you have one available. Have a licensed electrician check for missing ground, utility under or overvoltage. If the error persists, contact your authorized dealer.

Charging Your Vehicle

User Troubleshooting

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
ON	OFF	OFF	The mobile power cord has encountered a fault that requires troubleshooting.

Make sure the connector and control box are properly connected. Unplug and replug in the connector. If the mobile power cord is warm or in a hot environment, try charging in a cooler area. Try a different outlet. Try a different connector if you have one available. If the error persists, contact your authorized dealer.

Non - Recoverable Fault

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	OFF	ON	There is an internal fault in the mobile power cord that cannot be recovered.

Try a different connector if you have one available. If error persists, contact your authorized dealer.

Non - Recoverable Fault

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	OFF	BLINK	There is an internal fault in the connector that cannot be recovered.

Try using another connector if you have one available. If not, contact your authorized dealer about obtaining a replacement. If your warranty has expired, you can order a replacement from your dealer.

Charging Your Vehicle

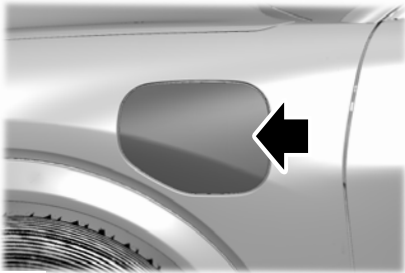
Ground Leakage Fault

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	OFF	PULSING	Electrical current is leaking through a potentially unsafe path.

Note: When plugging into an unfamiliar wall outlet, let the vehicle charge for several minutes before leaving it unattended. The red indicator illuminates if it is not charging. The unit turns off if the breaker or infrastructure ground fault circuit interrupter (GFCI) is tripped. You can view your vehicle charging status remotely via the Ford Pass app.

LOCATING THE CHARGE PORT

The charge port is between the front left-hand side door and front left-hand wheel well. To open, press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door and then release.



Note: Do not apply excessive force. Forcing the door open or closed damages the charge port.

CHARGE PORT INDICATORS

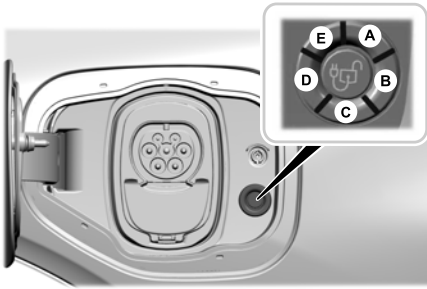
The charge status indicator is next to the charging port behind the charge port door. It indicates the charge status of the high voltage battery in your vehicle.

Divided into five zones, the charge status indicator displays the state of charge in 20 percent increments.

The charge status indicator displays how far along the charge is:

- When zone A is pulsing, the charge is between 0-20 percent.
- When zone A illuminates, and zone B is pulsing, the charge is between 20-40 percent.
- When zones A and B illuminate and zone C is pulsing, the charge is between 40-60 percent.
- When zones A, B, and C illuminate, and zone D is pulsing, the charge is between 60-80 percent.
- When zones A, B, C, and D illuminate, and zone E is pulsing, the charge is between 80-100 percent.
- When all zones illuminate, the charge is 100 percent.

Charging Your Vehicle



Note: When charging stops, the charge status indicator shows all the completed zones solidly illuminated in a blue color for 30 seconds before turning off. For example, if charging stops at 70 percent, then A, B, and C light up solidly to indicate a battery charge level of at least 60 percent but less than 80 percent. Charging stops when complete or when paused due to charge settings or charge station actions.

There are three charge port indicator light colors, which indicate a specific action:

White is used as a courtesy light to help with plugging in and to acknowledge actions such as plugging in and unplugging.

Blue is used when the vehicle is plugged in and either charging or waiting to charge.

Amber is used to indicate charge faults.



Note: Charging faults are identified by the color amber on the charge status indicator. Faults can occur within the vehicle charging system or outside the vehicle, such as with the universal home charge cord, charge station or electrical supply.

Note: If the system detects a fault in the vehicle charging system at any point in a charge cycle, the entire charge status indicator illuminates solidly in an amber color for 30 seconds and then turns off. If this happens, unplug the charge coupler and then plug it back into the charge port receptacle. If the problem persists, contact your dealer.

Note: If the system detects a fault outside the vehicle, such as with the charge station or universal home charge cord, the entire charge status indicator flashes amber continuously for 30 seconds and then turns off. If this happens check the universal home charge cord and the charge station or electrical supply.

AC CHARGING

CHARGING AT HOME



AC charging preserves the health of the high voltage battery for longer high voltage battery life.

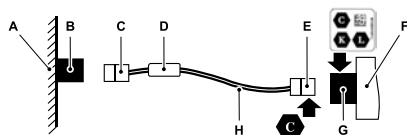
When AC charging, keep your vehicle plugged in when outside temperatures are very high or low. This enables the system to maintain the high voltage battery for best performance.

CAUTION: TO REDUCE THE RISK OF FIRE - The plug must be properly grounded. Use a dedicated circuit. If you do not use a dedicated circuit, the circuit breaker could trip or open. If you do not have a dedicated circuit, contact a licensed professional electrician for proper installation.

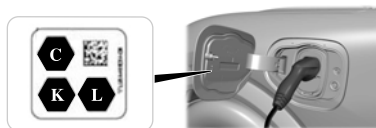
You must unwrap the universal home charge cord completely before charging.

When using the universal home charge cord, plug the charge coupler into the vehicle charge port where the same identifier symbol can be seen.

Charging Your Vehicle



- A Mains.
- B Socket Outlet (Household).
- C Plug.
- D Control box.
- E Charge coupler.
- F Vehicle.
- G Charge port receptacle.
- H Universal home charge cord.



1. Put your vehicle in park (P).

Note: Your vehicle must be in park (P) to charge and for the charge status indicator to illuminate.

2. Press the center right edge of the charge port door and then release to open the door.
3. Select the appropriate connector for the wall outlet you will use and plug the connector into the universal home charge cord control box.

Note: To insert the connector, firmly grasp the connector by the cable or plug and push into the control box until it clicks. Make sure the connector is fully inserted and flush with the control box before inserting it into the outlet. Improper insertion will cause a longer charge session or faults.

4. Plug the connector into the wall outlet.
5. Confirm that the universal home charge cord's LEDs illuminate.
6. Plug the charge coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.

Note: Your vehicle will lock to the charge coupler.

Note: When you plug in your vehicle, it will start charging to 100% by default unless scheduled charging has been set up for this location.

Note: Plug the connector into the wall outlet before connecting the charge coupler to your vehicle's charge port.

Note: When the handle is properly engaged the light ring will illuminate. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.

Note: There could be a delay in light ring illumination due to vehicle internal communications.

Note: If charging for your vehicle fails, please contact the Customer Relationship Center. To ensure superior service, please take note of the serial number when contacting customer support.

For more information, visit www.owner.ford.com.

Charging Your Vehicle

Stopping Charging



1. Push the coupler unlock button on the light ring and remove the charge coupler handle from the vehicle.

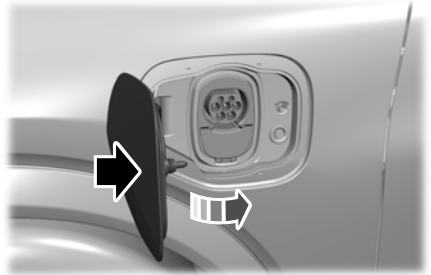
Note: Do not attempt to remove the charge coupler before you unlock it. Do not use any kind of tool to try and remove a locked charge coupler. Doing so could damage your vehicle and the charge coupler.

Note: You cannot unlock the charge coupler handle unless the vehicle remote is near the vehicle.

Note: You can also unlock the cord through your vehicle touchscreen. If the cord still does not unlock, please contact roadside assistance.

Note: If the charging equipment remains connected, the charge port relocks in a short period of time. Charging does not resume.

Note: You cannot shift your vehicle out of park (P) until you remove the charge coupler handle.



2. Press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door to close.

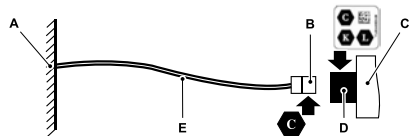
CHARGING IN PUBLIC



AC charging preserves the health of the high voltage battery for longer high voltage battery life.

When AC charging, keep your vehicle plugged in when outside temperatures are very high or low. This enables the system to maintain the high voltage battery for best performance.

When using an AC charge station with cables attached, choose charge station cord coupler where the same identifier symbol can be seen.



- A AC charge station.
- B Charge coupler.
- C Vehicle.

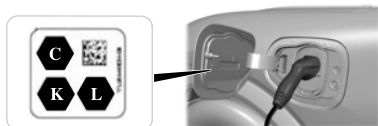
Charging Your Vehicle

- D Charge port receptacle.
- E Cable.

1. Put your vehicle in park (P).

Note: Your vehicle must be in park (P) to charge.

2. Press the center right hand edge of the charge port door and then release to open the door.
3. Select the appropriate charge station coupler.
4. Plug the charge coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.



Note: Your vehicle will lock to the charge coupler.

Note: When you plug in your vehicle, it will start charging to 100% by default unless scheduled charging has been set up for this location.

Note: When the handle is properly engaged the light ring will illuminate. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.

Note: There could be a delay in light ring illumination due to vehicle internal communications.

Information about the public charge stations is available through the app located in the vehicle touchscreen as well as the vehicle app on a mobile device with pricing, power levels, and real time availability. Rates for charging varies by power level, provider, location, and time of day.

Note: If your vehicle does not have the customer connectivity settings option in the vehicle touchscreen, the app may not function as intended.

Note: Depending on the region, the functionality of the public charging app may not be supported and charge function may not operate as stated.

When charging your vehicle at a BlueOval Charge Network station, use the vehicle App to activate and pay for charging. You can also just plug in to activate charging at Plug & Charge capable stations. If the charging station is not in the BlueOval Charge Network, use the directions on the charge station to activate the charger.

For more information, visit www.owner.ford.com.

Stopping Charging



Charging Your Vehicle

1. Push the coupler unlock button on the light ring and remove the charge coupler handle from the vehicle.

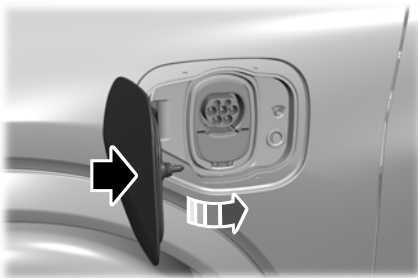
Note: Do not attempt to remove the charge coupler before you unlock it. Do not use any kind of tool to try and remove a locked charge coupler. Doing so could damage your vehicle and the charge coupler.

Note: You cannot unlock the charge coupler handle unless the vehicle remote is near the vehicle.

Note: You can also unlock the cord through your vehicle touchscreen. If the cord still does not unlock, please contact roadside assistance.

Note: If the charging equipment remains connected, the charge port relocks in a short period of time. Charging does not resume.

Note: You cannot shift your vehicle out of park (P) until you remove the charge coupler handle.



2. Press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door to close.

CHARGING USING YOUR PUBLIC CHARGE CORD

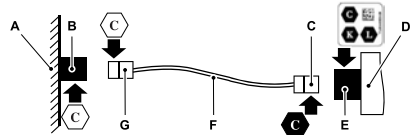


AC charging preserves the health of the high voltage battery for longer high voltage battery life.

When AC charging, keep your vehicle plugged in when outside temperatures are very high or low. This enables the system to maintain the high voltage battery for best performance.

When using an AC charge station without cables attached, plug your public charge cord into the charge station and the vehicle charge port where the same identifier symbol can be seen.

You must unwrap the public charge cord completely before charging.



- A AC charge station.
- B Charge station port.
- C Vehicle charge coupler.
- D Vehicle.
- E Charge port receptacle.
- F Public charge cable.
- G Charge station charge coupler.

1. Put your vehicle in park (P).

Note: Your vehicle must be in park (P) to charge.

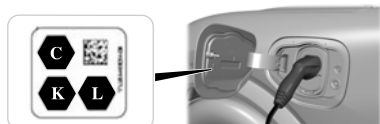
2. Press the center right hand edge of the charge port door and then release to open the door.

Charging Your Vehicle

3. Select the appropriate charge station port.
4. Plug your public charge cord into the charge station port.

Note: To insert the coupler, firmly grasp the handle and push into the charge station port.

5. Plug the charge coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.



Note: Your vehicle will lock to the charge coupler.

Note: When you plug in your vehicle, it will start charging to 100% by default unless scheduled charging has been set up for this location.

Note: When the handle is properly engaged the light ring will illuminate. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.

Note: There could be a delay in light ring illumination due to vehicle internal communications.

Information about the public charge stations is available through the app located in the vehicle touchscreen as well as the vehicle app on a mobile device with pricing, power levels, and real time availability. Rates for charging varies by power level, provider, location, and time of day.

Note: If your vehicle does not have the customer connectivity settings option in the vehicle touchscreen, the app may not function as intended.

Note: Depending on the region, the functionality of the charge assist app may not be supported and charge function may not operate as stated.

When charging your vehicle at a BlueOval Charge Network station, use the vehicle App to activate and pay for charging. You can also just plug in to activate charging at Plug & Charge capable stations. If the charging station is not in the BlueOval Charge Network, use the directions on the charge station to activate the charger.

For more information, visit www.owner.ford.com.

Stopping Charging



1. Push the coupler unlock button on the light ring and remove the charge coupler handle from the vehicle.

Note: Do not attempt to remove the charge coupler before you unlock it. Do not use any kind of tool to try and remove a locked charge coupler. Doing so could damage your vehicle and the charge coupler.

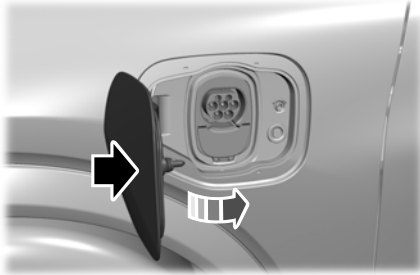
Note: You cannot unlock the charge coupler handle unless the vehicle remote is near the vehicle.

Note: You can also unlock the cord through your vehicle touchscreen. If the cord still does not unlock, please contact roadside assistance.

Note: If the charging equipment remains connected, the charge port relocks in a short period of time. Charging does not resume.

Charging Your Vehicle

Note: You cannot shift your vehicle out of park (P) until you remove the charge coupler handle.



2. Press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door to close.

DC CHARGING



DC charging allows you to charge the vehicle's high voltage battery in significantly less time than the standard charge method. You can charge on the go before the battery has exhausted all of its power, or when traveling using the trip planner.

Ending the charge at 100% maximizes the driving range for your next trip. Ending the charge at 80% or lower helps to preserve the health of the high voltage battery. Charge rates are significantly slower above 80% state of charge.

In cold temperatures, you may notice that DC charging takes longer when the ambient temperature drops below 10°C (50°F). Shutting off climate control or reducing climate control temperature and fan settings for the first 10 to 15 minutes of DC charging allows the battery to warm up and improve the charging rate.

For the convenience of DC charging and time, there is a different fee structure depending on the charging station and network you choose.

Note: The system could reduce DC fast charging rate to preserve the battery. This is based on battery temperature, battery state of charge and battery health.

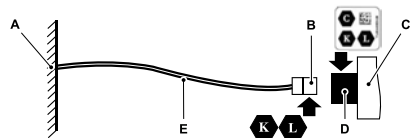
Note: When the temperature is below freezing, fully turning off cabin heat for the first 10 to 15 minutes of DC charging could significantly improve the charging rate.

Note: Charge times vary depending on outside air temperature, power level, charger type, and location in which you are charging.

Note: The system could reduce the DC charging rate to maximize the life of the battery.

To charge the high-voltage battery at a charge station:

When using charge station with cables attached, choose the charge station cord coupler where the same identifier symbol can be seen.



- A DC charging station.
- B Charge coupler.
- C Vehicle.
- D Charge port receptacle.
- E Cable.

1. Put your vehicle in park (P).

Note: Your vehicle must be in park (P) to charge and for the charge status indicator to illuminate.

Charging Your Vehicle

2. Press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door and then release to open the door.
3. Open the dust cap cover on the charge port to expose lower connectors.



4. Plug the charge coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.



Note: Your vehicle locks to the charge coupler.

Note: When the charge coupler is properly engaged, the light ring illuminates. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.

Note: The vehicle monitors battery health and may take actions including reducing the DC fast charge rate to protect the battery hardware from damage, and to maintain battery health.

Information about the public charge stations is available through the app located in the vehicle touchscreen as well as the vehicle app on a mobile device with pricing, power levels, and real time availability. Rates for charging varies by power level, provider, location, and time of day.

Note: If your vehicle does not have the customer connectivity settings option in the vehicle touchscreen, the app may not function as intended.

Note: Depending on the region, the functionality of the public charging app may not be supported and charge function may not operate as stated.

Stopping Charging

1. Push the coupler unlock button on the light ring and remove the charge coupler handle from the vehicle.



2. Close the dust cap cover.

Note: Do not attempt to remove the charge coupler before you unlock it. Do not use any kind of tool to try and remove a locked charge coupler. Doing so could damage your vehicle and the charge coupler.

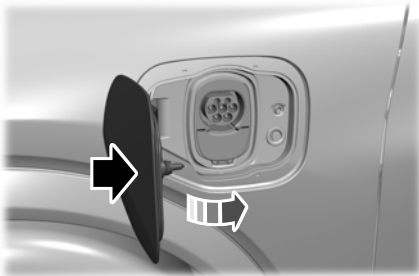
Note: You cannot unlock the charge coupler handle unless the vehicle remote is near the vehicle.

Charging Your Vehicle

Note: You can also unlock the cord through your vehicle touchscreen. If the cord still does not unlock, please contact roadside assistance.

Note: If the charging equipment remains connected, the charge port relocks in a short period of time. Charging does not resume.

Note: You cannot shift your vehicle out of park (P) until you remove the charge coupler handle.



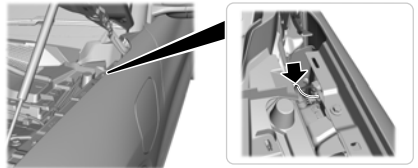
3. Press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door to close.

CHARGE COUPLER MANUAL RELEASE

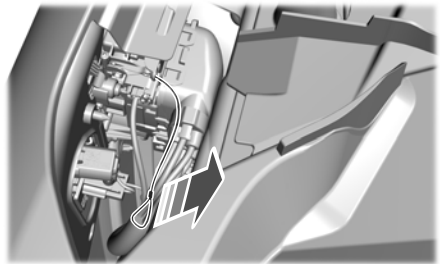
If your vehicle does not unlock the charge coupler, you can manually release it.

Releasing the charge coupler:

1. Switch off your vehicle.
2. Open the hood.
3. Remove the inner luggage compartment shields. See **Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover** (page 269).



4. Between the gap of the hood and windshield, access the manual release mechanism and pull the pull ring firmly, perpendicularly towards the center of your vehicle. Once pulled, make sure you do not tangle the pull ring cord as it resets on the next charge session.



5. Remove the charge coupler from the charge port.
6. Reinstall the inner luggage compartment shields. See **Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover** (page 269).
7. Close the hood.

Note: The next time you plug in to charge your vehicle, the locking mechanism re-engages and the pull ring resets.

Charging Your Vehicle

CHARGING SETTINGS

You can schedule charging to take advantage of lower-cost electricity rates during off-peak hours if you have signed up for a time of use pricing plan with your utility provider. You can also set an upper charge limit for your battery and a departure time and cabin temperature so your vehicle is ready to go when you are.

Scheduled charging can be set up in the center display or in the vehicle app.

To view your charge settings:

1.  Press to open the settings menu.
2.  Press charge settings.

Charge Status

Shows the present state of charging system.

Charge Status	Details
Will charge when plugged in	The vehicle is unplugged and starts charging once plugged in.
Will wait for preferred charging time	The vehicle is unplugged at a location with charging time preferences enabled. Charging is scheduled to start at the time displayed based on your settings. You must plug in prior to the start time shown for the vehicle to begin charging at that time.
Waiting for preferred charging time	The vehicle is plugged in at a location with charging time preferences enabled. Charging starts at the time displayed, which is based on your charge time settings.
Charging stopped	The vehicle is plugged in and charging has been stopped through the vehicle app.
Charging	The vehicle is plugged in and charging.
Fast charging	The vehicle is plugged into a DC fast charge station and charging.
Charged	The vehicle finished charging to the max charge limit setting.
Charging 12V battery	The vehicle is plugged in and charging the 12V battery.
Conditioning the cabin	The vehicle is plugged in and the climate control system is operating according to the departure and comfort settings.

Charging Your Vehicle

Charge Status	Details
Conditioning the battery	The vehicle is plugged in and conditioning the high voltage battery.
Vehicle charging fault	The vehicle is plugged in and there is a fault within the vehicle charging system. Unplug and plug back in. If the fault is still present, contact your authorized EV certified dealer.
Charge station fault	The vehicle is plugged in and a fault has been detected with the charging station or charging cord. Check the charging cord and the charging station or electrical supply.
Charge station not detected	A charging coupler has been plugged into the vehicle but there is no connection with a charging power source.
Charge station paused	The vehicle is plugged in and charging has been paused at the charging station.

Charge Status Indicators

Displays when your vehicle is plugged in.



Not charging due to a fault.



Not currently charging.



Charging.



Waiting to charge based on charge time settings.

High Voltage Battery State of Charge

Displays the remaining charge percentage with 100% representing the total amount of energy you can get from an external charge.

Estimated Vehicle Driving Range

Displays the estimated distance the vehicle can travel with the current high voltage battery charge level. See **Vehicle Range Display** (page 104).

Live Charging Information

When the vehicle is charging, the charging information is displayed on the charging screen:

- Live Charging Power.
- Live Charging Current.

Note: *Live charging current is displayed only when the vehicle is AC charging.*

Target Charge

Displays the charge percentage at which charging stops and can be adjusted using the main slider.

Note: *Daily and Trip labels are displayed to suggest the target charge for each of these usages considering battery life and vehicle range.*

Charging Your Vehicle

Charging End Time

When charging, the estimated end time displays.

When your vehicle is at a saved charging location and not plugged in, the end time displays based on known charging infrastructure.

Note: *Charging time information is estimated. Certain conditions could result in longer charging times.*

Departures Times Card

Displays the next departure time and associated cabin comfort setting.

Press the Departures Times card to access the departure and comfort settings.

Setting departure times allows you to control charging schedules and warm or cool your cabin and the high voltage battery when your vehicle is plugged in, so your vehicle is ready to drive when you are. By setting a departure time, your vehicle can use your charge time settings to minimize your electricity costs but still prioritize finishing charging before your scheduled departure. The calendar view allows you to program two departure times per day for each day of the week.

Note: *By using energy from your charging source while plugged in, battery temperature can be managed for best driving performance and less energy is needed for heating or cooling of the cabin at the start of your drive. This helps maximize your driving range.*

Note: *You can also access this feature using the vehicle app. Additional information and settings are displayed on the charge settings screen once charging locations and departure and comfort have been set up.*

Preferred Charge Times Card

Displays the preferred charge times set for the current location.

Press the preferred charge times card to set preferred charge times for a specific charging location.

When you are at a saved charging location, your vehicle prioritizes charging based on your preferred charge schedule. You can set one preferred charge time for weekdays and another one for weekends. This feature allows you to take advantage of electric utility rate plans that offer lower pricing during certain times of day. Contact your utility company to see what plans are available.

Note: *For saved charging locations, your vehicle charges during your preferred charge times. Charging outside these charge time windows only occurs when additional charging time is needed to reach the maximum charge level by your next departure time. In this case, the vehicle begins charging right away after plugging in.*

Note: *You can also access this feature using the vehicle app.*

Advanced Menu

Allows you to limit the current rate when AC charging.

Departure and Comfort

Follow these steps to set departure times and cabin comfort level.

Note: *The departure and comfort settings do not apply when connected to a DC fast charger.*

1. Press the departures times card on the charge settings screen.

Charging Your Vehicle

2. Select a time for each day of the week you want your settings to apply. Select the hour and minutes as well as your desired comfort level. Your selected days or times now display your departure and comfort settings. Press save to apply your settings. The departures times card on the charge settings screen updates appropriately.

Note: Save your departure settings before selecting additional days or times. The process must be repeated in order to add additional unique departure times and comfort levels.

Note: Cabin conditioning comfort level could vary depending on if you plug into a normal household outlet or a higher power outlet or charging station. The power available for conditioning is limited to the charging station power available. At low ambient temperatures and low charge power, a small amount of high voltage battery power in addition to the charging power could be used to heat the cabin.

Preferred Charge Times

Follow these steps to set preferred charge times for a charging location.

Note: The vehicle uses your current location to create the new charge schedule. Before saving a new location, ensure that the vehicle has successfully charged at that location for at least a few minutes.

Note: Charging location settings do not apply to DC fast chargers.

1. Press the preferred charge times card on the charge settings screen.
2. To add the current charging location, press the add location button. You can also edit settings for previously saved locations.
3. Edit the nickname of the location and press the next button.

Note: The name of the location cannot start with a blank character and cannot contain special characters.

4. Set one preferred charge time for weekdays and or weekends by specifying if the charging time applies to weekdays or weekends and the start and end time of the charge time. After defining the preferred charge times for weekdays and weekends, press the save button to store the settings.

Note: Selecting all or none of the 24 hours results in any time of day given equal priority for charging.

5. Return to the previous screen and see the summary of the preferred charge times for this location. Press the back arrow to return to the charge settings screen or press the location to change its settings.

Note: Reaching your target charge by your next departure time is always the priority. When preferred charge times are set, charging outside your preferred charging time windows could be necessary in order to finish by your next departure time. In this case, the vehicle typically begins charging right away after plugging in.

AC Rate

Follow these steps to set the AC rate and limit the current anytime the vehicle is AC charging.

1. Press the advanced menu on the charge settings screen.
2. Set the AC rate using the slider.
3. Return to the previous screen to save the value set.

USING YOUR VEHICLE APP AND CHARGING

The vehicle app allows you to do the following:

Charging Your Vehicle

- Monitor and manage your vehicle's charging, including charge schedules and preferences.
- Locate a charger and activate a charger on the Charging Network.
- Plan a trip and charging options along your route.
- Check charging station plug availability.
- Initiate a charge session automatically at Plug and Charge capable charge stations.

- Control your Connected Charge Station remotely.
- Override charge preferences and starting and stopping charging.

For more information, visit www.owner.ford.com.

CHARGING EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION SYMBOLS



Identifier symbol visible on vehicle cord couplers, charge station cord couplers and vehicle charge ports.

Supply Type	Standard	Configuration	Type of Accessory	Voltage Range
AC	EN 62196-2	Type 2	Vehicle coupler, charge station coupler and vehicle charge port.	Lower or equal to 480 volt RMS



Identifier symbol visible on charge station ports and your public charge cord coupler.

Supply Type	Standard	Configuration	Type of Accessory	Voltage Range
AC	EN 62196-2	Type 2	Charge station port, public charge cord coupler.	Lower or equal to 480 volt RMS



Charge station coupler identifier symbol.

Charging Your Vehicle

Supply Type	Standard	Configuration	Type of Accessory	Voltage Range
DC	EN 62196-3	FF	Vehicle coupler, vehicle charge port, and charge station coupler.	50 volt to 500 volt



Charge station coupler identifier symbol.

Supply Type	Standard	Configuration	Type of Accessory	Voltage Range
DC	EN 62196-3	FF	Vehicle coupler, vehicle charge port, and charge station coupler.	200 volt to 920 volt

CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING

CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – WARNING LAMPS



It illuminates when your vehicle is plugged in.

Charging Your Vehicle

CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Vehicle plugged in?	Your vehicle needs confirmation you unplugged it before allowing a start. You must make sure you unplugged your vehicle and you respond to the message prompt before starting your vehicle.
Plug in to Maintain 12V Battery	Indicates that the high voltage battery can no longer support the 12 volt battery due to its low range. Plug in your vehicle to charge the high voltage battery and maintain the 12 volt battery at a healthy state.
Charging station malfunction See manual	Your plugged in vehicle detects a fault with the charge station or charging cord. Please check the charging cord and the charging station or electrical supply.
Charge Station Communication Error Contact Station Provider	Your plugged in vehicle cannot communicate with the charging station. Please contact the station provider.

Charging Your Vehicle

CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

My vehicle does not charge

- Ensure you properly connect the connector and control box. Unplug the charge coupler from your vehicle and unplug the connector from the wall outlet. Then check the connector to be sure that the connector is properly connected into the mobile charger control box. If the mobile charger is warm, or in a hot environment, try charging in a cooler area. Try a different outlet or a different connector if you have one available. If the problem persists, contact an authorized EV certified dealer.

Electric Motor

SELECTOR POSITIONS

ELECTRIC MOTOR PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the vehicle off and remove the key or remote control before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



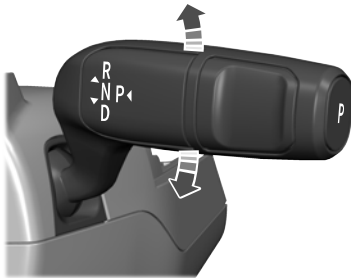
WARNING: When your vehicle is stationary, keep the brake pedal fully pressed when shifting gears. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.



WARNING: Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds limits vehicle performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

SHIFTING YOUR VEHICLE INTO GEAR

The selector is on the steering column.



1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Move the selector one position up or down to select neutral (N).
3. Move the selector two positions up to select reverse (R).
4. Move the selector two positions down to select drive (D).
5. Press the park (P) button to select park (P).

PARK (P)



WARNING: Shift into park (P) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In park (P) power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

Note: A tone sounds if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the vehicle in park (P).

Note: Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) if the 12V battery has run out of charge.

Note: Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) if a fuse is blown.

Note: Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) unless the key or remote control is inside your vehicle.

Note: The electronic parking brake could apply when you power your vehicle on with the selector in park (P).

Note: The electronic parking brake could apply if you shift to park (P) without fully pressing the brake pedal.

Note: The electronic parking brake could apply if you shift to park (P) on a slope.

Note: Do not manually release the parking brake when the selector is in park (P). See **Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake** (page 174).

Electric Motor

Note: Your vehicle could shift into park (P) if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the vehicle in park (P). See **How Does Roll-Away Protection Work** (page 168).

Note: A tone could sound when you select park (P).

REVERSE (R)



WARNING: Shift into reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In reverse (R) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

NEUTRAL (N)



WARNING: In neutral (N) your vehicle is free to roll.

In neutral (N) power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

DRIVE (D)

In drive (D) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

SELECTOR POSITION INDICATORS

The instrument cluster displays the current position.



Note: The position could illuminate on the transmission selector.

SHIFTING YOUR IMMOBILE VEHICLE OUT OF PARK (P)



WARNING: When doing this procedure, you need to take your vehicle out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, apply the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheels chocks if appropriate.

Use this procedure to shift your vehicle out of park (P) in the event of an electrical malfunction or emergency.

Note: This mode could be unavailable if your 12 volt battery charge level is low. Connect an external power source and attempt the procedure again.

Note: Your vehicle could shift to park (P) after 30 minutes, or when the vehicle battery charge level is low. Prolonged use of this mode can cause the 12 volt battery to run out of charge.

Note: This mode could be unavailable if your vehicle is below operating temperature. Warm up your vehicle and attempt the procedure again.

Note: Do not tow your vehicle in this mode. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Shifting Your Vehicle Out of Park (P)

1. Apply the parking brake.

Note: If the battery has run out of charge, use an external power source to apply the parking brake.

2. Power your vehicle on without your foot on the brake pedal.

3. Fully press and hold the brake pedal.

Electric Motor

4. Fully press and hold the accelerator pedal.
5. Shift into neutral (N).
6. Shift into neutral (N) again within a few seconds.
7. Attempt to start your vehicle.

Note: A confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters the mode.

Note: You must complete this procedure within 15 seconds. If your vehicle shifts into park (P) attempt the procedure again.

8. Release the accelerator and brake pedals.
9. Release the parking brake.
- Note:** Your vehicle is free to roll.
10. Switch your vehicle off.

Note: Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.

Returning Your Vehicle to Normal Mode

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P).

ELECTRIC MOTOR AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Vehicle Not In Park (P) Audible Warning

Sounds if you open the driver door before shifting into park (P).

Park Selection Audible Warning

Sounds when you shift into park (P).

ROLL-AWAY PROTECTION

HOW DOES ROLL-AWAY PROTECTION WORK

Roll-away protection is always active by default. It secures the vehicle by automatically shifting to park (P) if the driver exits or switches the vehicle off without shifting to park (P).

Roll-away protection can be temporarily deactivated. When deactivated the vehicle is free to roll even if the driver exits the vehicle, such as in an automatic car wash.

Note: You do not need to use this mode at an automatic car wash if you shift into neutral (N) and stay in your vehicle with the power on.

Do not tow your vehicle in this mode. See **Towing Your Vehicle** (page 291).

ROLL-AWAY PROTECTION LIMITATIONS

When roll-away protection is deactivated, the vehicle is free to roll. Make sure to avoid unwanted vehicle movement. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Your vehicle reactivates roll-away protection if any of the following occur:

- You shift into park (P).
- You select a position other than neutral (N).

Roll-away protection may not work if any of the following occur:

- The driver door ajar sensor is malfunctioning.
- The driver seatbelt sensor is malfunctioning.

Electric Motor

Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible if any of the following occur:

- Seatbelt indicator illuminates or tone sounds with the driver seatbelt fastened.
- Door ajar indicator does not illuminate with the driver door open.
- Door ajar indicator illuminates with the driver door closed.
- Transmission not in park message appears, with the driver door closed, after you shift out of park (P).

Note: *If drive (D), low (L) or reverse (R) is selected, the vehicle is ready to drive.*

SWITCHING THE ROLL-AWAY PROTECTION ON AND OFF

Switching the Roll-Away Protection Off

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Power your vehicle on.
3. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop.
4. Shift into neutral (N).

Note: *An instructional message appears.*

5. Shift into neutral (N) again within a few seconds.

Note: *A confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters the mode.*

6. Release the brake pedal.

Note: *Your vehicle is free to roll.*

7. Switch your vehicle off.

Note: *Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.*

Note: *The neutral (N) indicator on the selector may flash in this mode.*

Switching the Roll-Away Protection On

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P), or power your vehicle on and shift into drive (D) or reverse (R).

All-Wheel Drive

HOW DOES ALL-WHEEL DRIVE WORK

The all-wheel drive system is designed to continuously monitor and adjust power delivery to the front and rear wheels to optimize both traction and handling.

There is further information on driving in unique driving conditions. See **Driving Hints** (page 279).

ALL-WHEEL DRIVE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not become overconfident in the ability of all-wheel drive vehicles. Although an all-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

ALL-WHEEL DRIVE LIMITATIONS

The all-wheel drive system is not intended for use with mismatched tires.

Different tire sizes between the front and rear axles can cause system damage.

ALL-WHEEL DRIVE – TROUBLESHOOTING

ALL-WHEEL DRIVE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
AWD Temporarily Disabled	The all-wheel drive system temporarily turns off to protect itself from overheating.
AWD Off	The all-wheel drive system is not operating properly. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer.
AWD Restored	The all-wheel drive system will resume normal function.

Brakes

BRAKE PRECAUTIONS

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when leaving a car wash or driving from standing water to dry the brakes.

Note: Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, your brake lamps may flash during heavy braking. Following this, your hazard lights may also flash when your vehicle comes to a stop.

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The anti-lock braking system does not eliminate the risk of crash when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

Note: If the system activates, the brake pedal could pulse and travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal.

BRAKE OVER ACCELERATOR

If your accelerator pedal becomes stuck or trapped:

- Apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce power.
- Bring your vehicle to a complete stop and place it in park (P).
- Switch the power off.
- Apply the parking brake.

Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interference. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. If your vehicle has to be towed, we recommend that you contact a professional towing service.

LOCATING THE BRAKE FLUID RESERVOIR

See **Under Hood Overview** (page 303).

CHECKING THE BRAKE FLUID



WARNING: Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



WARNING: The brake system could be affected if the brake fluid level is below the **MIN** mark or above the **MAX** mark on the brake fluid reservoir.

1. Park your vehicle on a level surface.

Brakes



Only use fluid that meets our specifications. See **Brake Fluid Specification** (page 172).

BRAKE FLUID SPECIFICATION

Use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced brake performance.

Note: We recommend you to use Dot 4 Low Viscosity (LV) High Performance Brake Fluid meeting WSS-M6C65-A2 specifications or ISO 4925 Class 6 standards. If you use any fluid other than the recommended fluid, it could cause reduced brake performance and not meet our performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials could result in brake system damage and possible failure.

2. Look at the brake fluid reservoir to see where the brake fluid level is relative to the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the reservoir.

Note: To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill as required.

Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance RU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2

Brakes

BRAKES – TROUBLESHOOTING

BRAKES – WARNING LAMPS



WARNING: Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It may take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.



If the ABS indicator illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock braking system function. See an authorized dealer.

It also momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

BRAKE



The brake indicator momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. It may also illuminate when you apply the parking brake and the ignition is on. If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. See an authorized dealer.

Note: Lamps may vary depending on region.

BRAKES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Is occasional brake noise normal

Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings could be worn-out. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

Note: Brake dust could accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear, and does not contribute to brake noise. See **Cleaning Wheels** (page 313).

Electric Parking Brake

WHAT IS THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

The electric parking brake is used to hold your vehicle on slopes and flat roads.

APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the vehicle off and remove the key or remote control before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.



WARNING: The electric parking brake does not operate if the vehicle battery has run out of charge.



The electronic parking brake switch is on the center console.

Pull the switch up to apply the electric parking brake. The red warning lamp flashes, then steadily illuminates when the parking brake is applied.

Note: You can apply the electric parking brake when the vehicle is off.

Note: The electric parking brake could automatically apply when you shift into park (P). See **Park (P)** (page 166).

APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IN AN EMERGENCY

You can use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle in an emergency. Pull the switch up and hold it.

The red warning lamp illuminates, a tone sounds and the stoplamps turn on when you use the electric parking brake in an emergency.

The electric parking brake continues to slow your vehicle down unless you release the switch.

Note: Do not apply the electric parking brake when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency. If you repeatedly use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle, you could cause damage to the brake system.

MANUALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

1. Switch the power on.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Push the switch down.

The red warning lamp turns off.

AUTOMATICALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

1. Close the driver door.
2. Shift into gear.
3. Press the accelerator pedal and pull away in a normal manner.

Electric Parking Brake

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving. If the warning tone continues after you have released the parking brake, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IF THE VEHICLE BATTERY HAS RUN OUT OF CHARGE

See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 287).

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – TROUBLESHOOTING

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – WARNING LAMPS

Brake System



It illuminates red when you apply the parking brake and your vehicle is on. If the lamp flashes when the parking brake has been released, this indicates the parking brake system requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *Lamps may vary depending on region.*

Electric Parking Brake



When the lamp illuminates yellow, it indicates a malfunction in the electric parking brake. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *Lamps may vary depending on region.*

Electric Parking Brake

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Park brake Press brake and switch to release	The electric parking brake is set and a manual release is attempted without the brake pedal being pressed.
Park brake Use switch to release	The electric parking brake is set and an automatic release is attempted but cannot be performed. Perform a manual release.
Release park brake	The electric parking brake is set and your vehicle speed exceeds 5 km/h (3 mph). Release the electric parking brake before continuing to drive.
Park brake not applied	The electric parking brake is not fully applied.
Park Brake not released	The electric parking brake is not fully released.
Brake maintenance mode	The electric parking brake system has been put into a special mode to allow brake service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.
Park brake Limited function Service required	The electric parking brake system has detected a condition that requires service. Some functionality may still be available. Have the system checked as soon as possible.
Park brake malfunction Service now	The electric parking brake system has detected a condition that requires service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Reverse Brake Assist

WHAT IS REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST

Reverse brake assist is designed to reduce impact damage or assist in avoiding a collision while in reverse (R).

HOW DOES REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST WORK

Reverse brake assist functions when in reverse (R) and traveling at a speed of 2–12 km/h (1–7 mph).

If the system detects an obstacle behind your vehicle, it provides a warning through the rear parking aid or cross traffic alert system. Using sensors on the rear of the vehicle, it can detect a possible collision and apply the brakes. If full braking occurs, the system attempts to stop the vehicle a safe distance from the obstacle.

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



WARNING: Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



WARNING: Some situations and objects prevent hazard detection. For example low or direct sunlight, inclement weather, unconventional vehicle types, and pedestrians. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use the system with accessories that extend beyond the front or rear of your vehicle, for example a trailer hitch or bike rack. The system is not able to make corrections for the additional length of the accessories.

The system only applies the brakes for a short period of time when an event occurs. Act as soon as you notice the brakes apply to remain in control of the vehicle. If you do not intervene the vehicle may start to move again.

Note: Certain add-on devices around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts. For example, large trailer hitches, bicycle or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device that may block the normal detection zone of the system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.

Reverse Brake Assist

Note: The system does not react to small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

Note: The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering.

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia leaving it misaligned or bent, it could alter the sensing zone causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.

Note: Vehicle loading and suspension changes can impact the angle of the sensors and may change the normal detection zone of the system resulting in inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.

Note: When you connect a trailer, the system may detect the trailer and provide an alert, or the system turns off. If the system does not turn off, manually switch the system off after you connect the trailer.

Note: You may experience reduced system performance on road surfaces that limit deceleration. For example, roads with ice, loose gravel, mud or sand.

SWITCHING REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST ON AND OFF

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Reverse Brake Assist. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 362).

2. Switch the feature on or off.

Note: The system is unavailable when the rear parking aid or cross traffic alert is off.

Note: If your vehicle is not equipped with cross traffic alert, the reverse brake assist relies on input from only the rear parking aid and rear camera sensors.

OVERRIDING REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST

There could be instances when unexpected or unwanted braking occurs. Firmly pressing the accelerator pedal or switching the feature off overrides the system.

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST INDICATORS

If the system determines that a collision with an obstacle may occur, full braking may apply.



A message and warning indicator appear when the system applies the brakes.

Reverse Brake Assist

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Reverse Brake Assist	Displays for a few seconds when the system applies the brakes.
Reverse Brake Assist Not Available See Manual	Make sure the rear parking aid and cross traffic alert systems are switched on. Make sure that all doors, liftgate or tailgate and hood are closed and no vehicle add-on devices or modifications are interfering with the system. Drive the vehicle on a straight road for a short period. If the message remains, have the system checked as soon as possible.
Reverse Brake Assist Fault	Displays when a system error has occurred. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Reverse Brake Assist Off	Displays when reverse brake assist is off.

Reverse Brake Assist

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What are the precautions to be followed when using the reverse brake assist system?

- The system uses a combination of rear parking aid cameras and parking sensors for operation. Poor visibility or low lighting conditions can impact performance. Make sure the rear parking aid cameras and parking sensors are not dirty or obstructed.
- Reverse your vehicle slowly. On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to road infrastructure, for example sloped driveways and textured surfaces behind the vehicle or objects close to the reversing path.

Why is reverse brake assist unavailable?

- Make sure you switch the system on. See **Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off** (page 178).
- Make sure that the liftgate or tailgate, hood and all doors are closed.
- Make sure the cross traffic alert system is on. See **What Is Cross Traffic Alert** (page 246).
- Make sure the rear parking aid system is on.
- Make sure that traction control is on. See **Switching Traction Control On and Off** (page 183).
- Your vehicle may have sustained a rear end impact. Have the sensors checked for proper coverage and operation.

- Make sure the exterior cameras are not dirty or obstructed. If dirty, clean the cameras. If the reverse brake assist unavailable message still appears after cleaning the cameras, wait a short time for the message to clear. If the message does not clear, drive the vehicle on a straight road for a short period. If the message remains, have the system checked.
- Make sure the sensors are not blocked or faulted. See **Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors** (page 192). See **Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors** (page 248).
- You recently had your vehicle serviced, or the battery disconnected. Drive your vehicle a short distance to resume system operation.
- The system does not function when you connect a trailer. Operation resumes when you disconnect the trailer.

Note: *If you are still having problems with reverse brake assist, have the system checked as soon as possible.*

Hill Start Assist

WHAT IS HILL START ASSIST

Hill Start Assist applies the brakes to hold your vehicle after you bring it to a stop on a slope. This makes it easier for you to pull away without using the parking brake.



WARNING: The system turns off if there is a malfunction.

HOW DOES HILL START ASSIST WORK

When the system activates, your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds after you release the brake pedal. This gives you time to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal. The brakes release when you apply the accelerator pedal and the vehicle begins to move forward, or the system exceeds the time allowed for automatically applying the brakes.

The system activates when your vehicle is in any forward gear and facing uphill, or when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and facing downhill.

HILL START ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.



WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system, and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Auto Hold

HOW DOES AUTO HOLD WORK

Auto hold applies the brakes to hold your vehicle after you bring the vehicle to a stop. This can help when waiting on a hill or in traffic.

SWITCHING AUTO HOLD ON AND OFF



WARNING: The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.



WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system, and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Switch Auto Hold on or off.

Note: You can only switch the system on after you close the driver door.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

USING AUTO HOLD

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop. The auto hold active indicator illuminates in the instrument cluster display.

2. Release the brake pedal. The system holds your vehicle at a standstill. The auto hold active indicator remains illuminated in the instrument cluster display.
3. Apply the accelerator and drive off in a normal manner. The system releases the brakes and the auto hold active indicator switches off.

Note: The system only activates if you apply enough pressure to the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a standstill.

Note: Under certain conditions, the system could apply the electric parking brake. The brake system warning lamp illuminates. The electric parking brake releases when you press the accelerator pedal. See **Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake** (page 174).

Note: The system switches off if you shift into reverse (R) or neutral (N) while pressing the brake pedal.

There could be actions that can cause the auto hold system not to work when the following occur:

- Your vehicle is in temporary neutral mode.
- The driver door is open.
- You shift into reverse (R) or neutral (N) before the system is active.

AUTO HOLD INDICATORS



Illuminates when the system is active.



Illuminates when the system is on but cannot hold your vehicle at a standstill at this particular time.

Traction Control

WHAT IS TRACTION CONTROL

The traction control system helps to avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

HOW DOES TRACTION CONTROL WORK

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces power in order to increase traction.

SWITCHING TRACTION CONTROL ON AND OFF

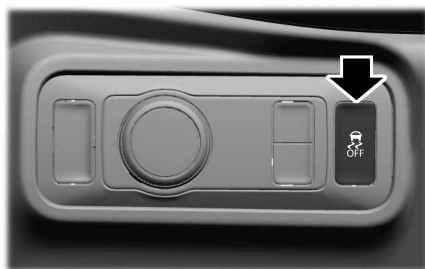


WARNING: Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The system turns traction control and stability control on each time you power on your vehicle.

The switch for the stability and traction control system is on the instrument panel.

If you press the switch, it turns traction control off.



When you switch the system off, a message and an illuminated icon appear in the instrument cluster.

Press the switch again to turn traction control on.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

Note: When you switch traction control off, stability control remains fully active.

TRACTION CONTROL INDICATOR

Stability and Traction Control Indicator



If the indicator does not illuminate on start-up, or remains on when driving the vehicle, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.



The traction control off indicator illuminates when you switch the traction control system off, or when an alternative stability control mode is selected that requires the traction control off depending on the drive mode selected.

Traction Control

TRACTION CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

TRACTION CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS

System Messages



The traction control light temporarily illuminates on

start-up and flashes when activated by a driving condition.

The traction control off light temporarily illuminates on start-up and stays on:

- When you switch the traction control system off.
- When you select an alternative stability control mode.
- If a problem occurs in the system.

TRACTION CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
ESC Service required	The system detects a condition that requires service. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Stability Control

HOW DOES STABILITY CONTROL WORK



WARNING: Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and wheel and tire size may change the handling characteristics of your vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the electronic stability control system. In addition, installing any stereo speakers may interfere with and adversely affect the electronic stability control system. Reducing the effectiveness of the electronic stability control system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



WARNING: Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the electronic stability control system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

If a driving condition activates either the stability control or the traction control system you may experience the following conditions:

- The stability and traction control light flashes.
- Your vehicle slows down.
- Reduced power.

The stability control system has several features built into it to help you maintain control of your vehicle:

Electronic Stability Control

Electronic stability control enhances your vehicle's ability to prevent skids or lateral slides by applying brakes to one or more of the wheels individually and, if necessary, reducing power.

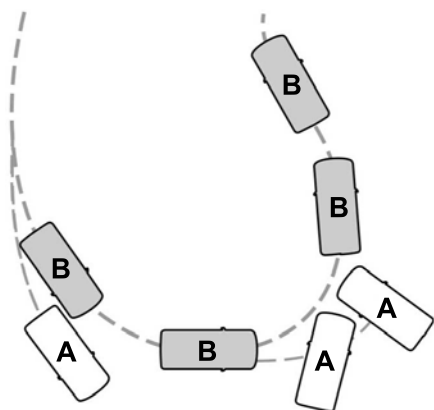
Curve Control

Curve control enhances your vehicle's ability to follow the road when cornering severely or avoiding objects in the roadway. Curve control operates by reducing power and, if necessary, applying brakes to one or more of the wheels individually.

Traction Control

Traction control enhances your vehicle's ability to maintain traction of the wheels by detecting and controlling wheel spin. See **What Is Traction Control** (page 183).

Stability Control



- A Vehicle without stability control skidding off its intended route.
- B Vehicle with stability control maintaining control on a slippery surface.

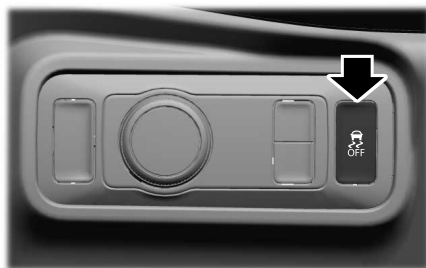
SWITCHING STABILITY CONTROL ON AND OFF

The system turns traction control and stability control on each time you power on your vehicle.

You can switch these systems off by using the button to the left of the steering wheel.

If you press the button, it will turn traction control off. See **Switching Traction Control On and Off** (page 183).

If you press and hold for 5 seconds, it turns stability control off.



Shifting into reverse (R) disables the system.

Note: With electronic stability control off, E-AWD protection controls remain active and could be noticeable in slippery conditions.

Note: While stability control can be turned off in any drive mode, the acceleration response in engage mode provides the most refined longitudinal control of the vehicle.

Note: When you choose the drive mode **Untame** and electronic stability control is off, it reduces the level of deceleration.

Stability Control

ESC Features				
Button Functions	Mode	Stability Control Off Light	Electronic Stability Control	Traction Control System
Default at start-up	-	On during bulb check	Enabled	Enabled
Button pressed momentarily	Traction control off	On	Enabled	Disabled
Button pressed and held more than five seconds	ESC disabled	On	Disabled	Disabled
Button pressed again after deactivation	ESC fully enabled	Off	Enabled	Enabled

Stability Control

STABILITY CONTROL INDICATOR



If it does not illuminate when you switch the power on, or remains on, this indicates a malfunction.

Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Steering

ELECTRIC POWER STEERING

HOW DOES ELECTRIC POWER STEERING WORK

Adaptive Learning

Adaptive learning helps correct road irregularities and improves overall handling and steering. It communicates with the brake system to help operate advanced stability control and crash avoidance systems.

Note: *When the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed, you must drive your vehicle a short distance before the system relearns the strategy and reactivates all systems.*

Steering Tips

If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

- An improperly inflated tire.
- Uneven tire wear.
- Loose or worn suspension components.
- Improper vehicle alignment.

Note: *A high crown in the road or high crosswinds could also make the steering wander or pull.*

ELECTRIC POWER STEERING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system. If a fault is detected, a message displays in the information display. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Switch the vehicle off. After at least 10

seconds, switch the vehicle on and watch the information display for a steering system warning message. If a steering system warning message returns, have the system checked as soon as possible.



WARNING: If the system detects an error, you may not feel a difference in the steering, however a serious condition may exist. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in loss of steering control.

Adapt your speed and driving behavior according to reduced steering assist.

Extreme continuous steering may increase the effort to steer. This occurs to prevent internal overheating and damage to the steering system. If this occurs, you will not lose the ability to steer your vehicle manually nor will it cause damage to the system. Normal steering and driving allows the system to cool down and steering assist returns to normal.

Note: *There is no fluid reservoir to check or fill.*

When your vehicle is still moving, a significant decrease in steering assistance or a loss of steering assistance could occur if:

- You switch your vehicle off.
- Your vehicle loses electrical power.
- Your vehicle detects a concern.

When your vehicle is off and your vehicle begins moving, there is no steering assistance.

Steering

STEERING – TROUBLESHOOTING

STEERING – WARNING LAMPS



The electric power steering system indicator illuminates if the system detects a fault during the continuous diagnostic checks.

Note: *If a red warning message displays, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.*

STEERING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Steering Fault Service Now	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering Loss Stop Safely	The power steering system is not working. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering Assist Fault Service Required	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering Lock Malfunction Service Now	The steering system has detected a condition that could prevent you from starting your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Parking Aids

PARKING AID PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



WARNING: Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



WARNING: The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.



WARNING: The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.



WARNING: The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.



WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this will cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

When you connect a trailer to your vehicle, the rear parking aid detects the trailer and provides an alert. Disable the parking aid when you connect a trailer to prevent the alert.

Note: Connected trailers might be detected by the vehicle and parking aid turns off automatically in those instances.

Note: Certain add-on devices installed around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts. For example, large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device could block the normal detection zone of the parking aid system. Aftermarket spare tires or spare tire covers mounted to the rear tailgate could cause false alerts from the park aid system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the system's accuracy can be affected.

Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

SWITCHING PARKING AID ON AND OFF

You can only switch the audible tone on and off. The parking aid system remains on at all times.

Muting the Audible Tone



Shift into reverse (R) and press the button on the rear view camera display screen to switch the system's audible tone on and off.

Parking Aids

REAR PARKING AID

WHAT IS THE REAR PARKING AID

Rear parking sensors detect objects behind your vehicle when in reverse (R).

REAR PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

There is a decreased coverage area at the outer corners.

The rear parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

The sensor coverage area is up to 180 cm (71 in) from the rear bumper.

The rear parking aid detects large objects when you shift into reverse (R) and any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is stationary but an object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed and an object is moving towards your vehicle, for example another vehicle at a low speed.

The system shall provide no audible warning for the object behind the vehicle when in neutral (N) gear.

LOCATING THE REAR PARKING AID SENSORS



The rear parking aid sensors are in the rear bumper.

REAR PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when your vehicle approaches an object. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases. The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the rear bumper.

Note: When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system could reduce the set volume.

FRONT PARKING AID

WHAT IS THE FRONT PARKING AID

Front parking sensors detect objects in front of your vehicle.

Parking Aids

FRONT PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

The front parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in any position other than park (P) and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

The sensor coverage area is up to 70 cm (28 in) from the front bumper.

If your vehicle is in reverse (R), the front parking aid detects objects and provides an audible warning when your vehicle is moving at a low speed and when an object is moving toward your vehicle, for example, another vehicle at a low speed. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning turns off. Visual indication is always active in reverse (R).

If your vehicle is in any forward gear, the front parking aid provides audible warnings and a visual indication when your vehicle is moving at a speed of 8 km/h (5 mph) or below and the system detects an object within the detection zone. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication and audible warning turns off.

If your vehicle is in neutral (N), the front and rear sensors provide a visual indication only when your vehicle is moving below a speed of 8 km/h (5 mph) and the system detects obstacles inside the detection areas. Once your vehicle stops, the visual indication and audible warning stops after a few seconds.

LOCATING THE FRONT PARKING AID SENSORS



The front parking aid sensors are in the front bumper.

FRONT PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when there is an object within 70 cm (28 in) from the front bumper. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases.

The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the front bumper.

Note: *If the detected object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from your vehicle, visual indication remains on.*

Parking Aids

PARKING AID INDICATORS

Parking Aid Indicators Shown When 360 Degree Camera Views are not Available



The system provides object distance indication through the touchscreen.

- As the distance to an object decreases, the indicators change color. The indicators for closer objects appear closer to the vehicle icon.
- The indicators are green when the object is at the farthest detection point. As the object gets closer, the indicators turn amber. When the object is at the closest detection point, the indicators turn red.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicators are not activated.

The activated visual indicators continue displaying when your vehicle is stopped in reverse (R). If stopped in drive (D) or neutral (N), the activated visual indicators disappear after four seconds.

Note: *If stopped in drive (D) or neutral (N) with rear camera delay mode showing the rear camera view, the activated visual indicators continue displaying.*

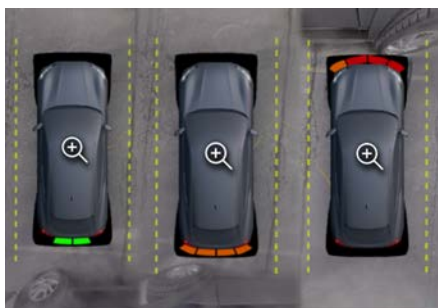
Parking aids are not available in the following situations:

- The system is switched off.
- A trailer is connected.
- Sensors are blocked.
- A system fault occurs.

Note: *If the parking aids are not available, the distance indicators do not display. See **Parking Aids – Troubleshooting** (page 195).*

Note: *Front park aid indicators may not be available.*

Parking Aid Indicators Shown in 360 Degree Camera Views



The system provides object distance indication through the touchscreen.

- As the distance to an object decreases, the indicators change color.
- The indicators are green when the object is at the farthest detection point. As the object gets closer, the indicators turn amber. When the object is at the closest detection point, the indicators turn red.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicators are not activated.

The activated visual indicators continue displaying when your vehicle is stopped in reverse (R). If stopped in drive (D) or neutral (N), the activated visual indicators disappear after four seconds.

Parking Aids

Note: If stopped in drive (D) or neutral (N) with rear camera delay mode showing the rear camera view, the activated visual indicators continue displaying.

Parking aids are not available in the following situations:

- The system is switched off.
- A trailer is connected.
- Sensors are blocked. The distance indicators appear white.
- A system fault occurs.

Note: If the parking aids are not available, the distance indicators do not display. See **Parking Aids – Troubleshooting** (page 195).

PARKING AIDS – TROUBLESHOOTING

PARKING AIDS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

If a fault is present in the parking aids, a warning message appears in the instrument cluster or the touchscreen.

Message	Details
Park Aid Fault	The system detects a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Parking Sensors Blocked	Inclement weather, ice, mud, or water is blocking the sensor, causing the system to become unavailable. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve.
Parking Sensors Blocked	Certain add-on devices installed around the bumper or fascia are blocking the sensor. Remove add-on devices to resolve.
Parking Sensors Blocked	This message may appear when you drive slowly at a constant distance from a stationary object. It disappears once the distance from the object changes. This may happen when driving slowly close to something like a wall.

Rear View Camera

WHAT IS THE REAR VIEW CAMERA

The rear view camera provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle when the transmission is in reverse (R).

REAR VIEW CAMERA PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



WARNING: Reverse your vehicle slowly. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Use caution when the liftgate is ajar. If the liftgate is ajar, the camera is out of position and the video image could be incorrect. All guide lines disappear when the liftgate is ajar. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Use caution when turning camera features on or off when the transmission is not in park (P). Make sure your vehicle is not moving.

Note: If the view comes on while the vehicle is not in reverse (R) and you have not recently shifted out of reverse (R), have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.

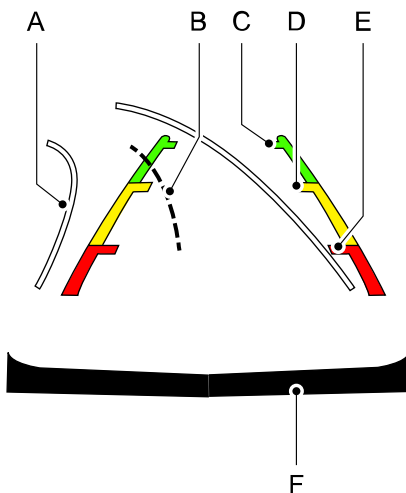
LOCATING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA

The rear view camera is on the liftgate or tailgate. It provides a view of the area behind your vehicle.

REAR VIEW CAMERA GUIDE LINES

Note: Active guide lines and fixed guide lines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).

Note: The centerline is only available if the active or fixed guide lines are on.



- A. Active guide lines.
- B. Centerline.
- C. Fixed guide line: Green zone.
- D. Fixed guide line: Yellow zone.
- E. Fixed guide line: Red zone.
- F. Rear bumper.

Rear View Camera

Active guide lines only show with fixed guide lines. To use active guide lines, turn the steering wheel to point the guide lines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the intended path.

The fixed and active guide lines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guide lines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects get closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

REAR VIEW CAMERA SETTINGS

ZOOMING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA IN AND OUT



WARNING: When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

Selectable settings for this feature are zoom in (+) and zoom out (-). Press the symbol on the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is zoom off.

This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference.

Note: Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).

Note: Only the centerline shows when you enable manual zoom.

SWITCHING REAR VIEW CAMERA DELAY ON AND OFF

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Rear View Camera. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 362).
2. Switch Rear View Camera Delay on or off.

When shifting the transmission out of reverse (R) and into any gear other than park (P), the camera image remains in the display until:

- Your vehicle speed reaches approximately 9 km/h (6 mph).
- You shift your vehicle into park (P).

360 Degree Camera

WHAT IS THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA

The 360 degree camera system consists of front, side and rear cameras which provide visibility around your vehicle.

HOW DOES THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA WORK

The 360 degree camera system consists of front, side and rear cameras.

The 360 Degree Camera system:

- Allows you to see what is directly in front of or behind your vehicle.
- Provides a cross traffic view in front of and behind your vehicle.
- Allows you to see a top-down view of the area outside your vehicle, including the blind spots and obstacles near your vehicle.

360 DEGREE CAMERA PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The 360 degree camera system still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with looking out of the windows, and checking the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



WARNING: When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.



WARNING: Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

LOCATING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERAS

Rear View Camera

The rear view camera is on the liftgate. It provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.

Front View Camera

The front view camera is in the grille. It provides a video image of the area in front of your vehicle.

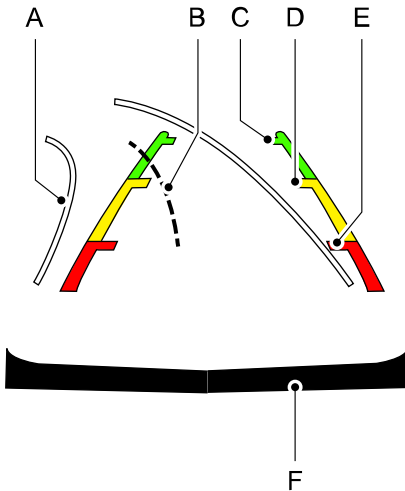
Side View Camera

The side view camera is on the outside mirror. It provides a video image of the area on the sides of your vehicle to aid you when parking.

360 DEGREE CAMERA GUIDELINES

Note: Active guidelines are only available when the selector is in reverse (R).

360 Degree Camera



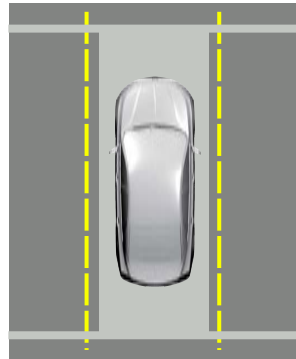
- A Active guidelines.
- B Centerline.
- C Fixed guideline: Green zone.
- D Fixed guideline: Yellow zone.
- E Fixed guideline: Red zone.
- F Rear bumper.

Active guidelines only show with fixed guidelines. Turn the steering wheel to point the guidelines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes when reversing, your vehicle could deviate from the intended path.

The fixed and active guidelines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guidelines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects get closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

Keep Out Zone



The keep out zone is represented by the yellow dotted lines running parallel to your vehicle.

360 DEGREE CAMERA SETTINGS

SWITCHING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA ON AND OFF



Press the camera button on the touchscreen.

Note: The front 360 camera is the default camera view. You can access the other front camera views from the screen.

Note: The rear view camera activates when you switch into reverse (R).

360 Degree Camera

You can choose from the following camera views on the touchscreen:

- Normal view.
- Normal view with 360.
- Split view.

When in park (P), neutral (N) or drive (D), only the front images display when you press the button.

Note: *The 360 degree camera system remains on when your vehicle is in motion at low speed. The rear camera views remain on at all speeds when in reverse (R).*

SWITCHING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA VIEW



Normal + 360 view: Contains the normal camera view next to a 360 degree camera view.



Normal view: Provides an image of what is directly in front of or behind your vehicle.



Split view: Provides an extended view of what is in front of or behind your vehicle.



Zooms in on the image.

Adaptive Cruise Control

HOW DOES ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO WORK

Adaptive cruise control with stop and go uses radar and camera sensors to maintain a set gap between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you while following it to a complete stop. Stop and go can also be set to follow a vehicle directly in front of you and adjust the set speed, while you are at a complete stop.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Pay close attention to changing road conditions such as entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts, roads without visible lanes of travel, roads that are unpaved, or steep slopes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.



WARNING: Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.



WARNING: In situations with poor visibility, such as fog, heavy rain or other inclement weather, you may need to override or completely switch off the system.

When Following a Vehicle



WARNING: When following a vehicle that is braking, your vehicle does not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

Sensor Limitations



WARNING: On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.



WARNING: If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



WARNING: Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

Adaptive Cruise Control

WARNING: The system only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 10 km/h (6 mph).

WARNING: The system does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.

WARNING: The system does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

WARNING: The system may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.

The camera is mounted on the windshield behind the interior mirror. The radar sensor is in the lower grille.

Note: *You cannot see the sensor. It is behind a fascia panel.*

Note: *Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors, aftermarket lights, additional paint or plastic coatings could also degrade sensor performance.*

A message displays if something obstructs the camera or the sensor. When something blocks the sensor, the system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function. See **Adaptive Cruise Control – Information Messages** (page 214).

The radar sensor has a limited field of view. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations. The lead vehicle image does not illuminate if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.

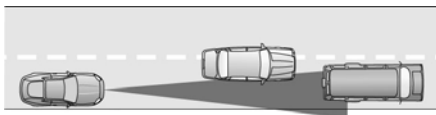


- 1 Camera.
- 2 Radar sensor.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Detection Issues Can Occur:

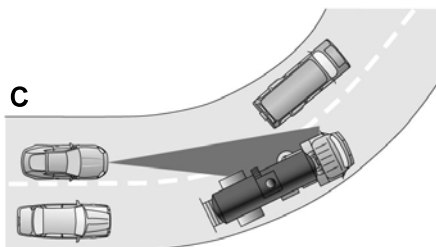
A



B



C



- A When driving on a different line than the vehicle in front.
- B With vehicles that edge into your lane. The system can only detect these vehicles once they move fully into your lane.
- C There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front when driving into and coming out of a bend or curve in the road.

In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly.

If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone could change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detection.

Optimal system performance requires a clear view of the road by the windshield-mounted camera.

Optimal performance may not occur if:

- The camera is blocked.
- There is poor visibility or lighting conditions.
- There are bad weather conditions.

SWITCHING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On



Press the button to activate the system. When the system activates, the set speed is equal to whichever is greater, the current vehicle speed, or 15 mph (20 km/h). If the speed is too low, or other conditions are not correct for adaptive cruise control activation, the system enters standby mode. When you are below 15 mph (20 km/h), adaptive cruise control does not activate unless you are following another vehicle.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off



Press the button when the system is active or switch the vehicle off.

Note: When you switch the system off, the set speed clears.

Adaptive Cruise Control

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION

The system may cancel if:

- The tires lose traction.
- You apply the parking brake.

The system may cancel and set the parking brake if:

- You unbuckle the seatbelt and open the driver door after adaptive cruise control stops your vehicle.
- Adaptive cruise control holds your vehicle at a stop continuously for more than three minutes.

The system may deactivate or prevent activating when requested if:

- The vehicle has a blocked sensor.
- The brake temperature is too high.
- There is a failure in the system or a related system.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED

Drive to the speed you prefer.

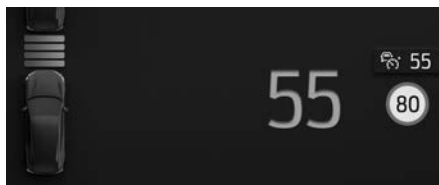
SET+

Press the toggle button upward or downward to set the current speed.

SET-

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display when initially activating adaptive cruise control.



After a few seconds, the graphic in the instrument cluster display changes to show that adaptive cruise control is active.



A vehicle image illuminates if there is a vehicle detected in front of you.

Note: When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer may vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the instrument cluster display.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed from a Complete Stop

SET+

Press the toggle button upward or downward while keeping the brake pedal fully pressed.

SET-

The set speed adjusts to 15 mph when in imperial units or 20 km/h when in metric units.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.

Note: The system will activate from a complete stop only when it detects a lead vehicle in close proximity.

Manually Changing the Set Speed

SET+

Press and release the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in large increments. Release the button when the set speed is equal to the desired speed.

SET-

Press and release the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in small

increments. Press and hold the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in large increments. Release the button when the set speed is equal to the desired speed.

You can also press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the speed you prefer. Press the toggle button upward or downward to select the current speed as the set speed.

The system may apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed continuously displays in the instrument cluster display when the system is active.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL GAP



Press the button to cycle through the four gap settings.



The selected gap appears in the instrument cluster display as shown by the bars in the image.

Note: The gap setting is time dependent and therefore, the distance adjusts with your vehicle speed.

Note: It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.

Adaptive Cruise Control Gap Settings

Graphic Display, Bars Indicated Between Vehicles	Gap Distance	Dynamic Behavior
1	Closest.	Sport.
2	Close.	Normal.
3	Medium.	Normal.
4	Far.	Comfort.

Each time you switch the system on, it selects the last chosen gap setting.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Following a Vehicle

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain the gap setting.

Note: When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a turn signal lamp, adaptive cruise control may provide a small, temporary acceleration to help you pass.

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- You set a new gap distance.

The system applies the brakes to slow down your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front of you. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

Note: The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.

If the system determines that its maximum braking level is not sufficient, an audible warning sounds, a message appears in the instrument cluster display and an indicator flashes when the system continues to brake. Take immediate action.

CANCELING THE SET SPEED



Press the button or tap the brake pedal.

The set speed does not erase.

RESUMING THE SET SPEED



Press the button.

Your vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed displays continuously in the instrument cluster display when the system is active.

Note: Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.

Resuming the Set Speed from a Complete Stop

Without an Active BlueCruise Service Plan:

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for less than a few seconds, your vehicle accelerates from a stationary position to follow the vehicle ahead.



With an Active BlueCruise Service Plan:

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for less than approximately three minutes, your vehicle accelerates from a stationary position to follow the vehicle ahead.

The following conditions must be met before your vehicle auto-resumes:

- You are facing forward and paying attention to the road ahead.
- The road is clear of obstacles such as pedestrians or other vehicles crossing your path.

Adaptive Cruise Control

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for

more than a few seconds, an indicator and message displays.

Information Messages

Message	Details
Auto-Resume	(Only available with an active BlueCruise service plan). The vehicle is stopped behind a lead vehicle and all conditions are met for the vehicle to accelerate with the lead vehicle once the lead vehicle begins to accelerate.
Press button to resume	If the lead vehicle begins to move and all of the auto-resume conditions are not met, you are prompted to press the resume button. Pay attention to the road ahead and surroundings to make sure that it is safe to resume. Press and release the button or use the accelerator pedal to resume following the lead vehicle.
Stopped	Cruise control does not automatically resume when this display is active. Use the accelerator pedal to resume.

Note: *If approximately three minutes at a stop is exceeded, the vehicle cancels adaptive cruise control and the electric parking brake is set. The driver is required to resume control of the vehicle and release the electric parking brake.*

Use the accelerator pedal to intentionally exceed the set speed limit.

When you override the system, the indicator remains blue, the set speed is dimmed and the lead vehicle icon does not appear in the instrument cluster display.

The system resumes operation when you release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed decreases to the set speed, or a lower speed if following a slower vehicle.

OVERRIDING THE SET SPEED



WARNING: If you override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, it does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain a gap from any vehicle ahead.

When you press the accelerator pedal, you override the set speed and gap distance.

Adaptive Cruise Control

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates when you switch adaptive cruise control on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

Gray indicates the system is on but inactive.

Blue indicates that you set the speed and the system is active.

SWITCHING FROM ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL TO CRUISE CONTROL



WARNING: Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cruise Control. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 362).
2. Press Normal Cruise Control.



When you select normal cruise control the cruise control indicator replaces the adaptive cruise control indicator. The gap setting does not display, and the system does not respond to lead vehicles. Automatic braking remains active to maintain the set speed. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

LANE CENTERING

HOW DOES LANE CENTERING WORK

Adaptive cruise control with lane centering uses the vehicle's front radar sensor and front windshield camera sensor, together with the steering sensor to operate.

Using these sensors, the system applies continuous steering assistance towards driving in the middle of the lane.

Note: *The gap setting for adaptive cruise control with lane centering, operates in the same way as normal adaptive cruise control.*

LANE CENTERING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not use the system when towing a trailer. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use the system if any changes or modifications to the steering wheel have been made. Any changes or modifications to the steering wheel could affect the functionality or performance of the system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Adaptive cruise control precautions apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering precaution. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 201).

Adaptive Cruise Control

LANE CENTERING REQUIREMENTS

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

Lane centering only activates when all of the following occur:

- Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is enabled in the touchscreen. See **Switching Lane Centering On and Off** (page 209).
- You have adaptive cruise control enabled and set.
- The steering system detects your hands on the steering wheel.
- The system detects both lane markings when driving on a straight road.
- Your vehicle is initially centered in the lane between two visible line markings.
- A trailer is not detected.

Note: *If the system does not detect valid lane line markings, the system remains in standby until valid line markings are available.*

Note: *If the system does not detect your hands on the steering wheel, apply a slight force to the steering wheel.*

LANE CENTERING LIMITATIONS

Adaptive cruise control limitations apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering limitation. See **Lane Centering Requirements** (page 209).

Lane Centering may not be able to center your vehicle in the lane in any of the following conditions:

- The lane is too narrow or wide.
- The curve in the road is too tight.
- The system does not detect the minimum required lane markings or when lanes merge or split.

- When the required steering effort to maintain lane center exceeds the lane centering system limit.
- When driving in areas that are under construction or when road work is in progress.
- If the front windshield camera and/or the front radar are blocked.
- When using a spare tire.
- Inclement weather conditions including, but not limited to, high wind, heavy rain, and fog.
- Driving into direct sunlight.
- When modification to the steering system has been made, including alterations to the steering wheel.
- When a trailer is detected, the system disables lane centering. See **Lane Centering Precautions** (page 208).

Note: *The system steering assistance is limited and may not have sufficient effort for all driving situations and/or conditions, such as driving through tight curves or driving through curves at high speeds.*

Note: *In exceptional conditions, the system may deviate from the lane center.*

SWITCHING LANE CENTERING ON AND OFF

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

The controls are on the steering wheel.



Press the button.

The indicator appears in the instrument cluster display. When the system is on, the color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

Adaptive Cruise Control

To switch off lane centering, press the adaptive cruise control button or the lateral support button. When using the lateral support button confirm with ok at the question prompt displayed in the instrument cluster display when system is active or in standby mode.

You can override the system at any time by steering your vehicle.

Note: When switching the system on or off, a message appears in the instrument cluster display to show the status.

Note: The system always turns off when you start your vehicle.

Note: The correct requirements must be met before you can switch the system on. See **Lane Centering Requirements** (page 209).

Enabling and Disabling Lane Centering

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cruise Control. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 362).
2. Press Adaptive Cruise Control.
3. Press Lane Centering Assist.

LANE CENTERING ALERTS

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

When the system is active and detects no steering activity for a period of time, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel. If you do not react to the warnings the system quickly applies and releases the brakes, activates the hazard lights, and slows your vehicle to a stop within the lane of travel while maintaining steering control. See **Lane Centering Automatic Cancellation** (page 210).

The system also alerts you if your vehicle crosses lane markings without detected steering activity.

Note: The system could detect a light grip or touch on the steering wheel as hands-off driving.

LANE CENTERING AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION

When an external condition cancels the system, for example, no lane markings available, an audible warning sounds and a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

When an external condition cancels the system, and your hands are not on the steering wheel, the system immediately alerts you to take control of the vehicle.

If this alert is ignored, the system quickly applies and releases the brakes, activates the hazard lights, and slows your vehicle to a stop within the lane of travel.

If your vehicle slows down or stops and you resume control, a message appears to prompt you to press the accelerator pedal to allow the system to resume.

Note: If the system detects significant inactivity, a 'Lane Centering Unavailable' message displays in the instrument cluster and lane centering is disabled until the next time you start your vehicle.

Automatic cancellation can also occur if:

- The lane becomes too wide or too narrow.
- The system cannot detect valid lane markings.
- Lane markings cross over one another.
- The curve of the road is too sharp.

LANE CENTERING MANUAL CANCELLATION

When you perform the following actions, adaptive cruise control with lane centering will cancel:

Adaptive Cruise Control

- The brake pedal is pressed.
- Adaptive cruise control button on the steering wheel is switched off.

The lane centering system is momentarily suppressed when either of the following actions are performed:

- Turn signal indicator is latched or tapped.
- You steer the vehicle out of lane.

LANE CENTERING INDICATORS



Illuminates when you switch lane centering on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

Gray status indicates the system is on but in standby mode.

Green status indicates the system is enabled and applying steering assistance to keep the vehicle in the center of the lane.

Amber status with an audible tone, that then changes to gray status, indicates a system automatic cancellation.

LANE CENTERING – TROUBLESHOOTING

LANE CENTERING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Note: Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, some messages can appear different or not at all.

Message	Details
Keep hands on steering wheel	You must return your hands to the steering wheel and provide steering input to cancel the message.
Lane centring assist not available	Lane centering is currently not available, due to conditions that prevent the system from becoming active. To reset the system, when the vehicle is stationary, return the gear selector to park (P) and turn the vehicle off. Then, restart the vehicle with your foot on the brake pedal.
Resume control	Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is about to cancel. You must immediately take full control of the vehicle.
Press accelerator pedal to resume	Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is in standby mode. When safe to do so, you can resume adaptive cruise control with lane centering by applying pressure on the accelerator pedal. Alternatively, you can also re-enable adaptive cruise control with lane centering by pressing the resume button on the steering wheel.
Ensure Face Can Be Detected to Continue Using Lane Centering	Make sure your facial features are visible and in the field of view of the driver facing camera. It is possible that the steering column is positioned too high or low for the driver facing camera to see you, adjust the steering column or seat so your face is in the field of view.

Adaptive Cruise Control

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST

HOW DOES PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST WORK

Predictive Speed Assist works with adaptive cruise control and adjusts the vehicle speed to the road geometry and to the speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. As the system identifies curves, turns, roundabouts, highway exits, the vehicle speed temporarily decreases ahead of and during the changing road geometry. When passing new speed signs, the set speed updates. See **Predictive Speed Assist Precautions** (page 212).

There are limitations that affect the accuracy of the speed sign recognition system and its ability to determine the current speed limit. Predictive speed assist and its ability to determine the current speed limit shares these limitations. See **Traffic Sign Recognition** (page 260).

Note: *The adaptive cruise control gap setting operates normally when the feature is enabled.*

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Pay close attention to changing road conditions. You may need to override the system by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal if the adjusted speed becomes higher or lower than necessary.



WARNING: The system only provides limited braking. Your vehicle may not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary.



WARNING: The system does not activate the turn signal.

Adaptive cruise control precautions apply to predictive speed assist unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a predictive speed assist precaution. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 201).

The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system with the accelerator pedal or cancel the system by applying the brakes.

The system may adapt to various factors such as time of day, lane width. This could influence speed adjustments and accelerations.

The system may adapt to various drive modes. See **Drive Mode Control** (page 224). This could influence speed adjustments and accelerations.

Note: *The system does not activate the turn signal automatically.*

Adaptive Cruise Control

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST LIMITATIONS



WARNING: The system may not always adjust vehicle speed in certain road or weather conditions such as crossing traffic, yield or stop signs, right of way, traffic lights, speed bumps, rain, snow, fog. You must always apply the brake or accelerator pedal when necessary.

The road geometry and speed limit information provided by the navigation map data could be inaccurate or out of date.

The system may not detect and read speed limit signs with conditional information, for example, when a sign is flashing, during specific time ranges, or when children are present.

Note: *The system does not set the vehicle speed to speed limits shown with a supplementary traffic sign.*

Under certain conditions, the system may not adjust the vehicle speed until after your vehicle passes the speed limit.

Detection of road geometry operates only where related information is available. Road geometry information may not be available in some areas.

SWITCHING PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST MODE ON AND OFF

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cruise Control. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 362).
2. Press Adaptive Cruise Control.
3. Switch Predictive Speed Assist on or off.

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST ALERTS

If the speed sign recognition system detects a speed limit below the minimum adaptive cruise control set speed, a tone sounds and the system returns to standby mode.

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST INDICATORS

A blue marker around the speed sign and a blue arrow next to the set speed indicates that the system is active.

Speed Sign Indicator

When the system detects a new speed sign, a gray indicator appears above the set speed while the system adjusts the vehicle speed to the speed limit. When the speed limit is reached, the set speed updates and the gray indicator disappears.

Road Geometry Indicator

When the system detects a curve, turn, roundabout, highway exit, the vehicle starts to decelerate, and the indicator appears and changes color.

Road Geometry Indicator Symbols



Left curve.



Right curve.



Left intersection.



Right intersection.



Left roundabout.

Adaptive Cruise Control



Right roundabout.

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Adaptive Cruise Control Speed Sign Recognition Not Available	Navigation system based speed limit information is not available. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Driver Resume Control	The system is going to cancel and you must take control.

Note: The system could abbreviate or shorten certain messages depending upon which cluster type you have.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES - VEHICLES WITH: STOP AND GO

Note: Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.

Message	Details
Front Sensor Not Aligned	Contact an authorized dealer to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.
Cruise Control Not Available	Conditions exist preventing the system from being available.
Adaptive Cruise Control Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	You have a blocked radar because of poor radar visibility due to inclement weather or ice, mud, or water in front of the sensor. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve this issue.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Message	Details
	Due to the nature of sensor technology, it is possible to get a blockage warning with no actual block. This happens, for example, when driving in sparse rural or desert environments. A false blocked condition either self clears, or clears after you restart your vehicle.
Normal Cruise Active Adaptive Braking Off	You have selected normal cruise control. The system does not brake or react to traffic.
Adaptive Cruise - Driver Resume Control	Displays when the adaptive cruise control is going to cancel and you must take control.
Cruise Control Speed Too Low to Activate	Displays when the vehicle speed is too slow to activate the adaptive cruise control and there is no lead vehicle in range.

WHAT IS BLUECRUISE

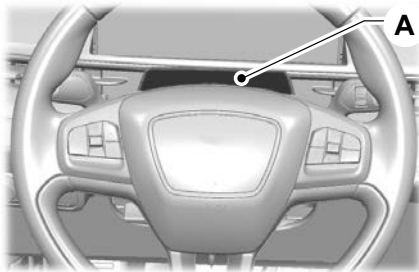
BlueCruise keeps your vehicle centered in the lane and offers the possibility to not permanently engage the steering wheel in certain situations when using adaptive cruise control.

HOW DOES BLUECRUISE WORK

BlueCruise uses cameras to monitor your vehicle position within a lane and applies steering support to keep your vehicle centered in the lane.

Using the cameras and location information, BlueCruise allows you to not permanently engage the steering wheel in certain areas of motorways, called BlueZones.

When active, BlueCruise uses a driver facing camera and infrared lighting to monitor your eyes and head position to detect if you are distracted. If the system determines you are distracted, it alerts you to return your eyes back to the road.



A Camera and lighting areas.



Steering column too high, camera cannot see the face.



Appropriate position, camera can see the face.

For the most optimal experience from the driver facing camera:

- Make sure to not wear any facial coverings.
- Raise the seating position and/or lower the steering column so your face is seen by the driver facing camera.
- Avoid leaning the seat back so the driver facing camera can see your face.
- Avoid using infrared blocking sunglasses.
- Make sure your hands, arms or other objects are not blocking the driver facing camera.

Note: When BlueCruise is active, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, camera data may record through the vehicle event data recorder. See **Event Data** (page 20).

Note: No data records under normal driving conditions.

BLUECRUISE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for keeping your eyes on the road at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Obstructions to the driver facing camera or infrared lighting could prevent the system from properly operating. Keep the camera and lighting areas free from obstruction. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use the system if any changes or modifications to the steering wheel, the steering system or the driver facing camera have been made. Any changes or modifications to these could affect the functionality or performance of the system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.



WARNING: Pay close attention to changing road conditions such as entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts, roads without visible lanes of travel, roads that are unpaved, or steep slopes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.



WARNING: Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.



WARNING: The system attempts to keep your vehicle in the center of the lane as well as maintain speed and gap control. The system may not be able to perform these tasks in all situations. Do not use the system in complex or uncertain driving conditions. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Your vehicle could drift out of the lane of travel. Always be prepared to manually steer your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



WARNING: Do not use the system when towing a trailer. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Once activated, Ford will use data related to the feature and maps, including location, vehicle, driving and camera data to provide the Blue Cruise service. Please see the FordPass Terms and Privacy Policy for further information.

Driver-assist features are supplemental and do not replace the driver's attention, judgment and need to control the vehicle. BlueCruise is a feature aiding you to stay in lane and does not require you to permanently engage the steering wheel when travelling in certain areas of the motorway called BlueZones. Always watch the road and be prepared to resume control of the vehicle. It does not replace safe driving. See Owner's Manual for detail and limitations.

A free trial with regular map updates begins when you activate the trial. To continue service, a new subscription plan must be purchased. Plans are subject to change. See your Ford Account for terms and details. Service and features depend on compatible Vodafone network

availability. Evolving technology/network coverage/vehicle capability may limit functionality and prevent operation of connected features. Failure to regularly update could result in BlueCruise being unavailable.

BLUECRUISE REQUIREMENTS

BlueCruise only activates when all of the following occur:

- BlueCruise is enabled in your information and entertainment screen. See **BlueCruise Settings** (page 219).
- Adaptive cruise control is on.
- The system detects both lane markings.
- Your hands are on the steering wheel.
- Your eyes are on the road.
- Your vehicle is initially centered in the lane, between two line markings.

Note: For BlueCruise mode to work, your vehicle must be on certain limited access divided freeways.

Note: The system may require updated software for BlueCruise mode. See **Vehicle Software Updates** (page 378).

Note: BlueCruise mode is only available depending on local regulations and customer subscription.

BLUECRUISE LIMITATIONS

Any of the following conditions could result in BlueCruise not correctly operating:

- You do not have your vehicle centered in the lane.
- The lane is too narrow or too wide.
- The curve in the road is too small.
- The system does not detect the minimum required lane markings or when lanes merge or split.

- When the required steering effort to maintain lane center exceeds the lane centering system limit.
- You are using the system in areas under construction.
- If you make any aftermarket modifications to the steering system.
- You are using a spare tire.
- When towing a trailer.
- Inclement weather conditions including, but not limited to, high wind, heavy rain, and fog.
- Driving into direct sunlight.

The driver-facing camera may not operate correctly due to any of the following:

- You have a pre-existing eye condition, such as an eye misalignment, or have had eye surgery.
- You cover your facial features by a mask, hat or other items.
- The lighting conditions change significantly.
- You are not in the field of view of the camera.
- You position or tilt yourself to one side.
- You are moving around extensively.
- You are wearing glasses or sunglasses that are too dark or reflective.

Note: *The system has limited steering assistance and may not be sufficient for all driving situations.*

Note: *In exceptional conditions, such as inclement weather or direct sunlight, the system could deviate from the center line.*

Note: *The information provided by the navigation map data could be inaccurate or out of date.*

BLUECRUISE SETTINGS

Enabling BlueCruise

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cruise Control. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 362).
2. Press Lane Centering with BlueCruise.

Enabling Activation Prompts

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cruise Control. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 362).
2. Press Activation Prompts.

SWITCHING BLUECRUISE ON AND OFF

Switching BlueCruise On

The controls are on the steering wheel.

Using Activation Prompts



When the prompt appears, press the button to switch BlueCruise on.

The indicator appears in the instrument cluster. When the system is on, the color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

Note: *You must enable activation prompts in the touchscreen.*

Using Steering Wheel Controls



Using the adaptive cruise control and lateral support buttons, make sure both systems are active. BlueCruise activates.

Switching BlueCruise Off



To switch off BlueCruise, press the adaptive cruise control button or the lateral support button. When using the lateral support button confirm with ok the question prompt display in the instrument cluster when the system is active or in standby mode.



BlueCruise Manual Cancellation

When you perform the following actions, BlueCruise will cancel:

- The brake pedal is pressed.

BlueCruise is momentarily suppressed when either of the following actions are performed:

- Turn signal indicator is latched or tapped.
- You steer the vehicle out of lane.

Note: When switching the system on or off a message appears in the instrument cluster to show the status.

Note: The system always turns off when you start your vehicle.

BLUECRUISE ALERTS

When the system is in lane centering assist mode or transitioning to lane centering assist mode from the BlueCruise mode and detects no steering activity for a certain period of time, the system alerts you with a message in the instrument cluster to put your hands on the steering wheel. After the first alert, the system alerts you with a message in the instrument cluster and an audible warning.

When the system is in lane centering assist mode or in BlueCruise mode and detects you are not looking at the road for a certain period of time, the system alerts you to return your eyes to the road. Depending on where you are looking, the alert can be a message in the instrument cluster and an audible warning.

If you do not react to the warnings, BlueCruise cancels, quickly activates and releases the brakes, and slows your vehicle down to low speeds while maintaining steering control.

If your vehicle slows down and you resume control, a message appears to prompt you to press the accelerator pedal to allow the system to resume.

The system also alerts you if your vehicle crosses lane line markings without detected steering activity.

Note: If the system detects repeated inactivity, it disables until the next key cycle.

BLUECRUISE AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION

When an external condition cancels BlueCruise, for example, no lane markings available, a tone sounds and a message appears in the instrument cluster.

System cancellation can also occur if:

- The lane becomes too narrow.
- The system cannot detect valid lane markings.
- Lane markings cross.
- The curve of the road is too sharp.
- Your eyes are not on the road or your hands are not on the steering wheel.

If you have your hands on the steering wheel and your eyes are on the road when the feature is active and a cancellation occurs, the system sounds a tone and displays a cancelled graphic in the instrument cluster.

If you are not paying attention to the road or your hands are not on the steering wheel and a cancellation occurs, the system displays a message and a tone sounds until you resume control. If you do not resume control in time, BlueCruise quickly activates and releases the brakes, and slows your vehicle to low speeds while maintaining steering control. If your vehicle slows down and you resume control, a message appears to prompt you to press the accelerator pedal to allow the system to resume.

Note: *The system disables until the vehicle is turned off and back on if it detects repeated inactivity.*

BLUECRUISE INDICATORS



When on, the color of the indicator changes to indicate the status.

Gray indicates BlueCruise is on but inactive.

Green indicates BlueCruise is active and applying continuous steering support.

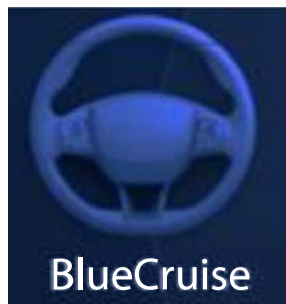
Blue indicates BlueCruise is active and you do not have to permanently engage the steering wheel.

Lane Centering Assist Available



When this indicator is present, you must keep your hands on the steering wheel.

BlueCruise Mode Available



A graphic in the instrument cluster of a steering wheel together with the words BlueCruise indicates you do not necessarily have to engage the steering wheel.

IN-LANE REPOSITIONING

HOW DOES IN-LANE REPOSITIONING WORK

BlueCruise with in-lane repositioning uses the vehicle's front and corner radar sensors together with the front windshield camera sensor to operate.

BlueCruise

Using these sensors, the system automatically adjusts your vehicle's position in the lane based on the current driving situation.

Note: In-lane repositioning is active only when BlueCruise is enabled while traveling on divided highways and when any of the following occur:

- Passing or being passed by adjacent lane vehicles in close proximity.
- In a curve.
- Driving in outer lanes.

Note: In certain situations, the vehicle may bias without showing the indicators.

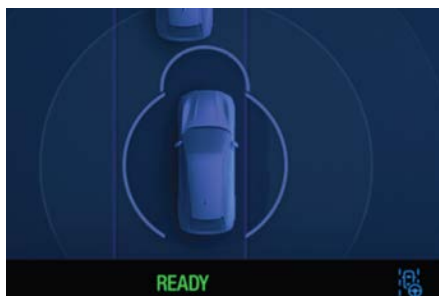
Note: Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors, aftermarket lights, additional paint or plastic coatings could also degrade sensor performance.

Note: The radar sensor has a limited field of view. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations.

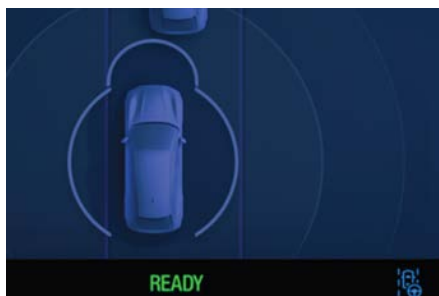
SWITCHING IN-LANE REPOSITIONING ON AND OFF

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cruise Control. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 362).
2. Press Lane Centering with BlueCruise.
3. Press In-Lane Repositioning to toggle the system on or off.

IN-LANE REPOSITIONING INDICATORS



Biased towards right-hand side of the lane.



Biased towards left-hand side of the lane.

BLUECRUISE – TROUBLESHOOTING

BLUECRUISE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.

BlueCruise

Message	Details
Keep hands on steering wheel	Make sure you return your hands to the steering wheel and provide steering input.
Resume control	The system is going to cancel and you must take control by returning your attention to the road and your hands to the steering wheel.
Watch the road	Return your attention to the road.
BlueCruise not available	Conditions exist preventing the system from being available. If the message continues to display, have the system checked as soon as possible.
Press accelerator pedal to resume	Press the accelerator pedal and follow the prompts.
Ensure Face Can Be Detected to Continue Using BlueCruise	Make sure your facial features are visible and in the field of view of the driver facing camera. It is possible that the steering column is positioned too high or low for the driver facing camera to see you, adjust the steering column or seat so your face is in the field of view.
Driver monitor camera is blocked See manual	Make sure your hands, arms or other objects are not obscuring the camera.
Driver monitor camera malfunction See manual	Conditions exist preventing the system from being available. If the message continues to display, have the system checked as soon as possible.
BlueCruise On Watch the road Be prepared to resume control	BlueCruise is active, keep your attention on the road.
BlueCruise available Press {ICON} to activate	The system is in standby mode, press the button on the steering wheel to activate.

Note: The instrument cluster display may abbreviate or shorten certain messages depending on which cluster type you have.

Drive Mode Control

WHAT IS DRIVE MODE CONTROL

This feature connects multiple vehicle systems through a single interface, providing you with enhanced vehicle control and driving dynamics for different driving scenarios, terrains, weather, or various road conditions.

SELECTING A DRIVE MODE

1. From the settings menu, press Controls. See **Center Display** (page 360).

2. Select an available drive mode.

Note: Drive mode changes may not be available when your vehicle is off.

DRIVE MODES

ACTIVE - VEHICLES WITHOUT: ACTIVE DAMPERS



For everyday driving. This mode is the perfect balance of excitement, comfort and convenience. Steering is tuned for normal driving. The interior lights and cluster graphics are set to soft blue and the battery state of charge gauge displays.

ACTIVE - VEHICLES WITH: ACTIVE DAMPERS



For everyday driving. This mode is the perfect balance of excitement, comfort and convenience. Steering and active damping are tuned for normal driving. The interior lights and cluster graphics are set to soft blue and the battery state of charge gauge displays.

RALLYSPORT - VEHICLES WITH: MUSTANG MACH-E RALLY



This feature adjusts the unbridle mode to provide high-performance off pavement driving for sprint style dirt and multi-terrain courses. This mode increases and improves the accelerator pedal reaction when activated. Traction and stability controls are set to their least invasive settings for optimal performance and vehicle control. The interior sound has increased presence, and the ambient lights and cluster graphics are set to orange with a graphic related to your acceleration and steering inputs.

To use this feature, you must be in unbridle mode with the rallysport slider selected with the battery at operating temperature. When using this mode, one pedal drive is not available and other driver assistance features disabled.

Note: This feature may not be available below ambient temperature, or battery temperature -18°C (0°F).

Note: If the feature is not available, charge your vehicle until the battery has sufficient charge greater than 10% SOC, and the HV battery temperature is warm.

UNTAME - VEHICLES WITHOUT: ACTIVE DAMPERS



Untame mode is for sporty driving with improved performance handling and response. This mode increases acceleration response and provides a strong deceleration rate when you lift off the accelerator pedal. This mode increases acceleration response and provides a sportier steering feel. The interior sound increases, and the ambient lights and cluster graphics are set to orange with a graphic that grows based on your acceleration and steering inputs.

Drive Mode Control

UNTAME - VEHICLES WITH: ACTIVE DAMPERS



Untame mode is for sporty driving with improved performance handling and response. This mode increases acceleration response and provides a strong deceleration rate when you lift off the accelerator pedal. This mode increases acceleration response and provides a sportier steering feel. Active damping is tuned for performance. The interior sound increases, and the ambient lights and cluster graphics are set to orange with a graphic that grows based on your acceleration and steering inputs.

Untame Plus



This feature adjusts untame mode to provide high-performance driving and is for track and closed course use only. When you activate, this mode provides balanced power output for lap time consistency. The accelerator pedal calibrates for improved propulsion control. The system provides more performance orientated traction and stability control. In this mode, traction and stability control intervention reduces and tunes specifically for track usage only. The interior sound has increased presence and the ambient lights and cluster graphics are set to orange with a graphic related to your acceleration and steering inputs.

To use this feature, you must be in untame mode with the untame plus slider selected with the battery at operating temperature. When using this mode, one pedal drive is not available and other driver assistance features disable.

Note: This feature is only available when the HV battery state of charge is above about 10%, the ambient temperature is above -18°C (0°F) and the HV battery temperature is warm.

WHISPER - VEHICLES WITHOUT: ACTIVE DAMPERS



Whisper mode is for relaxed driving and adverse weather conditions. This is the best mode for driving in slippery conditions. This mode decreases accelerator response at partial inputs. Steering tunes for comfort. When you release the accelerator pedal, your vehicle slowly decelerates allowing for a more comfortable ride. The interior sound turns off and the ambient lights and cluster graphics are set to blue with a graphic that starts to illuminate blue as you drive efficiently at consistent speeds.

WHISPER - VEHICLES WITH: ACTIVE DAMPERS



Whisper mode is for relaxed driving and adverse weather conditions. This is the best mode for driving in slippery conditions. This mode decreases accelerator response at partial inputs. Steering and active damping tunes for comfort. When you release the accelerator pedal, your vehicle slowly decelerates allowing for a more comfortable ride. The interior sound turns off and the ambient lights and cluster graphics are set to blue with a graphic that starts to illuminate blue as you drive efficiently at consistent speeds.

DRIVE MODE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

DRIVE MODE CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS



Some drive modes reduce traction and stability control performance and the indicator illuminates in the instrument cluster.

Drive Mode Control

Note: The system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system for proper operation. If a mode is unavailable due to a system fault, the drive mode system defaults to normal. When the system defaults to normal, the driveline settings remain the same as prior to the system fault.

DRIVE MODE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Drive mode not available	The system is not available. If it is still not available the next time you switch the ignition on, the system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Drive Mode Control

DRIVE MODE CONTROL – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why did the system default to normal mode?

- If a mode is unavailable due to a system fault, it defaults to normal mode and the driveline settings remain the same as prior to the system fault.

Can I switch drive modes while I am driving?

- In most instances, you can switch drive modes while you are driving (if you maintain attention on the road), or while the vehicle is stationary. However, you should not switch the vehicle into a drive mode intended for track use while driving on paved, public roads. For example, while driving on a paved highway, it would be acceptable to switch from engage mode or active mode to whisper mode.

How long does it take for the vehicle to switch modes after I make a selection?

- After switching modes, the new drive mode will activate within several seconds, if all the appropriate pre-conditions are met.

How should I decide which drive mode to use?

- Selecting a drive mode usually depends on the driving experience you would like to have, and the driving conditions. For available drive modes, See **Drive Modes** (page 224).

Will drive modes impact my vehicle's energy consumption?

- Drive modes can have an impact on your vehicle's energy consumption. In addition to the active mode, your driving style will also affect the energy consumption.

One Pedal Drive

WHAT IS ONE PEDAL DRIVE

One pedal drive allows you to accelerate, slow down and stop using only the accelerator pedal. Pressing the accelerator down accelerates your vehicle, releasing pressure on the accelerator with your foot still on the pedal slows down your vehicle and releasing the pedal completely allows your vehicle to come to a complete stop if the road grade is not excessively steep.

See **One Pedal Drive Precautions** (page 228).

ONE PEDAL DRIVE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: This system is an extra driving aid. It does not replace your attention and judgment, or the need to apply the brakes. This system does not automatically brake your vehicle. If you fail to press the brake pedal when necessary, you may collide with another vehicle or other objects.

Shifting into neutral (N) does not hold your vehicle at a standstill.

Shifting into drive (D) or reverse (R) does not cause the vehicle to move if the accelerator pedal is not pressed.

Note: Always check the transmission selection before accelerating.

ONE PEDAL DRIVE LIMITATIONS

One pedal drive is not available when any of the following occur:

- Shifting into an incorrect transmission position, such as park (P) when driving.
- Using active park assist.

- Using cruise control.
- Selecting untame plus drive mode (GT only).
- Turning off stability control.

Releasing the accelerator pedal may not bring your vehicle to a complete stop on steep grades.

Increased vehicle load may reduce the accelerator's ability to slow the vehicle.

SWITCHING ONE PEDAL DRIVE ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Controls. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Switch 1-Pedal Drive on or off.

ONE PEDAL DRIVE INDICATORS



When one pedal drive is active, the indicator displays in the instrument cluster.

Local Hazard Information

WHAT IS LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

The system is designed to provide near real-time information about the road in front of you.

LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION INDICATORS



Animals on the road.



Approaching vehicle coming the wrong way.



Broken down vehicle or accident.



Broken down vehicle or accident.



Fire.



General.



Hazardous driving conditions.



Objects on the road.



People on the road.



Road works.



Traffic jam.

Note: Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all indicators shown are available.

ENABLING LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION

Note: Make sure that the modem is enabled. See **Enabling and Disabling the Modem** (page 351).

1. From the settings menu, press Connectivity. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Press Connected Vehicle Features.
3. Switch Local Hazard Information on.

Intelligent Speed Limiter

WHAT IS THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER

The system allows you to limit the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the traffic sign recognition system.

HOW DOES THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER WORK

Intelligent speed limiter uses data from the traffic sign recognition system to set a maximum speed. For example, if the traffic sign recognition system detects a 80 km/h (50 mph) speed limit, the vehicle speed is limited to 80 km/h (50 mph).

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes but a warning displays. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Note: The system does not limit your vehicle's speed to speed limits shown with a supplementary traffic sign.

SWITCHING THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER ON AND OFF



Press to switch the system on.

The system activates with the detected speed limit or, if no speed limit is detected the current speed of your vehicle is set. Press again to switch the system off.

SETTING THE SPEED LIMIT



Press the toggle button upward or downward with the system in standby mode to set the speed limiter to the current vehicle speed. The set speed is stored and displayed in the instrument

cluster.

Note: The set speed limiter adjusts when the system detects a different maximum speed limit.

Note: If the system cannot detect a maximum speed limit, the system returns to standby mode.

CHANGING THE SET SPEED LIMIT



You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.



Intelligent Speed Limiter

CANCELING THE SET SPEED LIMIT



Press to cancel the limiter and place it in standby mode. The symbol in instrument cluster display appears grey.

RESUMING THE SET SPEED LIMIT



Press to resume the limiter. The system sets the speed limit to the detected maximum speed limit when it resumes. The symbol in the instrument cluster display appears green.

INTENTIONALLY EXCEEDING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

Firmly press the accelerator pedal to temporarily turn the system off. The system reactivates once your vehicle speed drops below the set speed.

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER INDICATORS



It illuminates in the instrument cluster when the system is in standby or active.

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning appears in the instrument cluster and a tone sounds if any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle's speed exceeds the current set speed.
- The system detects a maximum speed limit that is lower than your vehicle's current speed.
- You intentionally exceed the set speed.

If the traffic sign recognition system detects a speed limit outside the operational speed range, 20–180 km/h (12–112 mph), a single warning tone sounds and the system switches to standby mode.

SWITCHING FROM INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER TO SPEED LIMITER

1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Press Speed Limit Assist.
3. Switch Intelligent Speed Limiter off.

Note: If you switch intelligent speed limiter off, the system defaults to manual speed limiter. You can manually set the speed limiter using the controls on the steering wheel.

Lane Keeping System

WHAT IS THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM

The lane keeping system alerts you by providing temporary steering assistance or steering wheel vibration when it detects an unintended lane departure.

HOW DOES THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM WORK

The lane keeping system uses a forward looking camera mounted on the windshield to monitor vehicle movement within the lane of travel.

When the camera detects a drift out of the lane of travel, the lane keeping system alerts the driver by vibrating the steering wheel, or aids the driver by providing a small steering input to move the vehicle back into the lane of travel.

The driver can select one of three modes:

- Aid
- Alert + Aid

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



WARNING: The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.



WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.



WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



WARNING: The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.



WARNING: Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The lane keeping system only operates when the vehicle speed is greater than 64 km/h (40 mph).

The system works when the camera can detect at least one lane marking or the edge of the road.

The lane keeping system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The lane keeping system does not detect at least one lane marking.
- You switch the turn signal on.

Lane Keeping System

- You apply direct steering, accelerate fast or brake hard.
- The vehicle speed is less than 64 km/h (40 mph).
- The anti-lock brake, stability control or traction control system activates.
- The lane is too narrow.
- Something is obscuring the camera or it is unable to detect the lane markings due to environment, traffic or vehicle conditions.

The lane keeping system may not correct lane positioning in any of the following conditions:

- High winds.
- Uneven road surfaces.
- Heavy or uneven loads.
- Incorrect tire pressure.

SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM ON AND OFF



To activate the lane keeping system, press the button on the steering wheel.

To deactivate the lane keeping system, press the button on the steering wheel twice.

Note: When switching the system on or off a message appears in the information display to show the status.

Note: The system always turns on when you start your vehicle.

SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM MODE

1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance. See **Center Display** (page 360).

2. Press Lane-Keeping System.
3. Press Lane-Keeping Mode.
4. Select a mode.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM SETTINGS

Adjusting the Steering Wheel Vibration Intensity

1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Press Lane Keeping System.
3. Press Lane Keeping Intensity.
4. Select a setting.

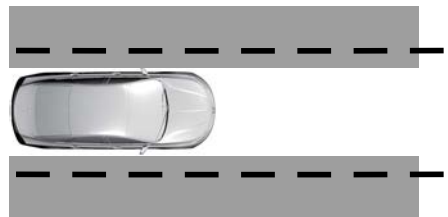
Note: This setting is not available in all modes.

AID MODE

WHAT IS AID MODE

Aid mode provides temporary steering assistance toward the center of the lane.

HOW DOES AID MODE WORK



Lane Keeping System

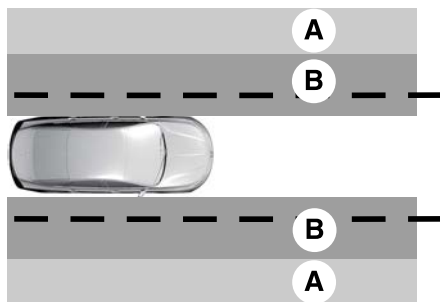
The lane keeping system aids you when an unintentional lane departure occurs. The system provides a small steering input to move the vehicle towards the center of the lane.

ALERT AND AID MODE

WHAT IS ALERT AND AID MODE

Alert and aid mode uses multiple features to keep you in your lane. The system first provides a small steering input to bring your vehicle back towards the center of the lane. If your vehicle moves too far from the center of the lane the system alerts you with vibration in the steering wheel.

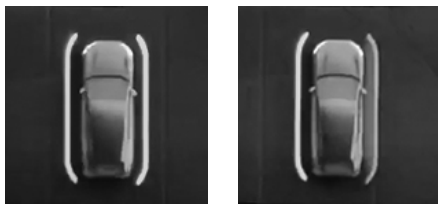
HOW DOES ALERT AND AID MODE WORK



- A Alert.
- B Aid.

The lane keeping system detects a lane departure and provides aid when the vehicle enters **B** and applies the additional alert warning if **A** is entered.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM INDICATORS



If you switch the lane keeping system on, a graphic with lane markings appears in the instrument cluster display.



When you switch the system off, a telltale appears in the instrument cluster display.

Note: The overhead vehicle graphic may still display if adaptive cruise control is enabled.

While the lane keeping system is on, the color of the lane markings change to indicate the system status.

Lane Keeping System

Gray	Green	Yellow	Red
Indicates that the system is temporarily unavailable to provide a warning or intervention on the indicated side.	Indicates that the system is available or ready to provide a warning or intervention on the indicated side.	Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping aid intervention.	Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping alert warning.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT ASSIST

Blind spot assist is an extension of the lane keeping system.

It may help you identify adjacent vehicles during a lane change.

Blind spot assist provides a blind spot warning and steering assistance to help you become aware of and steer away from vehicles in your blind spot during lane changes.

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT ASSIST WORK



Activate and deactivate the system using the lane keeping system button on the steering wheel.

The blind spot assist feature is enabled whenever you select "Aid" or "Alert +Aid" from the lane keeping system.

During lane changes, the design of the blind spot assist feature detects vehicles in, or approaching, your blind spot and provides a warning, plus steering assistance to direct your vehicle back into your lane.

When active, this system functions with or without the use of turn signals and hazard flashers.

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST LIMITATIONS

All system limitations present in the basic lane keeping system also apply to blind spot assist.

Blind spot assist does not function under the following conditions:

- No lane markings are detected.
- One or both rear radar sensors become blocked or faulty.
- Attaching bike or cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor.

Blind spot assist may have difficulty detecting hazards under the following conditions:

- If a vehicle is approaching in an adjacent lane at a speed higher than your vehicle.
- Bad weather obstructing the sensors.

Lane Keeping System

BLIND SPOT ASSIST INDICATORS

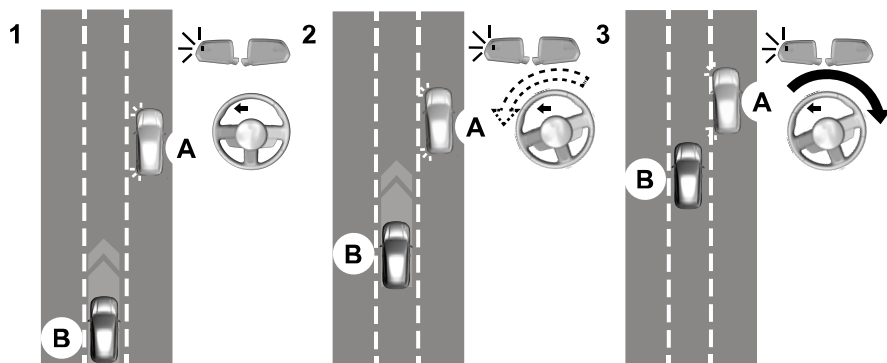


Diagram 1: Vehicle A uses its left turn signal preparing to change from the right lane to the middle lane. Vehicle B is already in the middle lane and just entered Vehicle A's blind spot causing the blind spot information system alert indicator to flash on the exterior mirror.

Diagram 2: The driver of Vehicle A begins to steer into the center lane not aware of Vehicle B.

Diagram 3: Blind spot assist counter steers to help alert the driver of Vehicle A to direct their vehicle back into the right lane to help avoid a possible collision with Vehicle B.

The lane keeping aid warning lamp or yellow lane marking in your instrument cluster display indicate blind spot assist activation. In addition, the blind spot information system alert indicator flashes on the exterior mirror on the same side as the detection. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 239).

Blind Spot Assist Information Messages

Message	Action
Blind spot assist not available Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Blind spot assist not available Side sensor blocked	Displays if your blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
Blind Spot Assist System malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Lane Keeping System

Message	Action
Trailer Brake Module Malfunction	Lost communication with the trailer module. Blind spot assist is suppressed until the failure is fixed.
Trailer lighting module malfunction See manual	Lost communication with the trailer module. Blind spot assist is suppressed until the failure is fixed.
Front camera malfunction Service required	Front camera fault. Blind spot assist is disabled until the failure is fixed.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Lane keeping system malfunction Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	The system has detected a condition that has caused the system to be temporarily unavailable.
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The system has detected a condition that requires you to clean the windshield in order for it to operate properly.
Front camera malfunction Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Keep hands on steering wheel	The system requests that you keep your hands on the steering wheel.

Lane Keeping System

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why is the feature not available (lane markings are gray) when I can see the lane markings on the road?

- Your vehicle speed is less than 40 mph (65 km/h).
- The sun is shining directly into the camera lens.
- A quick intentional lane change has occurred.
- You are driving your vehicle too close to the lane markings for an extended interval of time.
- Driving at high speeds in curves.
- The last alert warning or aid intervention occurred a short time ago.
- Ambiguous lane markings, for example, in construction zones.
- Rapid transition from light to dark, or from dark to light.
- Sudden offset in lane markings.
- ABS or AdvanceTrac™ is active.
- There is a camera blockage due to dirt, grime, fog, frost or water on the windshield.
- You are driving too close to the vehicle in front of you.
- Transitioning between no lane markings to lane markings, or vice versa.
- There is standing water on the road.
- Faint lane markings, for example, partial yellow lane markings on concrete roads.
- Lane width is too narrow or too wide.
- You have not calibrated the camera after a windshield replacement.

- Driving on roads with tight curves or uneven surfaces.

Why does the vehicle not come back toward the middle of the lane, as expected, in the Aid, or Aid + Alert mode?

- High cross winds are present.
- There is a large road crown.
- Rough roads, grooves or shoulder drop-offs.
- Heavy, uneven loading of the vehicle or improper tire inflation pressure.
- You changed the tires or modified the suspension.

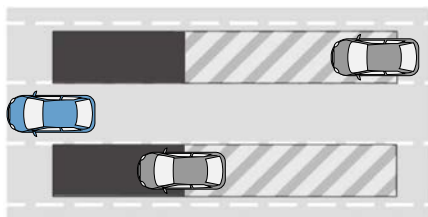
Blind Spot Information System

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM

Blind spot information system detects vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone.

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WORK

Blind spot information system uses sensors on both sides of your vehicle, detecting rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 4 m (13 ft) beyond the rear bumper. The detection area extends to approximately 18 m (59 ft) beyond the rear bumper when the vehicle speed is greater than 48 km/h (30 mph) to alert you of faster approaching vehicles.



BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not use the blind spot information system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The blind spot information system is not a replacement for careful driving.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

Note: *Blind spot information system does not prevent contact with other vehicles. It does not detect parked vehicles, pedestrians, animals or other infrastructure.*

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

Blind spot information system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).

The system may not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone while overtaking.

Note: *For vehicles without the trailer coverage feature, we recommend that you switch the blind spot information system off when you attach a trailer.*

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

Blind spot information system turns on when all the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- You shift into drive (D).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h (6 mph).

Blind Spot Information System

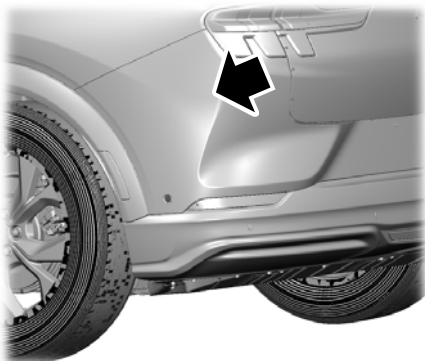
SWITCHING BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Switch Blind Spot Information System on or off.

When you switch blind spot information system off, a warning lamp illuminates. When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice. A telltale remains illuminated in the instrument cluster when the blind spot information system is switched off in the settings menu.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

LOCATING THE BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM SENSORS



The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Blocked sensors may affect system accuracy.

Note: Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

Note: Bike and cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor. We recommend switching the feature off when using a bike or cargo rack.

Note: The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

If the sensors become blocked, a message may appear in the instrument cluster display. See **Blind Spot Information System – Information Messages** (page 241). The alert indicators remain illuminated but the system does not alert you.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM INDICATORS



Blind Spot Information System



When blind spot information system detects a vehicle, an alert indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side from which the

vehicle is approaching. If you turn the turn signal on for that side of your vehicle, the alert indicator flashes.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
BLIS malfunction	A fault with the system has occurred. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
BLIS not available Sensor blocked See manual	Something is blocking the sensors. Clean the sensors.

Exit Warning

WHAT IS EXIT WARNING

Exit warning provides a visual and audible alert when a vehicle occupant opens a door into approaching traffic. It uses radar sensors to alert you to traffic objects.

When the system detects approaching traffic, the electronic door latches prevent the door adjacent to the hazard from opening. The door opens if the vehicle occupant pulls the handle a second time.

HOW DOES EXIT WARNING WORK

Exit warning detects traffic objects such as vehicles, cyclists, scooters and motorcycles that approach your vehicle from the rear and cross into the exit warning zone. The exit warning zones are along the left and right sides of your vehicle and extend slightly past a fully open door. The exit warning system becomes active once you have started your vehicle and the vehicle is not moving. Exit warning operates in any gear position.



Note: The system cannot detect animals, slow moving pedestrians or any type of stationary object.

EXIT WARNING PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The exit warning system becomes active once you have started your vehicle and the vehicle is not moving. Exit warning is only active when your vehicle is on.

WARNING: Always pay attention to the traffic situation and the area around the vehicle.

WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

Exit Warning

EXIT WARNING LIMITATIONS

The exit warning system becomes active once you have started your vehicle and the vehicle is not moving. It remains on for about 3 minutes after turning your vehicle off. It turns off immediately when locking the doors. Exit warning will inform you when it turns off and operates in any gear position.

Note: Do not use this feature as a replacement for paying attention when exiting your vehicle.

Note: The system does not prevent contact with other vehicles by automatically closing the doors.

Note: The system may not inform and/or alert you if a traffic object is approaching too quickly or if the parking position prevents detection.

Exit Warning Alert

Note: Exit warning is designed to provide a visual and audible alert during an exit when an occupant opens any door and a traffic object is approaching on the same side.

Exit Warning Prevention (If Equipped)

Depending on your vehicle's features, exit warning is also designed to prevent the door latch from opening when a traffic object is approaching on the same side. In this situation, the inner door handle is disabled, and the door remains closed. A visual and audible warning is also present during a prevention. After the traffic object has passed and no additional traffic objects are approaching, the inner door handle is automatically enabled and the occupant can open the door to exit the vehicle.

Note: Occupants can override the prevention function and open the door while the traffic object is still approaching and the incident is still imminent by requesting the door to open twice quickly (within 5 seconds).

Exit Warning and Power Child Lock (If Equipped)

Power child lock remains active and must be manually deactivated if you attempt to switch it off at the same time exit warning detects an approaching traffic object.

A visual warning occurs in this situation.



Note: The driver can override the exit warning with power child lock function by pressing the power child lock deactivation button twice quickly (within 5 seconds).

Note: When the exit warning and power child lock function is activated, doors can still be opened from outside.

Exit Warning

EXIT WARNING INDICATORS



When exit warning detects an approaching traffic object on one side, the corresponding alert indicator in the exterior mirror is illuminated. If exit warning alert is active, the same alert indicator flashes. See **Blind Spot Information System Indicators** (page 240).

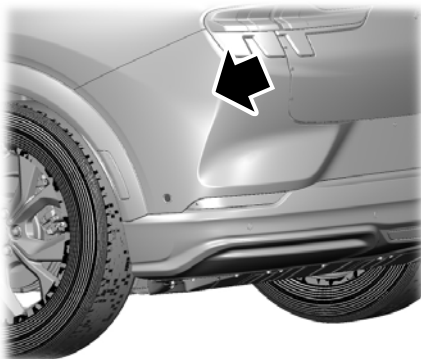
In addition to the mirror indicator there is also visual indicator in the touchscreen noting what side a traffic object has been detected on.

SWITCHING EXIT WARNING ON AND OFF

You can switch off the exit warning system by using the touchscreen.

Note: *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

LOCATING THE EXIT WARNING SENSORS



The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

Note: *Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.*

Note: *Blocked sensors may affect system accuracy.*

Note: *The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer or bike rack.*

Exit Warning

EXIT WARNING – TROUBLESHOOTING

EXIT WARNING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Right side: check surroundings before exiting	Right exit warning alert is active.
Left side: check surroundings before exiting	Left exit warning alert is active.
Exit Warning turning off Exit safely	Displays when the exit warning system turns off or shuts down.
Exit Warning System malfunction	Displays when the exit warning system detects any system error.

Cross Traffic Alert

WHAT IS CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT

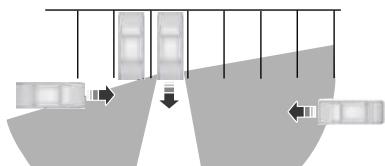
The system is designed to alert you of road users and traffic objects approaching from the rear sides and from behind your vehicle when you shift into reverse (R).

If you continue to reverse after the system alerts you, the system is designed to apply the brakes if it still detects approaching road users or traffic objects. If the system applies the brakes, a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

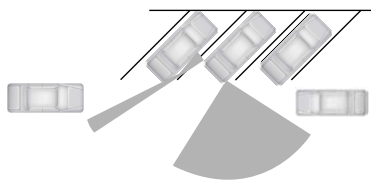
Note: *There could be instances when unexpected or unwanted braking occurs. You can override this by firmly pressing the accelerator pedal.*

HOW DOES CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WORK

Cross Traffic Alert is designed to detect road users or traffic objects approaching above a minimum speed of 8 km/h (5 mph). Coverage can decrease when the sensors are partially, mostly or fully obstructed.



The sensor on the left-hand side is only partially obstructed and zone coverage on the right-hand side is maximized.



Zone coverage also decreases when parking at narrow angles. The sensor on the left-hand side is mostly obstructed and zone coverage on that side is severely reduced.

Note: *Slowly reversing helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.*

The system only applies the brakes for a short period of time when an event occurs. Take action as soon as you notice the system applying the brakes in order to remain in control of your vehicle, the system does not do this for you.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Cross Traffic Alert



WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



WARNING: Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



WARNING: Some situations and objects prevent hazard detection, for example, inclement weather, unconventional vehicle types and pedestrians. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use the system with accessories that extend beyond the front or rear of your vehicle, for example a trailer hitch or bike rack. The system is not able to make corrections for the additional length of the accessories.



WARNING: Do not use the cross traffic alert system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before reversing out of a parking space. The cross traffic alert system is not a replacement for careful driving.

Note: *Certain add-on devices around the bumper or fascia may cause unexpected system behavior. For example, large trailer hitches, bicycle or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, fuel containers, bumper covers or any other device may block the normal detection zone of the system. Remove the add-on device to prevent unexpected system behavior.*

Note: *If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia leaving it misaligned or bent, it could alter the sensing zone causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.*

Note: *Vehicle loading and suspension changes can impact the angle of the sensors and may change the normal detection zone of the system resulting in inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.*

Note: *You may experience reduced system performance on road surfaces that limit deceleration. For example, roads with ice, loose gravel, mud or sand.*

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT LIMITATIONS

The system may not correctly operate when any of the following occur:

- Something is blocking the sensors.
- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects are obstructing the sensors.
- Traffic objects approach at speeds less than 8 km/h (5 mph) or greater than 60 km/h (37 mph).

Cross Traffic Alert

- Your vehicle speed is greater than 12 km/h (7 mph).
- You reverse out of an angled parking space.
- If you switch the traction system off, cross traffic alert does not apply the brakes.

Note: The system does not alert for small stationary and moving objects.

Cross Traffic Alert Limitations with a Trailer Attached

The system remains on when you attach a trailer to vehicles with blind spot information system with trailer coverage under the following conditions:

- You connect a bike rack or cargo rack with a maximum length of 1 m (3 ft).
- You set the trailer length to 1 m (3 ft) in the touchscreen.

Note: The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with an approved trailer tow module and tow bar, the system turns off when you attach a trailer greater than 1 m (3 ft). For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

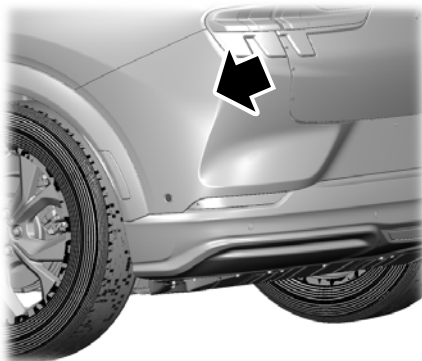
SWITCHING CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT ON AND OFF

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cross Traffic Alert. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 362).
2. Switch the feature on or off.

When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.

Note: The system switches on every time you switch the ignition on.

LOCATING THE CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT SENSORS



The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

Note: Blocked sensors may affect system accuracy.

Note: Bike and cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor. We recommend switching the feature off when using a bike or cargo rack.

If something is blocking the sensors, a message may appear in the information display when you shift into reverse (R).

Cross Traffic Alert

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT INDICATORS



When the system detects an approaching vehicle, a tone sounds, an alert indicator illuminates in the relevant exterior mirror and arrows appear in the touchscreen to show from which side the vehicle is

approaching.

If the system malfunctions, a message appears. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *In exceptional conditions, the system could alert you or apply the brakes, even when there is nothing in the detection zone, for example a vehicle passing further away from your vehicle.*

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Cross traffic alert	Displays when the system detects a vehicle. Check for approaching traffic.
Cross Traffic not available Sensor blocked See manual	Displays if the cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. Clean the sensors. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross traffic system malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross traffic alert deactivated Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Cross traffic alert Applying brakes	Displays if the system applies the brakes. Check for approaching traffic.

Note: *If your vehicle has reverse brake assist See **Reverse Brake Assist – Information Messages** (page 179).*

Pre-Collision Assist

WHAT IS PRE-COLLISION ASSIST

Pre-collision assist detects and warns of approaching hazards in the roadway. If your vehicle is rapidly approaching another stationary vehicle, a vehicle traveling in the same direction as yours, or a pedestrian within your driving path, the system provides multiple levels of assistance to help avoid a collision.

HOW DOES PRE-COLLISION ASSIST WORK

The system warns the driver of potential hazards by providing three levels of assistance.



If your vehicle is rapidly approaching potential hazards the system provides the following levels of functionality:

1. Alert.
2. Brake support.
3. Automatic emergency braking.



Alert: When active, a flashing visual warning appears and an audible warning tone sounds.

Brake Support: The system helps reduce the impact speed by preparing the brakes for rapid braking. The system does not automatically apply the brakes. If you press the brake pedal, the system may apply additional braking up to maximum braking force, even if you lightly press the brake pedal.

Automatic Emergency Braking:

Automatic emergency braking may activate if the system determines that a collision is imminent.

Note: If the pre-collision assist alerts are too frequent or disturbing, you can reduce the alert sensitivity. Setting the low sensitivity results in fewer and later warnings of a potential forward collision. The manufacturer recommends using the high sensitivity setting where possible.

Note: Automatic emergency braking performance is not affected by the sensitivity setting.

Each system has various levels of detection capabilities. See **Pre-Collision Assist Limitations** (page 251).

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system only provides limited braking. Your vehicle may not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary.



WARNING: The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

Pre-Collision Assist



WARNING: The system may operate with reduced function during cold and inclement weather conditions. Snow, ice, rain, spray and fog can adversely affect the system. Keep the front camera and radar free of snow and ice. Failure to follow this instruction may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not function properly if your vehicle is fitted with a replacement windshield not approved by us.



WARNING: Do not perform windshield repairs around the rear-view mirror. Failure to follow this instruction could limit sensor performance.



WARNING: System performance could be reduced in situations where the vehicle camera has limited detection capability. These situations include but are not limited to direct or low sunlight, vehicles at night without tail lights, unconventional vehicle types, pedestrians or cyclists with complex backgrounds, running pedestrians or fast moving cyclists, partly obscured pedestrians or cyclists, pedestrians or cyclists that the system cannot distinguish from a group. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system cannot help prevent all crashes. Do not rely on this system to replace driver judgment and the need to maintain a safe distance and speed.



WARNING: Take additional care if your vehicle is heavily loaded or you are towing a trailer. These conditions could result in reduced performance of this system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Note: *Automatic emergency braking may activate when a collision is imminent. The system cannot prevent all crashes, but may reduce crash severity. Do not test automatic emergency braking or forward collision warning. Testing this system must only be conducted by authorized test facilities using specialized equipment. Do not use automatic emergency braking to replace normal braking for any reason. Relying on automatic emergency braking to stop your vehicle may cause an unexpected accident which could lead to serious injury or death.*

Note: *The system does not detect animals.*

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Pre-collision assist depends on the detection ability of its camera and sensors. Any obstructions or damage to these areas can limit detection or prevent the system from functioning. See **Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors** (page 253).

The system is active at 5 km/h (3 mph) and above.

Note: *The pre-collision assist system automatically disables if your vehicle has the following drive modes and you select four-wheel drive low or manually disable AdvanceTrac™ and rock crawl mode.*

Note: *Brake support and automatic emergency braking can detect other vehicles up to the maximum speed of your vehicle.*

Pre-Collision Assist

Pedestrian Detection Limitations

Pedestrian detection is active at speeds up to 80 km/h (50 mph).

Pedestrian detection operates optimally when detected hazards are clearly identifiable. The system can have reduced performance in situations where pedestrians are running, partly obscured, have a complex background, or when the system cannot distinguish them from a group.

Cyclist Detection Limitations

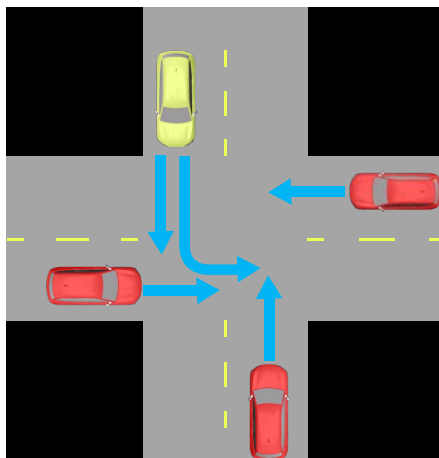
Cyclist detection is active at speeds up to 80 km/h (50 mph).

Cyclist detection functions optimally when detected hazards are clearly identifiable. The system can have reduced performance in situations where cyclists are fast-moving, partly obscured, have a complex background, or where the system cannot distinguish them from a group.

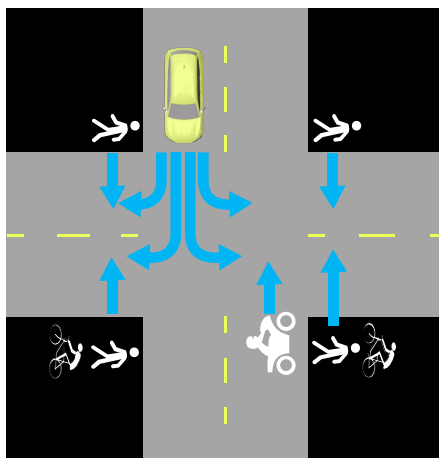
Intersection Assist

The system operates when you turn across the path of an oncoming vehicle, or a pedestrian or cyclist crossing the road. Detection of oncoming vehicles is active if you are driving your vehicle at speeds up to 30 km/h (19 mph). Detection of crossing pedestrians or cyclists at an intersection is active if you are driving your vehicle at speeds up to 30 km/h (19 mph). The system also operates when you approach the path of a crossing vehicle. Detection of crossing vehicles is active if you are driving your vehicle at speeds up to 65 km/h (40 mph).

Note: In the following intersection scenarios, your vehicle is represented in yellow.



The previous image shows potential intersection scenarios from the perspective of the yellow vehicle. The system may detect the red vehicles if you encounter them within the appropriate detection range.



Pre-Collision Assist

The previous image shows potential motorcycle, bicycle, and pedestrian intersection scenarios from the perspective of the yellow vehicle. The system may detect these threats if you encounter them within the appropriate detection speed.

Pre-Collision Assist - Oncoming Vehicles

This feature expands the function of pre-collision assist to oncoming vehicles within your same lane. The system can help to reduce the severity of a crash by providing a warning to you as well as automatically applying the brakes. Detection of oncoming vehicles is active if you are driving your vehicle above 30 km/h (19 mph).

SWITCHING PRE-COLLISION ASSIST ON AND OFF

You cannot switch the system off.

Adjusting the Pre-Collision Assist Settings

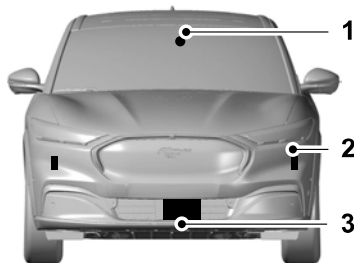
You can adjust the following settings by using the touchscreen controls in the pre-collision assist menu:

- Change alert sensitivity to one of three possible settings.
- If required, switch automatic emergency braking on or off.
- If required, switch evasive steering assist on or off.

Note: Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering assist automatically turn on every time you start your vehicle.

Note: If you switch automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist switches off.

LOCATING THE PRE-COLLISION ASSIST SENSORS



1. Camera.
2. Radar sensor.
3. Corner radar (present on both sides).

If a message regarding a blocked sensor or camera appears in the instrument cluster display, something is obstructing the radar or front windshield camera. The radar sensor is behind the fascia cover in the center of the lower grille. With a blocked sensor or camera, the system may not function, or performance may reduce. See **Pre-Collision Assist – Information Messages** (page 255).

Note: Proper system operation requires a clear view of the road by the camera. Repair any windshield damage in the area of the camera's field of view.

Note: If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs and your vehicle has a radar sensor, the radar sensing zone could change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detections. Have your vehicle serviced to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.

Pre-Collision Assist

Note: If your vehicle detects excessive heat at the camera or a potential misalignment condition, a message could appear in the instrument cluster display indicating temporary sensor unavailability. When operational conditions are correct, the message deactivates. For example, when the ambient temperature around the sensor decreases or the sensor successfully recalibrates.

FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

WHAT IS FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

A warning flashes and an audible warning sounds if your vehicle rapidly approaches another vehicle to warn you of the risk of a crash with the vehicle in front of you.

ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance.
2. Press Pre-Collision Assist.
3. Press Alert Sensitivity.
4. Select a setting.

AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING

WHAT IS AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING

Automatic emergency braking may activate if the system determines that a collision is imminent. The system may help to reduce impact damage or completely avoid the crash.

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Press Pre-Collision Assist.
3. Press Auto Emergency Braking.
4. Switch the feature on or off.

Note: A telltale remains illuminated in the instrument cluster when automatic emergency braking is switched off using the settings menu.

EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

WHAT IS EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

If your vehicle is rapidly approaching a road user, evasive steering assist helps you steer around the road user.

After you turn the steering wheel in an attempt to avoid a crash with the road user, the system applies additional steering torque to help you steer around the road user. After you pass the road user, the system applies steering torque when you turn the steering wheel to steer back into the lane. The system deactivates after you fully pass the road user.

Note: Road users are defined as pedestrians or bicyclists in your vehicle's path or another stationary vehicle in the same lane or a vehicle traveling in the same lane in the same direction as you. See **Pre-Collision Assist Precautions** (page 250).

Pre-Collision Assist

EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Evasive steering assist only activates when all the following occur:

- Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering assist are on.
- The system detects a road user ahead and starts to apply the brakes.
- You significantly turn the steering wheel to steer around a road user.

Note: Evasive steering assist does not automatically steer around a road user. If you do not turn the steering wheel, evasive steering assist does not activate.

Note: Evasive steering assist does not activate if the distance to the road user ahead is too small and the system cannot avoid a crash.

SWITCHING EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Press Pre-Collision Assist.
3. Press Evasive Steering Assist.

4. Switch the feature on or off.

Note: If you switch automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist turns off.

Note: Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering assist turn on every time you start your vehicle.

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – WARNING LAMPS



A telltale illuminates in the instrument cluster display to indicate if the system is disabled, unavailable, or temporarily degraded due to external environmental conditions.

Note: If the telltale illuminates without a corresponding information message, make sure the setting for automatic emergency braking is switched on. See **Switching Automatic Emergency Braking On and Off** (page 254). No action is needed unless an information message appears. See **Pre-Collision Assist Precautions** (page 250).

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Pre-collision assist not available Sensor blocked	You have a blocked sensor due to bad weather, ice, mud or water in front of the radar sensor. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve.
Pre-collision assist not available	A fault with the system has occurred. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Pre-Collision Assist

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What should I do if the windshield in front of the camera is dirty or obstructed?

- Clean the outside of the windshield in front of the camera.

What if the windshield in front of the camera is clean, but the message remains in the instrument cluster display?

- Wait a short time. It could take several minutes for the camera to detect that there is no obstruction.

What should I do if the surface of the radar in the grille is dirty or obstructed?

- Clean the grille surface in front of the radar or remove the object causing the obstruction.

What if the surface of the radar in the grille is clean, but the message remains in the instrument cluster display?

- Wait a short time. It could take several minutes for the radar to detect that there is no obstruction.

Can weather or road conditions interfere with the radar signals?

- Yes, weather such as heavy rain, spray or fog as well as water, snow or ice on the surface of the road can interfere with the radar signals. In these situations, the system temporarily disables this feature. Pre-collision assist reactivates a short time after the weather conditions improve.

What if the radar is out of alignment due to a front end impact?

- Have your vehicle serviced to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.

Driver Alert

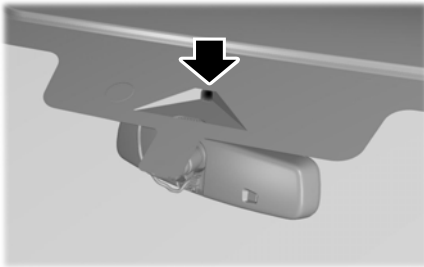
WHAT IS DRIVER ALERT

Driver alert alerts you if it determines that you are becoming drowsy or if your driving deteriorates.

HOW DOES DRIVER ALERT WORK

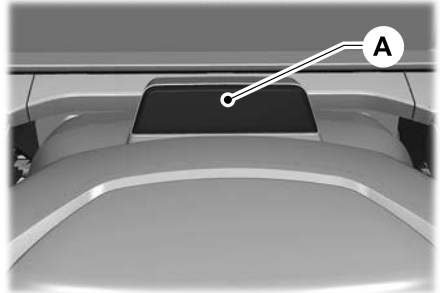
Driver Alert determines your alertness level based on your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings and other factors through use of the front camera sensor behind the interior mirror.

If the system determines you are becoming drowsy, it alerts you to rest. If you continue to exhibit drowsy driving behavior, the system delivers an additional warning to rest as soon as it is safe to do so.



If your vehicle has a driver facing camera, driver alert determines if you are driving while distracted by monitoring your eyes and head position. If the system determines you are distracted, it alerts you to return your eyes to the road by sending a "watch the road" warning accompanied by a tone.

If you continue to not look at the road, another "watch the road" warning appears with an additional tone. This warning remains visible in the instrument cluster until you press the "OK" button on the steering wheel.



A Camera and lighting areas behind the steering wheel.

DRIVER ALERT PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Take regular rest breaks if you feel tired. Do not wait for the system to warn you.

WARNING: Certain driving styles may result in the system warning you even if you are not feeling tired.

Driver Alert



WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



WARNING: The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



WARNING: The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

Note: If something is blocking the camera or damaged the windshield, Driver Alert may not function.

DRIVER ALERT LIMITATIONS

Driver alert may not function correctly if:

- The sensor cannot track the road lane markings.
- Your vehicle's speed is less than approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

SWITCHING DRIVER ALERT ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Press Driver Alert.
3. Switch the feature on or off.

DRIVER ALERT INDICATORS

System Warnings

The warning system has two stages:

1. A temporary warning is issued to advise you to take a rest. This message only appears for a short time.
2. If you do not rest and the system continues to detect that your driving deteriorates, it issues a further warning. This remains in the instrument cluster display until you cancel it.

Note: The system does not warn you if the vehicle speed falls below approximately 20 km/h (10 mph).



If there is a fault or blockage in the hardware, one or both of the two displayed telltales will appear in the instrument cluster display.

Driver Alert

DRIVER ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

DRIVER ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Driver fatigue warning Rest now	Stop and rest as soon as it is safe to do so.
Driver fatigue warning Rest suggested	Take a rest soon.

Traffic Sign Recognition

WHAT IS TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION

The system is designed to detect traffic signs to inform you of the current speed limit, overtaking and right of way regulations.

HOW DOES TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION WORK

Traffic sign recognition uses a sensor behind the interior mirror to detect traffic signs.

Map data could influence sign detection. Stored traffic sign data could influence the indicated speed limit value.

Note: : *This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See **Connected Vehicle Settings** (page 352). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.*

The system detects recognizable traffic signs, for example:

- Speed limit signs.
- No overtaking signs.
- Speed limit cancellation signs.
- No overtaking cancellation signs.
- Stop signs.
- Yield signs.

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if your vehicle has a non-Ford windshield. Do not carry out windshield repairs in the area around the sensor.

Note: *Always replace headlamp bulbs and other bulbs with parts that meet the specifications for your vehicle. Non-standard parts could reduce system performance.*

Note: *If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by Ford, the system may not correctly function.*

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION LIMITATIONS

Traffic sign recognition may not detect the correct speed due to:

- Construction zones.
- Outdated map data.

Traffic Sign Recognition

- Incorrect recognition of traffic signs by the sensor of signs on parallel roads or exit ramps.
- Missed recognition of faded, dirty or distorted signs.

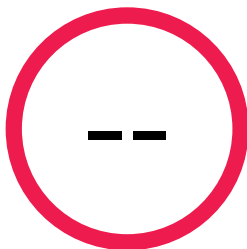
Note: The system may not detect all speed and traffic signs and may incorrectly read signs.

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION INDICATORS

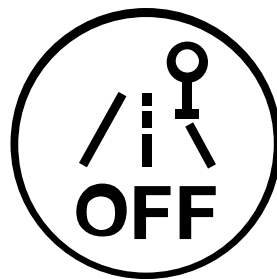


The system can display two traffic signs in parallel.

You can view the status at any time using the instrument cluster display.



When the system does not detect a speed sign, for example, navigation map data is not available for a short period of time, or the system has no input, a speed sign with two hyphens appears in the instrument cluster display.



When the system detects an issue, for example, navigation map data is not available for a longer period of time, or the camera is blocked or misaligned, an off symbol appears in the instrument cluster display. If the symbol continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

The system displays recognizable traffic signs in two stages as follows:

1. All new traffic signs appear brighter than the others in the display.
2. After a predetermined time they display normally.

If the system detects a supplementary traffic sign, it displays below the respective traffic sign. For example, when passing a speed limit for vehicles with a trailer sign.

Note: If your vehicle has a navigation system, stored traffic sign data may influence the indicated speed limit value.

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION SETTINGS

From the driver assistance menu, press Speed Limit Assist. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 362).

You can adjust the following settings:

Traffic Sign Recognition

- Switch the speed warning on or off.
 - You can set the system speed warning to alert you when the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit recognized by the system.
- Switch the chime for speed limit change on or off.



Press and hold the button to temporarily switch the speed warning off.

Note: *The speed warning turns on automatically after every ignition cycle.*



If you see this icon next to a menu option, press it for more information.

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION – TROUBLESHOOTING

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Traffic sign recognition Reduced performance See manual	The traffic sign data provided by the navigation system is unavailable due to weak or no signal. Wait a short period of time

Message	Action
	for the signal to improve. If the message continues to appear, have the system checked as soon as possible.

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the speed limit or traffic sign change without any sign on the road?

The speed limit and traffic sign changes due to stored data in the map data.

Why does traffic sign recognition show a wrong sign?

The system shows a wrong sign due to incorrect and outdated map data or due to incorrect recognition of the signs by the camera.

Wrong Way Alert

WHAT IS WRONG WAY ALERT

The system alerts you if it detects that you are driving the wrong way on a freeway exit road.

HOW DOES WRONG WAY ALERT WORK

The system uses a sensor behind the interior mirror to detect no entry signs and uses information from the navigation system.

If the system detects that you are driving the wrong way on a freeway exit road, a message appears in the instrument cluster display and a tone sounds. The audio system volume mutes and navigation system guidance pauses.

Note: Traffic sign data provided by the navigation system contains information integrated to the data carrier release.

WRONG WAY ALERT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if your vehicle has a non-Ford windshield. Do not carry out windshield repairs in the area around the sensor.

Note: Always replace headlamp bulbs with those specifically designed for your vehicle. Other bulbs may reduce system performance.

Note: If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system may not correctly function.

Note: In exceptional conditions, the system could alert you even if you are not driving the wrong way on a freeway exit road.

WRONG WAY ALERT LIMITATIONS

The system may not detect all traffic signs and may incorrectly read signs.

The system does not operate in some countries. Check the systems availability before use.

The system may not correctly operate in areas under construction or new infrastructure.

SWITCHING WRONG WAY ALERT ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance.
2. Press Wrong Way Alert.

Wrong Way Alert

3. Switch Wrong Way Alert on or off.

WRONG WAY ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

WRONG WAY ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Check driving direction	The system detects that you are driving the wrong way on a freeway exit road. Ensure you are driving in the correct direction.

Load Carrying

LOAD CARRYING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Make sure that you properly secure objects in the luggage compartment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



WARNING: Do not place objects on the luggage cover. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



WARNING: The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.



WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle.



WARNING: Exceeding any vehicle weight rating can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Note: When loading long objects into your vehicle, for example, pipes, timber or furniture, be careful not to damage the interior trim.

Load carrying can also impact other systems present in your vehicle. See **Lane Centering Precautions** (page 208). See **What Is BlueCruise** (page 216). See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 201).

TOW BAR MOUNTED CARRIER

TOW BAR MOUNTED CARRIER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not exceed the lowest rating capacity for your vehicle or trailer hitch. Overloading your vehicle or trailer hitch can impair your vehicle stability and handling. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Cargo accessory devices mounted to the hitch can change the weight distribution of the vehicle. Loaded vehicles, with more rear weight, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

When using a tow bar mounted carrier, consider the following:

- Carefully follow the instructions and warnings provided by the manufacturer of any cargo carrying device.
- Before driving the vehicle, make sure to properly attach the cargo carrying device, and securely attach all equipment to the cargo carrying device.

Load Carrying

- When loading a cargo accessory device to the hitch, do not exceed the maximum gross vehicle weight or maximum front and rear axle weights on the vehicle as defined on the vehicle identification plate. Mounting cargo accessory devices to the hitch limits the passenger and cargo capacity inside the vehicle.
- If you are using a bike carrier, the maximum allowed weight is 75 kg (165 lb) including the bikes and the carrier.
- Load the heaviest item closest to your vehicle.

TOW BAR MOUNTED LOAD CAPACITIES

The maximum accessory hitch load for cargo carrying devices is 75 kg (165 lb) unless restricted by lower hitch capacity or cargo carrying device capacity. We recommend using a hitch authorized by us which meets these load requirements. Do not exceed any certified vehicle loads as defined on the Vehicle Identification Plate.

Luggage Compartment

LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Keep vehicle doors and luggage compartment locked and keep keys and remote transmitters out of a child's reach. Unsupervised children could lock themselves in the luggage compartment and risk injury. Children should be taught not to play in vehicles.

Note: The frunk only operates when the vehicle is in park (P). If there is a problem with the open or close request, a tone sounds and a warning message appears in the instrument cluster.

Note: Do not hang any weight from the frunk. This could damage the frunk and its components. Remove any excessive weight from the frunk prior to use. If the frunk starts to close after it has fully opened, this indicates there may be excessive weight on the frunk or a possible strut failure. A repetitive tone sounds and the frunk closes under control. If the frunk continues to close after opening, have the system checked.

Note: Do not leave the frunk open while driving. This could damage the frunk and its components.

OPENING THE FRUNK

OPENING THE FRUNK FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

Note: Make sure the vehicle is in park (P).

Using the Touchscreen

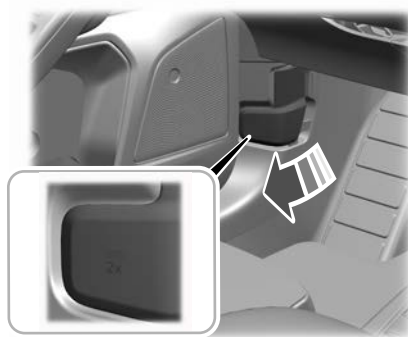
1. From the settings menu, press Controls. See **Center Display** (page 360).

2.



Press the frunk icon.

Manually Opening the Frunk



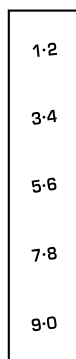
1. Open the left-hand front door.
2. Pull the release lever to release the primary latch.
3. Pull the release lever a second time to release the frunk.
4. Lift the frunk. The struts support the frunk.

OPENING THE FRUNK FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

Note: Be careful when opening the frunk in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the frunk.

Luggage Compartment

Using the Keyless Entry Keypad



Enter the factory set code or your personal code, then press **7-8** on the keypad within five seconds.

Using Phone as a Key

Press the button to open the frunk.

Note: Make sure the authorized phone is within 1 m (3 ft) of the vehicle.

OPENING THE FRUNK USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



Press the button twice within three seconds.

Note: Be careful when opening the frunk in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the frunk.

CLOSING THE FRUNK

CLOSING THE FRUNK FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

Manually Closing the Frunk



WARNING: Do not allow people or pets to climb inside the luggage compartment, and do not shut the luggage compartment with a person or pet inside. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Lower the frunk and apply light pressure as it drops.

Note: Before driving off, check the instrument cluster for a frunk ajar message or warning indicator. Failure to do this could result in unintentionally leaving the frunk open while driving.

Luggage Compartment

USING THE FRUNK EMERGENCY RELEASE



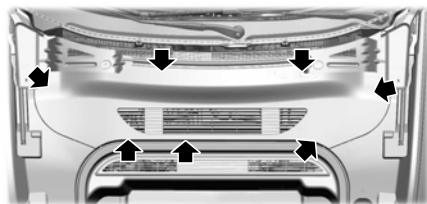
If you are stuck inside the frunk, press the interior release button to open it. The material around the switch glows after a brief exposure to ambient light.

INSTALLING AND REMOVING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT COVER

Remove the front luggage compartment covers in the following order:

1. Rear cover.
2. Left-hand side cover.
3. Right-hand side cover.

Removing the Rear Cover



1. Start at the rear edge of the left-hand side.
2. Pull upward at the clip locations shown to release the clips.
3. Carefully remove the cover.
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Removing the Left-Hand Side Cover



1. Start at the rear edge of the left-hand side and work toward the front of the cover.

Luggage Compartment

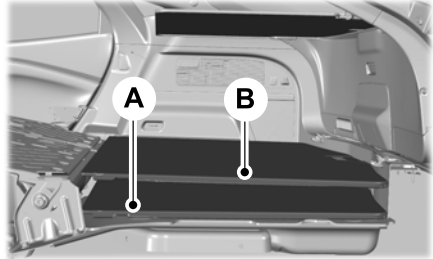
2. Pull upward at the clip locations shown to release the clips.
3. Carefully remove the cover.
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Removing the Right-Hand Side Cover



1. Start at the rear edge of the right-hand side and work toward the front of the cover.
2. Pull upward at the clip locations shown to release the clips.
3. Carefully remove the cover.
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

ADJUSTING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT LOAD FLOOR



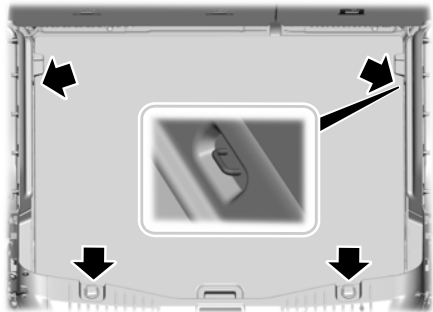
A Low load floor position.

B High load floor position.

The load floor can be adjusted to a higher position to provide a flat load area when the rear seats are folded.

LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT ANCHOR POINTS

LOCATING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT ANCHOR POINTS



Luggage Compartment

The anchor points for the rear luggage compartment are located behind the rear seats.

LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT – TROUBLESHOOTING

LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the vehicle is on and the trunk is not completely closed.

Connecting a Trailer

TOW BALL

TOW BALL PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not exceed the lowest rating capacity for your vehicle or trailer hitch. Overloading your vehicle or trailer hitch can impair your vehicle stability and handling. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not cut, drill, weld or modify the trailer hitch. Modifying the trailer hitch could reduce the hitch rating.



WARNING: Always place the tow ball arm in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile in a crash. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

- Remove the trailer wiring plug from the trailer wiring connection socket when not in use. Failure to do so may result in corrosion of the trailer wiring connection socket. Regularly clean the trailer wiring connection socket and make sure the socket cover is fully closed.
- If you use a high pressure water jet to clean your vehicle, disconnect the trailer wiring plug. Do not aim the water jet directly at the trailer wiring connection socket. We recommend that you detach the tow ball arm before washing your vehicle.

DETACHING THE TOW BALL ARM

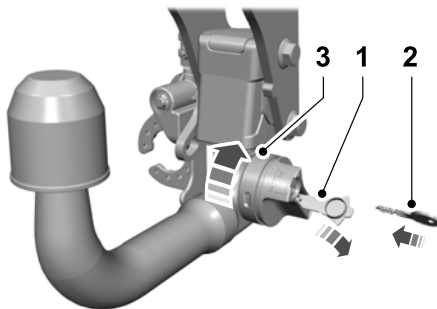
You must detach the tow ball arm when not in use. Securely stow the tow ball arm in the luggage compartment.

Never unlock or detach the tow ball arm with a trailer attached.

Do not use any tools to detach the tow ball arm.

Tow Ball Arm Guidelines

- Replacement keys are available. We recommend that you record the key number on the lock cylinder.
- The tow ball arm mechanism is maintenance free. Do not grease or oil the mechanism.



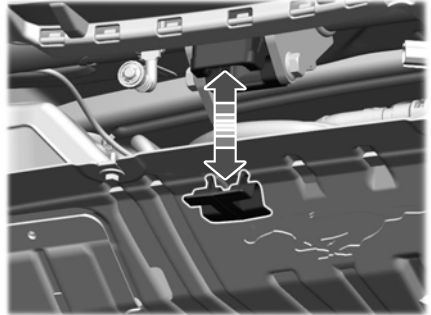
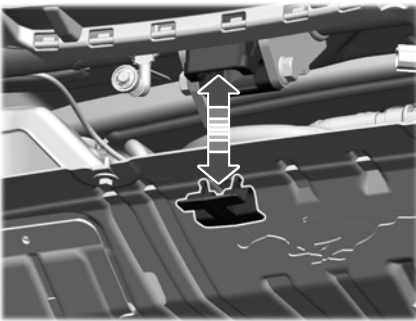
1. Remove the protective cap.
2. Insert the key and turn it counterclockwise to unlock the handwheel.

Connecting a Trailer

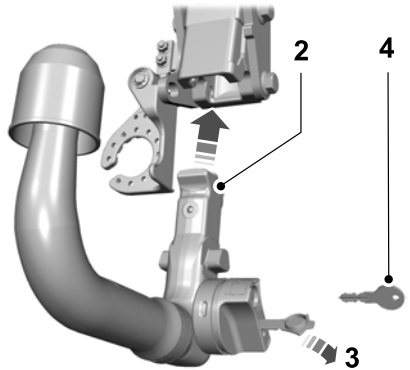
3. Hold the tow ball arm. Push the handwheel inward and turn it clockwise.

Note: The mark on the handwheel turns from green to red.

4. Release the handwheel.
5. Pull the tow ball arm downward to remove it.
6. Turn the trailer wiring connection socket upward through 90° until it engages in the end position.



1. Remove the blanking plug.



7. Insert the blanking plug.

ATTACHING THE TOW BALL ARM

Do not use any tools to attach the tow ball arm.

Note: You can only attach the tow ball arm if it is unlocked, with the mark on the handwheel red. If the mark on the handwheel is amber, push the handwheel in and turn 180° clockwise to unlock.

2. Fully insert the tow ball arm until it engages. Do not hold the handwheel.

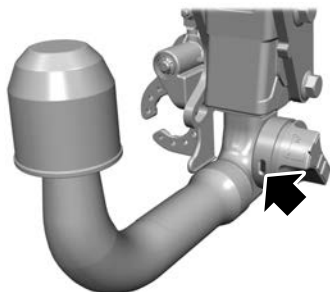
Note: The mark on the handwheel turns from red to green.

3. Remove the protective cap.
4. Insert the key and turn it clockwise to lock the handwheel.
5. Fit the protective cap. Fully push it back over the lock.

Connecting a Trailer

6. Turn the trailer wiring connection socket downward through 90° until it engages in the end position.

Tow Ball Arm Safety Checks



After you attach the tow ball arm, make sure:

- The mark on the handwheel is green.
- You have locked the handwheel.
- You have removed the key.

Do not use the tow ball arm if any of these cannot be met. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Towing a Trailer

TOWING A TRAILER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not exceed 100 km/h (60 mph). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The rear tire pressures must be increased by 0.2 bar (3 psi) above specification. Do not exceed the maximum pressure stated on the tire sidewall. This could cause serious personal injury.



WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum gross vehicle weight stated on the vehicle identification plate. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Towing trailers beyond the maximum recommended gross trailer weight exceeds the limit of your vehicle and could result in vehicle damage, loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum vertical load on the tow ball. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The anti-lock brake system does not control the trailer brakes.

TOWING A TRAILER LIMITATIONS

The vehicle's trailer towing capacity could be limited by outside temperatures.

Towing a trailer also depends on additional systems present in your vehicle. See **What Is BlueCruise** (page 216). See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 201). See **Lane Centering Precautions** (page 208).

Note: *Not all vehicles are suitable or approved to have a tow bar fitted. Ask an authorized dealer for more information.*

Note: *The maximum permissible trailer vertical weight on the trailer identification plate is the trailer manufacturer's testing value. The vehicle maximum permissible trailer vertical weight may be lower.*

TRAILER TOWING HINTS

Towing a trailer changes the handling characteristics of your vehicle and increases stopping distances. Adapt your speed and driving behavior to the load of the trailer.

The stability of your vehicle-to-trailer combination depends on the quality of the trailer.

When towing a trailer:

- Obey country specific regulations for towing a trailer.
- Do not exceed 100 km/h (60 mph) even if a country allows higher speeds under certain conditions.
- Place loads as low as possible and central to the axle of your trailer. If you are towing with an unloaded vehicle, you should place the load in your trailer toward the front, within the maximum vertical load, as this gives the best stability.
- The trailer vertical weight on the tow ball is essential for the driving stability of your vehicle and trailer.

Towing a Trailer

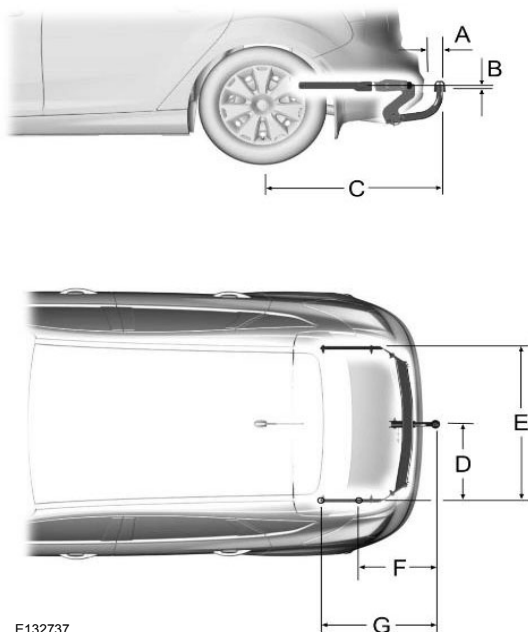
- The vertical weight on the tow ball should be at least 4% of the trailer weight and not exceed the maximum permissible weight.
- Reduce speed immediately if the trailer

shows any sign of swaying.

Note: We recommend that you use a trailer safety cable. Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you use a trailer safety cable.

TOWING WEIGHTS AND DIMENSIONS

TOW BAR DIMENSIONS



E132737

Towing a Trailer

Item	Dimension Description	Dimension mm (in)
A	Bumper to center of tow ball.	71 (3)
B	Attachment point to center of tow ball.	55 (2)
C	Wheel center to center of tow ball.	937 (37)
D	Center of tow ball to side member.	485 (19)
E	Distance between side members.	970 (38)
F	Center of tow ball to center of first attachment point.	420 (17)
G	Center of tow ball to center of second attachment point.	570 (22)

Maximum Permissible Trailer Vertical Weight

Battery	kg (lb)
Standard range battery vehicles and GT	30 (66)
Extended range battery vehicles	60 (132)

Trailer Sway Control

HOW DOES TRAILER SWAY CONTROL WORK

The system applies the brakes to the individual wheels and reduces engine torque to aid vehicle stability.

If the trailer begins to sway, the stability control lamp flashes and the message **Trailer sway Reduce speed** appears in the information display.

Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Check the vertical weight on the tow ball and trailer load distribution.

TRAILER SWAY CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Turning off trailer sway control increases the risk of loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death. Ford does not recommend disabling this feature except in situations where speed reduction may be detrimental (such as hill climbing), the driver has significant trailer towing experience, and can control trailer sway and maintain safe operation.

Note: *This feature only activates when significant trailer sway occurs.*

Note: *This feature does not prevent trailer sway, but reduces it once it begins.*

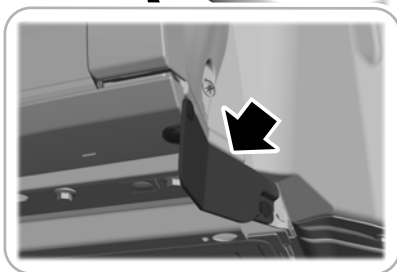
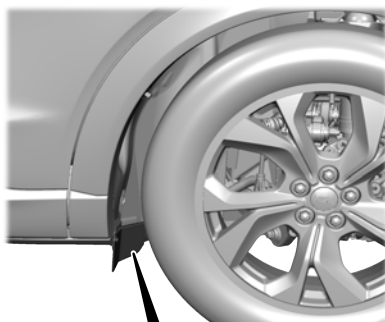
Note: *This feature cannot stop all trailers from swaying.*

Note: *In some cases, if vehicle speed is too high, the system may activate multiple times, gradually reducing vehicle speed.*

Driving Hints

PERFORMANCE VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS - GT

- Verify correct tire pressures.
- Inspect wheels and tires for wear and damage. Replace any damaged wheels or tires.
- Do not operate your vehicle at high speeds with more than two passengers or while carrying cargo.
- It is recommended to cross speed bumps or driveway inclines slowly and at a 45° angle to reduce the risk of vehicle damage.
- Do not drive through car washes with the vehicle heavily loaded with passengers or luggage.
- Use only commercial car washes without mechanical tracks or hand wash to avoid potential damage.
- Put your vehicle in stay in neutral mode when entering an automatic car wash.



PERFORMANCE VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS - VEHICLES WITH: MUSTANG MACH-E RALLY

Follow these recommendations prior to driving your vehicle on unsurfaced roads or trails made from dirt and gravel.

- A protective shield can be purchased to protect the high-voltage battery from gravel spray while rally crossing. Visit the Ford Performance catalog for purchase details.
- Remove the rear tire spats from the vehicle when rally crossing.

DRIVING IN COLD WEATHER

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below approximately -25°C (-13°F).

Driving on Snow and Ice



WARNING: If you are driving in slippery conditions that require tire chains or cables, then it is critical that you drive cautiously. Keep speeds down, allow for longer stopping distances and avoid aggressive steering to reduce the

Driving Hints

chances of a loss of vehicle control which can lead to serious injury or death. If the rear end of your vehicle slides while cornering, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle.

On ice and snow, you should drive more slowly than usual. Your vehicle has a four wheel anti-lock brake system, do not pump the brake pedal. See **Anti-Lock Braking System Limitations** (page 171).

In snow and ice, all-wheel drive vehicles have advantages over two-wheel drive vehicles but can still skid. When driving on snowy or icy roads, should you start to slide, turn the steering wheel in the direction of the slide until you regain control.

On snow and ice, avoid suddenly applying power and avoid quick change of direction. Apply the accelerator slowly and steadily when starting from a stop.

Avoid sudden braking. An all-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in snow and ice. However, an all-wheel drive vehicle will not stop any faster, as braking occurs at all four wheels. Do not become overconfident to road conditions.

DRIVING THROUGH MUD AND WATER

Mud

Be cautious of sudden changes in vehicle speed or direction when you are driving in mud. Even all-wheel drive and four-wheel drive vehicles can lose traction in mud. If your vehicle slides, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle. After driving through mud, clean off residue stuck to rotating driveshafts and tires. Excess residue can cause an imbalance that could damage drive components.

Note: *If your vehicle gets stuck in mud, it could be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.*

Water

If you must drive through water approach it cautiously. See **Driving Through Shallow Water** (page 281).

DRIVING ON HILLY OR SLOPING TERRAIN



WARNING: Extreme care should be used when steering the vehicle in reverse down a slope so as not to cause the vehicle to swerve out of control.

Although natural obstacles could make it necessary to travel diagonally up or down a hill or steep incline, you should try to drive straight up or straight down.

Driving Hints

Note: *Avoid turning on steep slopes or hills. A danger lies in losing traction, slipping sideways and possible vehicle rollover. Whenever driving on a hill, determine beforehand the route you can use. Do not drive over the crest of a hill without seeing what conditions are on the other side. Do not drive in reverse over a hill without the aid of an observer.*

Apply just enough power to the wheels to climb the hill. Too much power causes the tires to slip, spin or lose traction, and you could lose control of your vehicle. When descending a steep hill, do not descend the hill in neutral. Avoid sudden hard braking to keep the front wheels rolling and to maintain your vehicle's steering.

Note: *Your vehicle has anti-lock brakes, apply the brakes steadily. Do not pump the brakes.*

DRIVING IN SAND

When driving over sand, try to keep all four wheels on the most solid area of the trail. Steadily drive through the terrain. Apply the accelerator slowly and avoid excessive wheel slip. Do not drive your vehicle in deep sand for an extended period of time. This could overheat the system. A message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Note: *If your vehicle gets stuck in sand, it could be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator pedal in each gear.*

DRIVING THROUGH SHALLOW WATER



WARNING: Do not attempt to cross a deep or flowing body of water. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Note: *Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.*

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the front rocker area of your vehicle.



When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction could be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Moderately press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

Check the function of the following:

- Horn
- Exterior lights

Driving Hints

ELECTRIC VEHICLE

MAXIMIZING YOUR DRIVING RANGE

Driving in Cold Weather

Keep your vehicle charged during cold weather.

Use the heated seats and steering wheel for comfort along with moderate cabin temperature and fan settings to reduce the energy needed for climate control.

Preconditioning Your Vehicle

You can precondition your vehicle using the departure and comfort settings to heat or cool the cabin and the high voltage battery whether you have your vehicle plugged in or not. However, the range benefit is greater when the vehicle is plugged in. Using energy from the charging source prior to your departure allows the system to manage the battery temperature for the best driving performance and use less energy for heating or cooling the cabin at the start of your drive. This helps maximize your driving range and performance in cold weather. See **Charging Settings** (page 158).

Note: Use the Ford app to precondition your vehicle. Tap the fan icon to turn climate on.

Note: Lower cabin temperature settings in the climate control system results in better trip range in cold weather conditions.

Parking Your Vehicle

At temperatures just above the freezing point and lower, plug your vehicle in when not in use to maintain high voltage battery performance.

When possible park your vehicle under a covered area or in a garage. This helps moderate temperatures which affect the performance of the high voltage battery.

Driving Style

Range is reduced when driving aggressively or at consistently high speeds. Aggressive driving for extended periods could also result in reducing your battery's efficiency and lifespan. Use the trip application on your touchscreen to see your driving scores. See **Trip Data** (page 107).

FLOOR MATS



WARNING: Use a floor mat designed to fit the footwell of your vehicle that does not obstruct the pedal area. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.



WARNING: Secure the floor mat to both retention devices so that it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not place additional floor mats or any other covering on top of the original floor mats. This could result in the floor mat interfering with the operation of the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Driving Hints



WARNING: Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while your vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.



To install floor mats that have eyelets, position the floor mat eyelet over the retention post and press down to lock in position. Repeat for all eyelets on the floor mat.

To remove the floor mats, reverse the installation procedure.

Note: *Regularly check the floor mats to make sure they are secure.*

Crash and Breakdown Information

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS

In the event of damage or fire involving an electric vehicle or hybrid-electric vehicle:

- Assume the high-voltage battery and associated components are energized and fully charged.
- Exposed electrical components, wires and high-voltage batteries present potential high-voltage shock hazards.
- Venting high-voltage battery vapors are potentially toxic and flammable.
- Physical damage to the vehicle or high-voltage battery could result in immediate or delayed release of toxic, flammable gases and fire.

Vehicle information and general safety practices include reviewing the owner's manual and becoming familiar with your vehicle's safety information and recommended safety practices.

Crashes

A crash or impact significant enough to require an emergency response for conventional vehicles would also require the same response for an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle.

If Possible:

1. Move your vehicle to a safe, nearby location and remain on the scene.
2. Roll down the windows before you switch your vehicle off.
3. Place your vehicle in park (P), set the parking brake, switch off the vehicle, activate the hazard flashers and move your key(s) at least 5 m (16 ft) away from the vehicle.

Always:

- Call emergency assistance if needed and advise that an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle is involved.
- Avoid contact with leaking fluids and gases, and remain out of the way of oncoming traffic until emergency responders arrive.
- When emergency responders arrive, tell them that the vehicle involved is an electric vehicle or hybrid-electric vehicle.

Fires

As with any vehicle, call emergency assistance immediately if you see sparks, smoke or flames coming from the vehicle. Remain a safe distance from the vehicle and try to stay clear of the smoke.

1. Exit the vehicle immediately.
2. Advise emergency assistance that an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle is involved.
3. Never attempt to extinguish an electric vehicle fire or move a vehicle that is on fire.
4. As with any vehicle fire, do not inhale smoke, vapors or gas from the vehicle, as they may be hazardous.

Post-Incident

1. Do not store a severely damaged vehicle with a lithium-ion battery inside a structure or within 15 m (49 ft) of any structure or vehicle.
2. Make sure that passenger and luggage compartments remain ventilated.
3. Call emergency assistance if you observe leaking fluids, sparks, smoke or flames, or hear gurgling or bubbling from the high-voltage battery.

Crash and Breakdown Information

SWITCHING THE HAZARD FLASHERS ON AND OFF

The hazard flashers operate with the power on or off. The battery loses charge and may have insufficient power to restart your vehicle.



The hazard flasher button is on the center console. Press the button to switch on the hazard flashers if your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other road users.

When you switch the hazard flashers on, all front and rear turn signals flash.

Press the button again to switch them off.

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

JUMP STARTING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.



WARNING: Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.

Note: This procedure is only for the 12 volt under hood battery.

Note: Your vehicle has a 12 volt battery that is easily accessible under the hood. The 12 volt battery controls the switches and contacts that engage the high voltage battery. Do not jump start the high voltage battery using a standard 12 volt battery. Tow your vehicle to an authorized dealer if the high voltage battery does not accept a regular charge.

Note: Do not attempt to push start your vehicle. You could cause transmission damage.

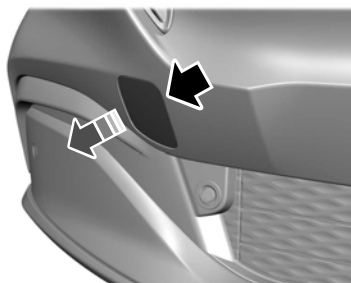
Note: Do not disconnect the 12 volt battery from your vehicle electrical system.

PREPARING THE VEHICLE

Opening the Front Luggage Compartment With No Vehicle Power

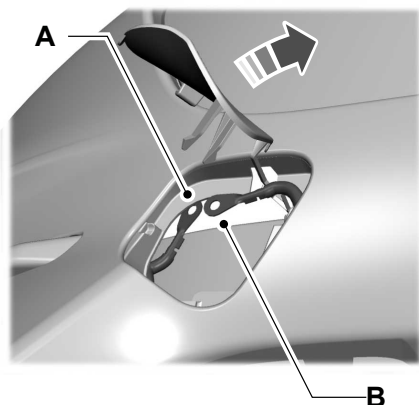
If the vehicle has no power, you will be unable to open the front luggage compartment. To open the front luggage compartment follow the steps below:

1. Use an external power supply such as a 12 volt jump box.



2. Remove the cover at the front of your vehicle below the headlight. Press firmly on the top right of the covers edge, then pull the raised section on the bottom left toward you.

Crash and Breakdown Information



3. Pull both wires out of the opening to reveal both terminals.
4. Connect the external power supply to the terminals

Note: Be sure to match the red positive cable (A) to the red positive terminal and the black negative cable (B) to the black negative terminal.

5. Turn on the external power supply.

Note: Refer to the manufacturer's instructions for external power supply use.

Note: If performed correctly, the front luggage compartment latches immediately release, and you have access to the front luggage compartment.

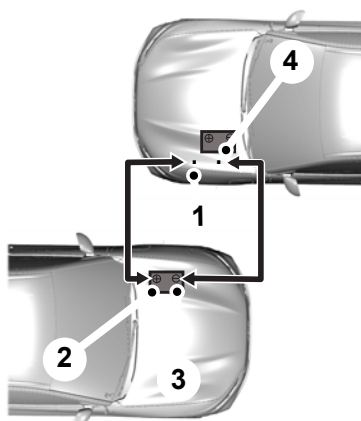
6. Disconnect the external power supply when it is no longer required.
7. To reinstall the cover, reverse the removal procedure.

To Connect the Booster Cables



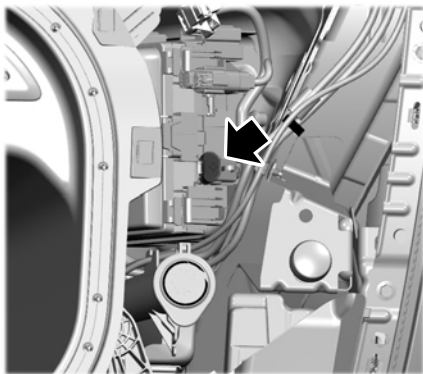
WARNING: Do not connect the negative jumper cable to any other part of your vehicle. Use the ground point.

To access the booster cable connection points, remove the rear and left side front luggage compartment covers. See **Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover** (page 269).

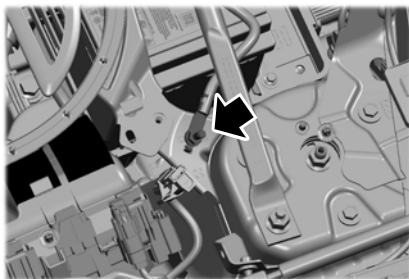


Note: Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts.

Crash and Breakdown Information



1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) jump point of the discharged battery vehicle.
2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) jumper cable to the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.



4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) jumper cable to the negative (-) ground point of the discharged battery vehicle.

5. Unlock the driver door. See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control** (page 56).

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

To Start Your Vehicle

1. Run the engine of the booster vehicle at a moderately high speed.
2. Move the transmission selector lever of the low charge vehicle to park (P).
3. Switch on the ready to drive mode. See **Starting the Vehicle** (page 134).
4. Run both vehicles for a minimum of three minutes before disconnecting the cables.

Note: Do not switch the headlamps on when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could damage the bulbs.

Disconnect the cables in the reverse order.

POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

The system helps draw attention to your vehicle in the event of a serious impact.

HOW DOES THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to turn the hazard flashers on, turn the courtesy lamps on, intermittently sound the horn and unlock all doors in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag or the seatbelt pretensioners.

Crash and Breakdown Information

POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

Depending on applicable laws in the country your vehicle was built for, the horn does not sound in the event of a serious impact.

SWITCHING THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM OFF

Press the hazard flasher switch, the unlock button on the remote control, the panic button on the remote control or cycle the ignition to switch the system off.

Note: The alert turns off when the vehicle battery runs out of charge.

POST-COLLISION BRAKING

How Does Post-Collision Braking Work

In the event of a moderate to severe crash, the braking system reduces the vehicle's speed to prevent or reduce the impact of a potential secondary crash.

Post-Collision Braking Limitations

Post-collision braking does not activate if any of the following occur:

- The anti-lock braking system is damaged during the collision.
- Electronic stability control is disabled.

Overriding Post-Collision Braking

You can override post-collision braking by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.

Post-Collision Braking Indicators



It flashes when a post-collision braking event is occurring.

AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF

WHAT IS AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF

The system deactivates the high voltage system in the event of a moderate or severe crash.

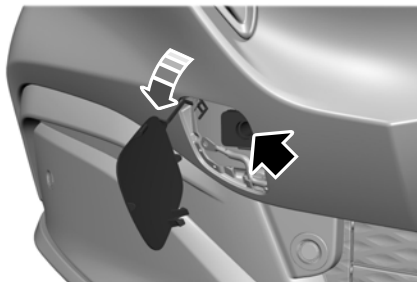
RE-ENABLING YOUR VEHICLE

1. Switch your vehicle off.
2. Attempt to start your vehicle.
3. Switch your vehicle off.
4. Attempt to start your vehicle.

Note: If your vehicle does not start after the third attempt, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

RECOVERY TOWING

ACCESSING THE FRONT TOWING POINT



The front towing point is on the right-hand side of the front bumper. To remove the cover:

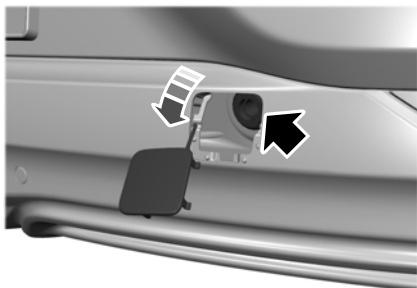
1. Gently press the top of the cover inward.

Crash and Breakdown Information

2. Gently lift the cover upward and then pull it straight out.

Note: The cover has a small lanyard to keep it attached to the bumper.

ACCESSING THE REAR TOWING POINT

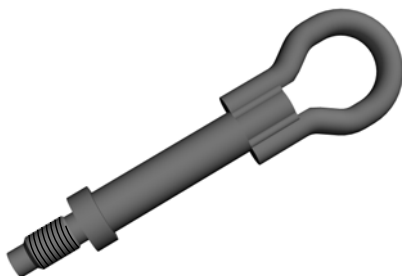


The rear towing point is on the right-hand side of the rear bumper. To remove the cover:

1. Gently press the top of the cover inward.
2. Gently lift the cover upward and then pull it straight out.

Note: The cover has a small lanyard to keep it attached to the bumper.

LOCATING THE TOWING EYE



The towing eye is in the spare wheel storage tray.

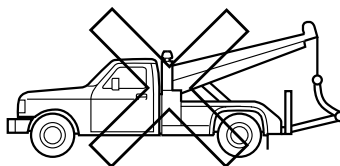
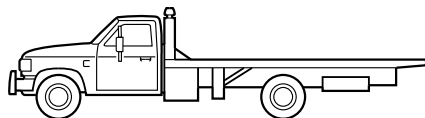
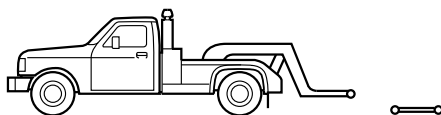
INSTALLING THE TOWING EYE



WARNING: Make sure that the towing eye is fully tightened. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The towing eye has a left-hand thread. Insert the towing eye into the towing point and turn it counterclockwise to install it. Make sure that you fully tighten the recovery hook.

TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE



Crash and Breakdown Information

If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or your roadside assistance service provider.

We recommend the use of a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment to tow your vehicle. Do not tow with a slingbelt. We do not approve a slingbelt towing procedure. Vehicle damage may occur if towed incorrectly, or by any other means.

Your manufacturer produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures.

Towing your vehicle requires that all wheels be off the ground. This prevents damage to the mechanical systems and vehicle.

When using wheel lift equipment to tow the vehicle from the front, place the rear wheels on a tow dolly.

When using wheel lift equipment to tow the vehicle from the rear, place the front wheels on a tow dolly.

Note: *Do not use the battery protection rails for winching your vehicle. This can damage the battery protection rails.*

Towing Your Vehicle

TOWING YOUR VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS

Use the following guidelines when towing your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Note: Make sure you properly secure your vehicle to the tow vehicle.

Note: If you are unsure of the vehicle's configuration, contact an authorized dealer.

EMERGENCY TOWING

If your vehicle becomes inoperable without access to wheel dollies or a vehicle transport trailer, it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground, regardless of the drivetrain, under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward for towing in a forward direction.
- You switch Emergency Tow on.
- Maximum speed is 50 km/h (30 mph).
- Maximum distance is 80 km (50 mi).

Switching Emergency Tow On

1. Properly secure your vehicle to the tow vehicle.
2. Switch your vehicle on to accessory mode. See **Starting and Powering Off** (page 134).
3. Apply the parking brake.
4.  Press the button on the touchscreen.
5. Press **Vehicle**.
6. Press and hold Emergency Tow until a confirmation message appears on the touchscreen.
7. Press and hold the brake pedal.
8. Shift into neutral (N).

Note: A confirmation message appears in the instrument cluster display.

9. Release the parking brake.
10. Switch your vehicle off.

Switching Emergency Tow Off

1. Switch your vehicle on.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Shift into park (P). A message displays in the instrument cluster display and park (P) displays in the instrument cluster display and on the shifter.

Fuses

FUSE PRECAUTIONS

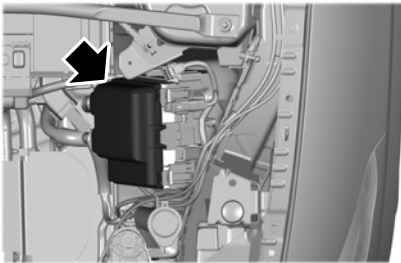
⚠ WARNING: Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.

⚠ WARNING: To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

⚠ WARNING: Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX

LOCATING THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX

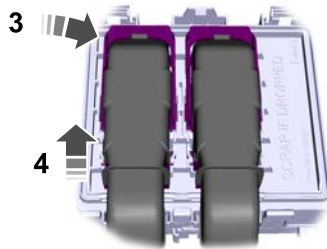


ACCESSING THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX

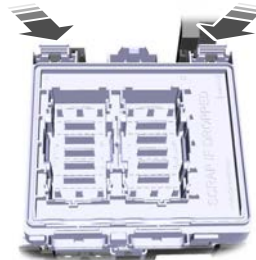
1. Remove the luggage compartment cover. See **Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover** (page 269).



2. Pull the latch toward you and remove the top cover.



3. Pull the connector lever upward.
4. Pull the connector upward to remove it.

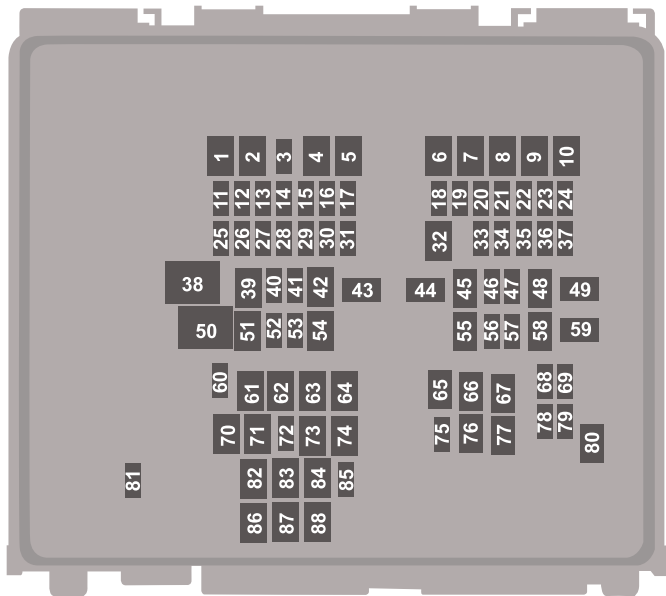


5. Pull both latches toward you and remove the fuse box.

Fuses

6. Turn the fuse box over and open the lid.

IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX



Item	Rating	Protected Component
1	—	Not used.
2	40 A	Left-hand windshield defroster.
3	15 A	Not used (spare).
4	40 A	Right-hand windshield defroster.
5	—	Not used.
6	25 A	Transmission oil pump.
7	—	Not used.

Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
8	—	Not used.
9	40 A	Trailer tow module (after-market).
10	—	Not used.
11	15 A	Powertrain control module.
12	15 A	Heat pump.
13	15 A	Active grille shutter. A/C compressor. Auxiliary PTC heater.
14	15 A	Bulkhead connector secondary drive unit (GT).
15	5 A	Battery electronic control module.
16	10 A	Battery charge control module.
17	20 A	Steering column lock.
18	10 A	Powertrain control module.
19	10 A	Brake system control module.
20	5 A	Charge port status indicator.
21	5 A	Frunk actuator relay coil.
22	20 A	Not used (spare).
23	20 A	Rear driver side electronic door.
24	—	Not used.
25	25 A	Right-hand enhanced head- lamps.
26	10 A	Headlamp control module.
27	5 A	Keep alive power.
28	5 A	Frunk actuator relay coil.
29	5 A	DC/DC converter.

Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
30	—	Not used.
31	5 A	Electronic power assist steering.
32	30 A	Body control module.
33	20 A	Advanced driver assistance system.
34	—	Not used.
35	15 A	Heated steering wheel.
36	10 A	Primary hybrid powertrain control module. Auxiliary power distribution box. Secondary hybrid powertrain control module.
37	20 A	Horn.
38	40 A	Blower motor.
39	—	Not used.
40	—	Not used.
41	20 A	Amplifier.
42	30 A	Driver power seat.
43	40 A	Anti-lock brake system valves.
44	60 A	Auxiliary power distribution box.
45	30 A	Passenger power seat.
46	—	Not used.
47	—	Not used.
48	—	Not used.
49	60 A	Anti-lock brake system pump.
50	60 A	Cooling fan.

Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
51	—	Not used.
52	5 A	USB charge - rear console.
53	10 A	Center console USB.
54	—	Not used.
55	30 A	Heated seats.
56	20 A	Frunk module.
57	10 A	Data link connector.
58	—	Not used.
59	40 A	Body control module.
60	—	Not used.
61	20 A	Auxiliary power point.
62	—	Not used.
63	—	Not used.
64	30 A	Power liftgate.
65	30 A	Vehicle dynamics module.
66	—	Not used.
67	—	Not used.
68	20 A	Front driver side electronic door.
69	20 A	Rear passenger side electronic door.
70	—	Not used.
71	20 A	Auxiliary power point.
72	20 A	Rear window wiper.
73	—	Not used.
74	30 A	Windshield wiper motor.
75	—	Not used.
76	30 A	Heated rear window.

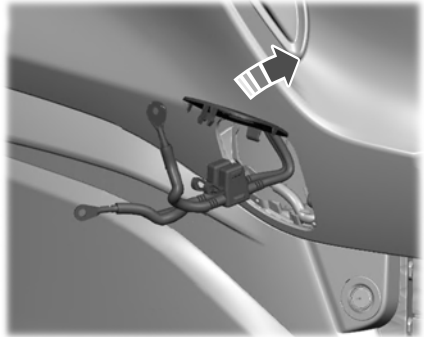
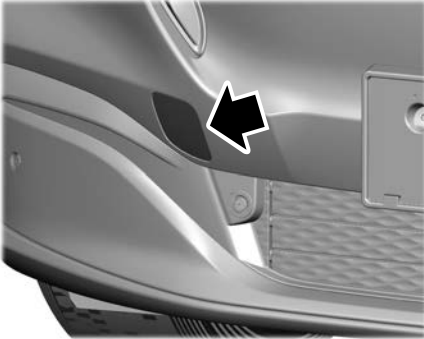
Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
77	—	Not used.
78	25 A	Left-hand enhanced head-lamps.
79	20 A	Front passenger side electronic door.
80	—	Not used.
81	10 A	Rear window washer pump.
82	—	Not used.
83	—	Not used.
84	40 A	Trailer tow lighting module (aftermarket).
85	5 A	Rain sensor.
86	—	Not used.
87	—	Not used.
88	—	Not used.

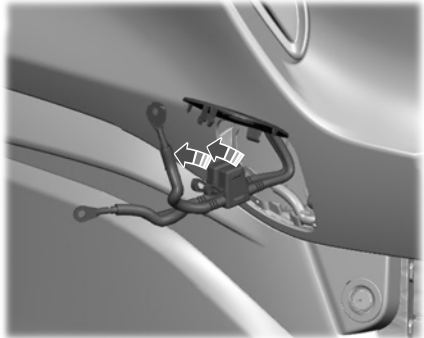
Fuses

BATTERY FUSE BOX

LOCATING THE BATTERY FUSE BOX

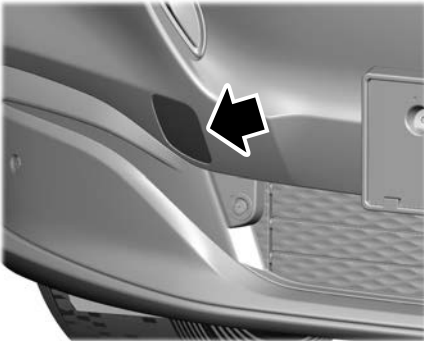


2. Pull both wires out of the opening to reveal the inline fuses.



3. Remove the caps that cover the inline fuses.

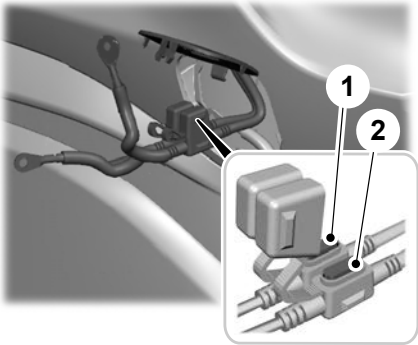
ACCESSING THE BATTERY FUSE BOX



1. Press the top right-hand side of the cover, then pull the raised section on the bottom left-hand side toward you.

Fuses

IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE BATTERY FUSE BOX



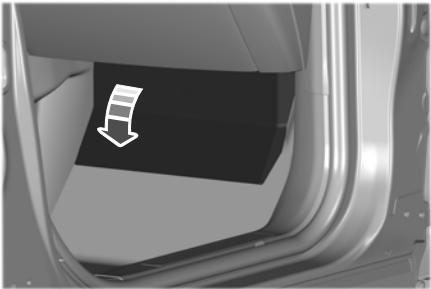
Item	Rating	Protected Component
1	20 A	Frunk.
2	20 A	Frunk.

BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX

LOCATING THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX

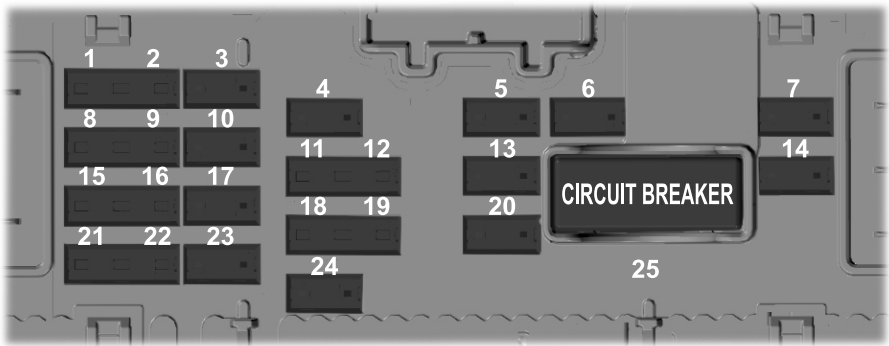


ACCESSING THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX



Fuses

IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX



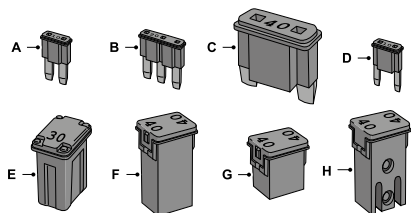
Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	5 A	Restraints control module.
2	5 A	Not used.
3	10 A	Not used.
4	10 A	Multi-function display.
5	20 A	Not used.
6	10 A	Not used.
7	30 A	Passenger door module.
8	5 A	Not used.
9	5 A	Auto-dimming exterior mirror. Passenger airbag deactivation indicator.
10	10 A	Driver lockout module alcohol tester (aftermarket).
11	5 A	Power liftgate. Hands-free liftgate actuation module.
12	5 A	Anti-theft alarm. Keyless keypad switch. Front driver door activation switch.
13	15 A	Not used.

Fuses

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
14	30 A	Driver door module.
15	15 A	Driver lockout module (aftermarket).
16	15 A	Active suspension (GT).
17	15 A	SYNC.
18	7.5 A	Wireless accessory charging module. Driver status monitor.
19	7.5 A	Headlamp switch pack. Bluetooth low energy module (only left hand drive). Telematics control unit module. Push button start.
20	10 A	Not used (spare).
21	7.5 A	Gateway module. Climate control.
22	7.5 A	Instrument cluster. Steering column control module.
23	20 A	Audio unit.
24	20 A	Battery backup sounder (only right hand drive).
25	30 A Circuit Breaker	Not used.

Fuses

IDENTIFYING FUSE TYPES



- A Micro 2.
- B Micro 3.
- C Maxi.
- D Mini.
- E M Case.
- F J Case.
- G J Case Low Profile.
- H Slotted M Case.

FUSES – TROUBLESHOOTING

FUSES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

When do I need to check a fuse?

- If electrical components in the vehicle are not working.

When do I need to replace a fuse?

- If a fuse has blown.

How do I identify a blown fuse?

- You can identify a blown fuse by a broken wire within the fuse.

Maintenance

MAINTENANCE PRECAUTIONS

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

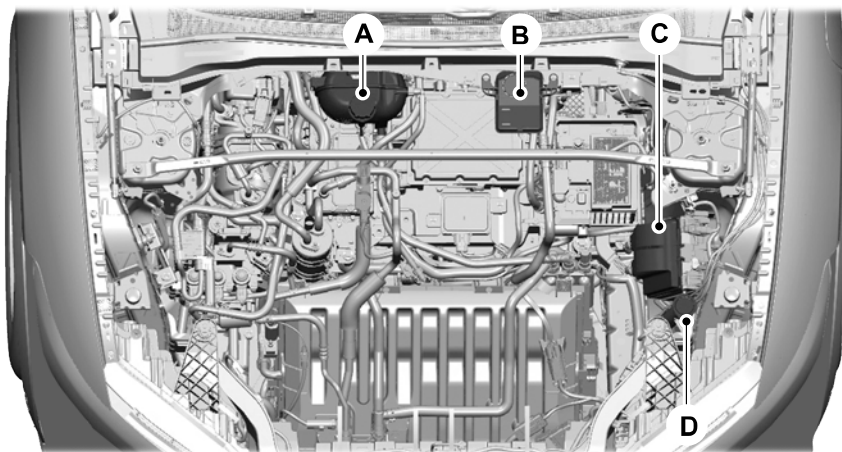
If your vehicle requires professional service, an authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your warranty information to find out which parts and services are covered.

Use only recommended fluids and service parts conforming to specifications.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

See **Opening the Frunk from Inside Your Vehicle** (page 267).

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW



- A Coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 304).
- B Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 171).
- C Under hood fuse box. See **Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 292).
- D Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 84).

Maintenance

Note: Some of these components are underneath the luggage compartment cover and cannot be seen unless you remove the cover. See **Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover** (page 269).

COOLANT

CHECKING THE COOLANT LEVEL



WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the vehicle is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Note: Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark.

Your vehicle has combined cooling loops for the battery and motor. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 303). Remove the luggage compartment cover to access the reservoir. See **Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover** (page 269).

When the electric motor is cold, check the concentration and level of the coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.

Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -34--37°C (-29--35°F). Check the coolant concentration using a refractometer. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentration.

ADDING COOLANT



WARNING: Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.



WARNING: Do not add coolant further than the **MAX** mark.

It is very important to use prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification in order to avoid plugging the small passageways in the electric motor cooling system. See **Cooling System Capacity and Specification** (page 306).

Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of coolants or using an incorrect coolant may harm the electric motor or cooling system components and may cause damage that the vehicle warranty may not cover.

Note: Automotive fluids are not interchangeable.

Note: Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the electric motor cooling or heating systems.

Note: If prediluted coolant is not available, use the approved concentrated coolant diluting it to 50/50 with distilled or deionized water. See **Cooling System Capacity and Specification** (page 306). Using water that has not been deionized could contribute to deposit formation, corrosion and plugging of the small cooling system passageways.

Note: Coolants marketed for all makes and models might not meet our specifications and could cause damage to the cooling system. Resulting component damage could void the vehicle warranty.

Maintenance

If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure escapes as you unscrew the cap.
2. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification. See **Cooling System Capacity and Specification** (page 306).
3. Add enough prediluted coolant to reach the correct level.
4. Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn the cap clockwise until it contacts the hard stop.
5. Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted coolant to bring the coolant level to the correct level.

If you have to add more than 1 L (1.1 qt) of coolant per month, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Operating your vehicle with a low level of coolant can result in overheating and possible electric motor damage.

In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location. In this instance, have qualified personnel do the following as soon as possible:

1. Drain the cooling system.
2. Chemically clean the coolant system.
3. Refill with coolant.

Water alone, without coolant, can cause damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute:

- Alcohol.
- Methanol.

- Brine.
- Any coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze.

Alcohol and other liquids can cause damage from overheating or freezing.

Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the coolant.

Recycled Coolant

We do not recommend the use of recycled coolant, as an approved recycling process is not yet available.

Dispose of used coolant in an appropriate manner. Follow your community's regulations and standards for recycling and disposing of automotive fluids.

Severe Climates

If you drive in extremely cold climates:

- It may be necessary to increase the coolant concentration above 50%.
- A coolant concentration of 60% provides improved freeze point protection.
- Coolant concentrations above 60% decrease the overheat protection characteristics of the coolant and may cause damage to the electric motor.

If you drive in extremely hot climates:

- You can decrease the coolant concentration to 40%.
- A coolant concentration of 40% provides improved overheat protection.
- Coolant concentrations below 40% decrease the overheat and corrosion protection characteristics of the coolant and may cause damage to the electric motor.

Maintenance

CHANGING THE COOLANT

For coolant change, see your authorized dealer.

Changing the coolant is necessary at specific mileage intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.

COOLING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Use coolant that meets the defined specification.

If you do not use coolant that meets the defined specification, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.
- Reduced range.

Single Cooling Loop

Variant	Quantity
Standard Range Rear-Wheel drive.	13.1 L (13.84 qt)
Extended Range Rear-Wheel drive.	12 L (12.68 qt)
Standard Range All-Wheel drive.	14 L (14.79 qt)
Extended Range All-Wheel drive.	12.8 L (13.53 qt)
GT All-Wheel drive.	14.2 L (15.00 qt)

Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze PU7J-M97B57-EA/EB/FA	WSS-M97B57-A2

12V BATTERY

CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY

If the 12 volt battery needs servicing, see your authorized dealer.

CHARGING THE 12V BATTERY

Your vehicle has a high voltage to low voltage energy transfer feature that keeps the 12-volt battery charged by the high voltage battery. If the 12-volt battery level is low, the high voltage battery transfers energy to the 12-volt battery when the vehicle is off.

Maintenance

12-volt battery depletion can still occur if the high voltage battery state of charge is low. See **Preserving Your High Voltage Battery** (page 137).

Always take care not to deep discharge the 12-volt battery as it may cause premature wear.

12V BATTERY – TROUBLESHOOTING

12V BATTERY – WARNING LAMPS



If it illuminates when the green ready to drive indicator is activated, this indicates your vehicle requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

12V BATTERY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
12V battery malfunction Service soon	Your vehicle has a 12 volt battery problem. We recommend having the battery system checked by an authorized EV dealer.
Electric range reduced due to park/hazard lamps on while vehicle off	The electric vehicle range is reduced due to the park and/or hazard lamps on while your vehicle was off.
Electrical system drain Service required	Your vehicle has an electrical drain within the vehicle. Please check for any after-market devices that could be draining the battery. If none are found, please have your vehicle serviced by an authorized EV dealer.

ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS

Vertical and Horizontal Aim Adjustment

Vertical and horizontal aim is adjustable. We recommend that you see an authorized dealer.

EXTERIOR BULBS

EXTERIOR BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Your vehicle has LED lamps. These are not serviceable items. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

Maintenance

INTERIOR BULBS

INTERIOR BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Your vehicle has LED lamps. These are not serviceable items. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

Vehicle Specifications

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - EXCLUDING: GT

Dimension Description	Specification
Overall length including the license plate bracket.	4,728 mm (186.1 in)
Overall width including the exterior mirrors.	2,097 mm (82.6 in)
Overall height.	1,623 mm (63.9 in)
Wheelbase.	2,984 mm (117.5 in)

Vehicle Specifications

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - GT

Dimension Description	Specification
Overall length including the license plate bracket.	4,743 mm (186.7 in)
Overall width including the exterior mirrors.	2,097 mm (82.6 in)
Overall height.	1,609 mm (63.3 in)
Wheelbase.	2,985 mm (117.5 in)

Vehicle Specifications

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - VEHICLES WITH: MUSTANG MACH-E RALLY

Dimension Description	Specification
Overall length including the license plate bracket.	4,749 mm (187.0 in)
Overall width including the exterior mirrors.	2,097 mm (82.6 in)
Overall height.	1,649 mm (64.9 in)
Wheelbase.	2,983 mm (117.4 in)

Vehicle Specifications

AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

**WARNING:** The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Note: Contains fluorinated greenhouse gas R1234YF.

Use refrigerant and oil that meets the defined specifications.

If you do not use refrigerant and oil that meets the defined specifications, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.
- Reduced range.

Variant	Global Warming Potential	CO2 Equivalent
All.	0.501	0.00056t

Capacities

Variant	Refrigerant	Refrigerant Oil
All.	1.12 kg (40 oz)	250 ml (8.5 fl oz)

Materials

Name	Specification
Refrigerant - R-1234yf	WSS-M17B21-A
A/C Compressor Oil DE-BEV DU7J-M2C31-BA	WSS-M2C31-B2

Vehicle Care

GENERAL INFORMATION

Your dealer has many quality products available to clean your vehicle and protect its finishes.

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR PRECAUTIONS

Immediately remove additive residuals, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may damage your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time.

Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.

Note: *If you intend to park your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning, drive it for few minutes before parking. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.*

CLEANING HEADLAMPS AND REAR LAMPS

We recommend that you only use cold or lukewarm water containing car shampoo to clean the headlamps and the rear lamps.

Do not scrape the lamps.

Do not wipe lamps when they are dry.

CLEANING WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner.

Note: *When cleaning the interior of the windshield, avoid getting any glass cleaner on the instrument panel or door panels. Wipe any glass cleaner off these surfaces immediately.*

- Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

Note: *Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

CLEANING CHROME, ALUMINIUM OR STAINLESS STEEL

We recommend that you only use a car shampoo, a soft cloth and water on bumpers and other chrome, aluminium or stainless steel parts.

Note: *For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.*

Note: *Rinse the area well after cleaning.*

Note: *Do not use abrasive materials, for example steel wool or plastic pads, as they can scratch these surfaces.*

Note: *Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels or wheel covers.*

CLEANING WHEELS

Only use a recommended wheel and tire cleaner to clean the wheels. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

1. Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust.
2. Rinse well after cleaning.

Note: *Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.*

Vehicle Care

If you intend to park your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels, drive it for few minutes before parking. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

Do not clean the wheels when they are hot.

Note: *Some car washes could damage wheel rims and covers.*

Note: *Using non-recommended cleaners, harsh cleaning products, chrome wheel cleaners or abrasive materials could damage wheel rims and covers.*

CLEANING STRIPES OR GRAPHICS

It is recommended to wash your vehicle by hand however, pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

- Use a spray with a minimum of 40° wide spray angle pattern.
- Keep the nozzle 30 cm (12 in) and at a 90° angle to your vehicle.
- Do not use water pressure higher than 6,895 kPa (1,000 psi).
- Do not use water hotter than 23°C (73°F).

Note: *Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away.*

CLEANING CAMERA LENSES AND SENSORS

We recommend that you only use lukewarm or cold water and a soft cloth to clean the camera lens and sensors.

Note: *Do not pressure wash camera lens and sensors.*

CLEANING THE UNDERBODY

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

Rear suspension components may require regular cleaning with a power washer or a thorough rinse with a strong stream of water if the vehicle is operated in dusty or muddy environments. Rear leaf springs or other suspension components may emit squeaking or popping noises while operating the vehicle if particles, such as dirt, rocks, or other debris, are present in the components.

CLEANING THE INTERIOR

CLEANING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL



WARNING: Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

We recommend that you only clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a damp soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Note: *Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect you from undesirable windshield reflection.*

Vehicle Care

CLEANING PLASTIC

We recommend that you only use a mild soap and water solution on a soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

CLEANING DISPLAYS AND SCREENS

We recommend that you only use a microfiber cloth in a circular motion to clean off the fingerprint or dust.

Note: Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the touchscreen.

Note: Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the touchscreen.

CLEANING FABRIC



WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean fabric in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

CLEANING VINYL



WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean vinyl surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

CLEANING CARPETS AND FLOOR MATS

We recommend that you only clean your carpets in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

We recommend that you only clean your floor mats in the following way:

Vehicle Care

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wash rubber floor mats using mild soap and lukewarm or cold water.
3. Completely dry the floor mat before placing them back in your vehicle.

CLEANING SEATBELTS



WARNING: Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

1. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

CLEANING STORAGE COMPARTMENTS

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

Authorized dealers have touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color. Your vehicle color code is printed on a sticker on the front, left-hand side door jamb. Take the color code to an authorized dealer to make sure you get the correct color.

Before repairing minor paint damage, use a cleaner such as Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover to remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout.

Make sure to read the instructions before using cleaning products.

WAXING YOUR VEHICLE

Wax the high-gloss painted surface of your prewashed vehicle once or twice a year.

We recommend that you only use an approved quality wax that does not contain abrasives. Follow the manufacturer's instructions to apply and remove the wax. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

When washing and waxing, park your vehicle in a shaded area out of direct sunlight.

Note: Avoid waxing unpainted or low-gloss black colored parts, they discolor over time.

Body Styling Kits

BODY STYLING KIT PRECAUTIONS

The distance between the underside of your vehicle and the ground is less than that of other models. Drive with extreme care to avoid damage to your vehicle.

Storing Your Vehicle

PREPARING YOUR VEHICLE FOR STORAGE

If you plan on storing your vehicle for 30 days or more, read the following maintenance recommendations to make sure your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

We engineer and test all vehicles and their components for reliable, regular driving. Under various conditions, long-term storage may lead to degraded performance or failure unless you use specific precautions to preserve vehicle components.

General

- Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place.
- Protect from sunlight, if possible.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and damage.

Body

- Wash your vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear-wheel housing and the underside of front fenders.
- Periodically wash your vehicle if it is stored in exposed locations.
- Touch-up exposed or primed metal to prevent rust.
- Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration. Re-wax as necessary when you wash your vehicle.
- Lubricate all hood, door and luggage compartment hinges and latches with a light grade oil.
- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

Cooling system

- Protect against freezing temperatures.
- When removing your vehicle from storage, check coolant fluid level. Confirm that there are no cooling system leaks and that fluid is at the recommended level.

Battery Systems

We recommend the following actions for your vehicle:

- When storing your vehicle for greater than 30 days the state of charge should be approximately 50%.

Brakes

- Make sure the brakes and parking brake release fully.

Note: *If you intend on parking your vehicle for an extended period after washing your vehicle or cleaning the wheels, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so to reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.*

Tires

- Maintain recommended air pressure.

Miscellaneous

- Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under your vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust.
- Move vehicles at least 7.5 m (25 ft) every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.

Storing Your Vehicle

REMOVING YOUR VEHICLE FROM STORAGE

When your vehicle is ready to come out of storage, do the following:

- Wash your vehicle to remove any dirt or grease film build-up on window surfaces.
- Check windshield wipers for any deterioration.
- Check tire pressures and set tire inflation per the Tire Label.
- Check brake pedal operation. Drive your vehicle 4.5 m (15 ft) back and forth to remove rust build-up.
- Check coolant levels to make sure there are no leaks, and fluids are at recommended levels.
- If you removed the 12 volt battery, clean the 12 volt battery cable ends and check for damage.

Contact an authorized dealer if you have any concerns or issues.

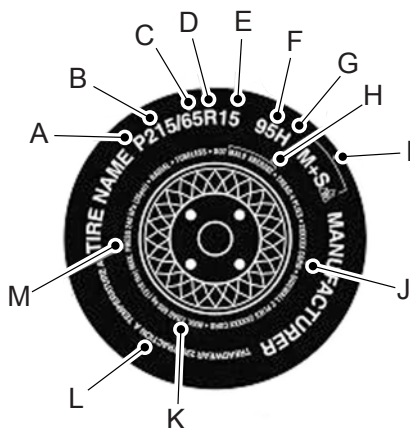
Wheel and Tire Information

LOCATING THE TIRE LABEL

The tire label is on the driver side B-pillar or the edge of the driver door. It contains information on the recommended front and rear tire inflation pressures.

INFORMATION ON THE TIRE SIDEWALL

Information on P Type Tires



P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)

A. **P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that may be used for service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks. **Note:** If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either the European Tire and Rim Technical Organization or the Japan Tire Manufacturing Association.

B. **215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. **65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width.

D. **R:** Indicates a radial type tire.

E. **15:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

F. **95:** Indicates the tire's load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your owner's manual. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

Note: You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

G. **H:** Indicates the tire's speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 130 km/h (81 mph) to 300 km/h (186 mph). These ratings are listed in the following chart.

Note: You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

Wheel and Tire Information

Letter rating	Speed rating
M	130 km/h (81 mph)
N	140 km/h (87 mph)
Q	160 km/h (99 mph)
R	170 km/h (106 mph)
S	180 km/h (112 mph)
T	190 km/h (118 mph)
U	200 km/h (124 mph)
H	210 km/h (130 mph)
V	240 km/h (149 mph)
W	270 km/h (168 mph)
Y	300 km/h (186 mph)

Note: For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.

H. Tire Identification Number (TIN): A code which identifies manufacturing location and other information about the tire. It may include the letters "DOT" and be referred to as a DOT code. The last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The letters and numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

I. M+S or M/S: Mud and Snow, or

AT: All Terrain, or

AS: All Season.

J. Tire Ply Composition and Material

Used: Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

K. Maximum Load: Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. See the Tire Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

L. Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades:

***Treadwear** The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

***Traction:** The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

***Temperature:** The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

M. Maximum Inflation Pressure:

Indicates the tire manufacturers' maximum permissible pressure or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the vehicle manufacturer's

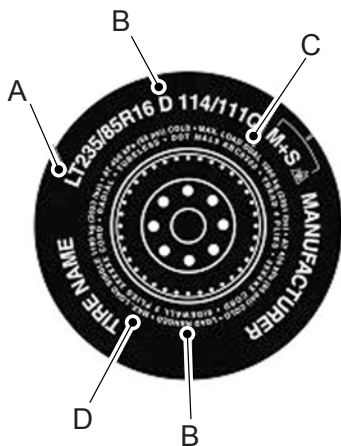
Wheel and Tire Information

recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Tire Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position). The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load or radial tubeless.

Additional Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall for LT Type Tires

Note: *Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*



LT type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below.

A. **LT:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for service on light trucks.

B. Load Range and Load Inflation

Limits: Indicates the tire's load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

C. **Maximum Load Dual lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual, defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

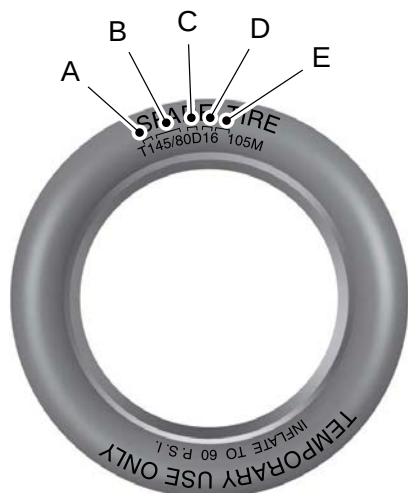
D. **Maximum Load Single lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single, defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.

Information on T Type Tires

T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size.

Note: *The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example. Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*

Wheel and Tire Information



T type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below:

A. **T:** Indicates a type of tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for temporary service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks.

B. **145:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. **80:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.

D. **D:** Indicates a diagonal type tire.

R: Indicates a radial type tire.

E. **16:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

GLOSSARY OF TIRE TERMINOLOGY

***Tire label:** A label showing the original equipment tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.

***Tire Identification Number (TIN):** A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.

***Inflation pressure:** A measure of the amount of air in a tire.

***Standard load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at set pressure. For example: For P-metric tires 2.4 bar (35 psi) and for Metric tires 2.5 bar (36 psi). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

***Extra load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 2.9 bar (42 psi). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

***kPa:** Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.

***PSI:** Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.

***Cold tire pressure:** The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1.6 km (1 mi).

Wheel and Tire Information

***Recommended inflation pressure:** The cold inflation pressure found on the Tire Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position).

***B-pillar:** The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.

***Bead area of the tire:** Area of the tire next to the rim.

***Sidewall of the tire:** Area between the bead area and the tread.

***Tread area of the tire:** Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.

***Rim:** The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

TIRE REPLACEMENT REQUIREMENTS

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.



WARNING: Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, as those originally provided for your vehicle. The required tire and wheel sizes, along with the minimum required Load and Speed Index, can be found on the Tire Label on the driver side door frame or the edge of the driver door. If this information is not found in those locations, or for additional options, contact your authorized dealer. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended, could affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



WARNING: To reduce the risk of serious injury, when mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again.



WARNING: For a mounting pressure more than 1.38 bar (20 psi) greater than the maximum pressure, a Ford dealer or other tire service professional should do the mounting.



WARNING: Always inflate steel carcass tires with a remote air fill with the person inflating standing at a minimum of 3.66 m (12 ft) away from the wheel and tire assembly.



WARNING: Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.



WARNING: When inflating the tire for mounting pressures up to 1.38 bar (20 psi) greater than the maximum pressure on the tire sidewall, the following precautions must be taken to protect the person mounting the tire:

- Make sure that you have the correct tire and wheel size.
- Lubricate the tire bead and wheel bead seat area again.
- Stand at a minimum of 3.66 m (12 ft) away from the wheel and tire assembly.
- Use both eye and ear protection.

Important: Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle.

Wheel and Tire Information

It is recommended that the two front tires or two rear tires generally be replaced as a pair if the worn tires still have usable depth.

To avoid potential All-Wheel Drive (AWD) malfunction or (AWD) system damage, it is recommended to replace all four tires rather than mixing significantly worn tires with new tires.

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels (originally installed on your vehicle) are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

The use of wheels or tires not recommended may affect the operation of your tire pressure monitoring system.

If the tire pressure monitoring system indicator is flashing, your system is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your tire pressure monitoring system, or some component of the system may be damaged.

Age



WARNING: Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure) the tires experience throughout their lives.

In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.

You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

USING SUMMER TIRES

Summer tires provide superior performance on wet and dry roads. Summer tires do not have the Mud and Snow (M+S or M/S) tire traction rating on the tire side wall. Since summer tires do not have the same traction performance as All-season or Snow tires, we do not recommend using summer tires when temperatures drop to about 7°C (45°F) or below, depending on tire wear and environmental conditions, or in snow and ice conditions. Like any tire, summer tire performance is affected by tire wear and environmental conditions. If you must drive in those conditions, we recommend using Mud and Snow (M+S, M/S), All-season or Snow tires.

Always store your summer tires indoors at temperatures above -7°C (19°F). The rubber compounds used in these tires lose flexibility and may develop surface cracks in the tread area at temperatures below -7°C (19°F). If the tires have been subjected to -7°C (19°F) or less, warm them in a heated space to at least 5°C (41°F) for at least 24 hours before installing them on a vehicle, or moving the vehicle with the tires installed, or checking tire inflation. Always inspect the tires after storage periods and before use.

Wheel and Tire Information

USING WINTER TIRES



We recommend that you use winter or all-season tires carrying this symbol when the temperature is 7°C (45°F) or lower, or in snow and ice conditions.

When using winter tires, install them on all wheels and inflate them to the recommended tire pressures listed on the tire label. See **Locating the Tire label** (page 320).

WARNING: Wheels and tires must be the same size, load index and speed rating as those originally fitted on the vehicle. Use of any other tire or wheel can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels can cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure. Follow the recommended tire inflation pressures found on the Safety Compliance Certification label, or the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door. Failure to follow this instruction could result in loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, or personal injury or death.

USING SNOW CHAINS

WARNING: Do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.

WARNING: Only fit snow chains to specified tires.

WARNING: If your vehicle is fitted with wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.

WARNING: Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the electronic stability control system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

WARNING: Wheels and tires must be the same size, load index and speed rating as those originally fitted on the vehicle. Use of any other tire or wheel can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels can cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure. Follow the recommended tire inflation

Wheel and Tire Information

pressures found on the Safety Compliance Certification label, or the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door. Failure to follow this instruction could result in loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, or personal injury or death.

The tires on your vehicle could have all-weather treads to provide traction in rain and snow. In some climates you need to use snow tires and chains on your vehicle in emergency situations or if required by law.

Note: *The suspension insulation and bumpers help prevent vehicle damage. Do not remove these components from your vehicle when using snow tires and chains.*

Note: *Driving too fast for road conditions creates the possibility of loss of vehicle control. Driving at very high speeds for extended periods of time may result in damage to vehicle components.*

Note: *Snow chains could damage aluminum wheels.*

Follow these guidelines when using snow tires and chains:

- Use ultra low profile snow chains or cables, 10 mm or less in dimension as measured on the sidewall of your tire, only with 225/55R19 all season tires.
- Do not use snow chains or cables with 245/45R20.
- Not all S-class snow chains or cables meet the same restrictions. Chains or cables of this size restriction include a tensioning device.
- Purchase snow chains or cables from a manufacturer that clearly labels body to tire dimension restrictions.
- Install snow chains or cables in pairs on the rear tires only.

- When driving with snow chains or cables do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph) or the maximum speed recommended by the chain or cable manufacturer, whichever is less.
- Install snow chains or cables securely, verifying that the snow chains or cables do not touch any wiring or brake lines.
- Drive cautiously. If you hear the snow chains or cables rub or bang against the vehicle, stop and retighten them. If this does not work, remove the snow chains or cables to prevent vehicle damage.
- Remove the snow chains or cables when they are no longer needed. Do not use snow chains or cables on dry roads.

If you have any questions regarding snow chains or cables, contact your authorized dealer.

Tire Care

CHECKING THE TIRE PRESSURES

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Every day before you drive, check your tires.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge. Inflate all tires to the recommended inflation pressure. See **Inflating the Tires** (page 328).

INFLATING THE TIRES



WARNING: Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!



WARNING: Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.

Inflate your tires to the recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. You can find the tire label with the recommended tire inflation pressure next to the tire size on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

The recommended tire inflation pressure is also found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label, affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch on the B-pillar, or on the edge of the driver door.

Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

Checking Pressure when tires are hot:

If pressures are checked after tires have been driven for more than three minutes or more than 1 mile, (2 km) the tires become hot and the pressures will increase by approximately 4 psi (27.6 kPa). Therefore when the tire pressure is adjusted under these conditions, it should be increased to a gauge reading of 4 psi (27.6 kPa) greater than the recommended cold inflation pressure.

After inflating the tires while hot, make sure to recheck tire pressure later once the tires are cold.

Tire Care

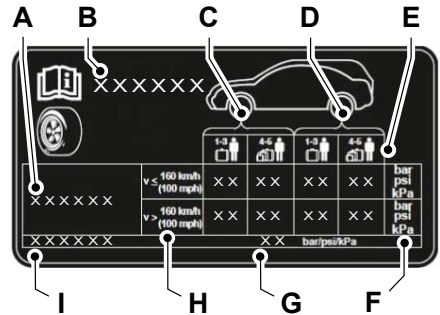
For Example Only

Gauge reading of hot tire	33 psi (230 kPa)
If recommended, cold inflation pressure is	32 psi (220 kPa)
The hot tire pressure is only 1 psi (10 kPa) greater than the recommended cold inflation pressure. Therefore, add 3 psi (20 kPa) more to increase the hot pressure to 4 psi (30 kPa) over the recommended cold inflation pressure.	
New hot pressure	36 psi (250 kPa)

TIRE PRESSURE SPECIFICATIONS

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.



E254054

- A Tire size.
- B Vehicle model.
- C Front tire pressure.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Vehicle load.
- F Measure unit.
- G Spare wheel tire pressure.
- H Intended constant vehicle speed.
- I Spare wheel tire size.

Tire size	Normal load		Full load or trailer tow up to 60 mph/100 km/h	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
225/55 R19 ¹	2.4 bar (35 psi)	2.8 bar (41 psi)	2.5 bar (36 psi)	3.4 bar (49 psi)
245/45 R20	2.7 bar (39 psi)	2.6 bar (38 psi)	2.8 bar (41 psi)	3.4 bar (49 psi)
235/55 R19	2.6 bar (38 psi)	2.6 bar (38 psi)	2.6 bar (38 psi)	3.4 bar (49 psi)

¹ Only fit snow chains to specified tires.

TIRE ROTATION



WARNING: If the tire label shows different tire pressures for the front and rear tires and the vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system, then you need to update the settings for the system sensors. Always perform the system reset procedure after tire rotation. If you do not reset the system, it may not provide a low tire pressure warning when necessary.

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

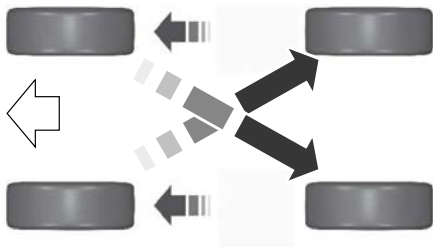
Note: *If your tires show any uneven wear have the alignment checked by an authorized dealer before rotating tires.*

Note: *If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.*

Note: *After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.*

Tire Rotation Diagram

Follow the diagram indicating the correct tire locations for rotating the tires.



Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

WHAT IS THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

The kit consists of an air compressor to re-inflate the tire and a canister of sealing compound that effectively seals most punctures. This kit provides a temporary tire repair allowing you to drive your vehicle up to 200 km (120 mi) at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) to reach a tire service location.

Note: *The temporary mobility kit contains enough sealant compound in the canister for one tire repair only. See an authorized dealer for replacement sealant canisters.*

TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Depending on the type and extent of tire damage, some tires can only be partially sealed or not sealed at all. Loss of tire pressure can affect vehicle handling, leading to loss of vehicle control.



WARNING: Do not use the kit on a previously damaged tire, for example when it has been driven under inflated. This could cause loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

Do not attempt to repair punctures larger than 6 mm (0.24 in) or damage to the tire's sidewall.

Only punctures located within the tire tread can be sealed with the kit.

Only use the kit supplied with your vehicle.

The temporary mobility kit contains enough sealant compound in the canister for one tire repair only.

After using the sealant, an authorized dealer needs to replace the tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel.

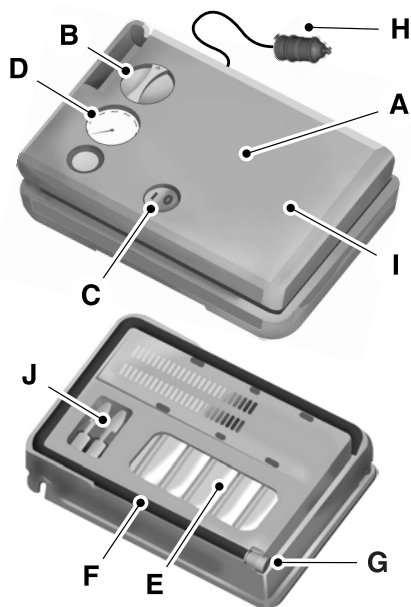
LOCATING THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

The kit is located under the load floor in the rear of the vehicle.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

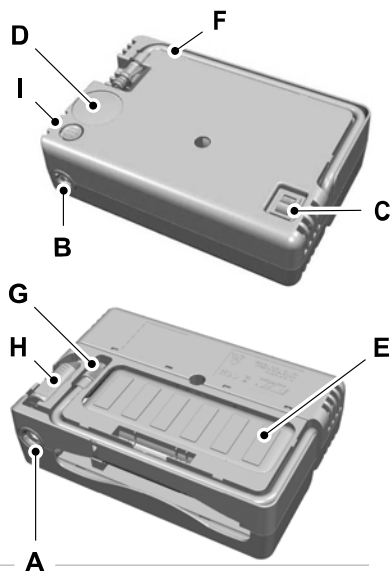
TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT COMPONENTS

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Solution 1



- A Air compressor (inside)
- B Selector switch
- C On and Off button
- D Air pressure gauge
- E Sealant bottle and canister
- F Dual purpose hose: air and repair
- G Tire valve connector
- H Accessory power plug
- I Casing/housing
- J Bike/raft/sports ball adapters

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Solution 2



- A Air compressor (inside)
- B Air Hose port (1 of 2)
- C On and Off button
- D Air pressure gauge
- E Sealant bottle and canister
- F Dual purpose hose: air and repair
- G Tire valve connector
- H Accessory power plug
- I Casing/housing

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

USING THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

Tips for use of the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Solution 1

To make sure the kit operates safely and properly, observe the following:

- Before operating the kit, make sure your vehicle is safely off the road and away from moving traffic.
- Do not remove any foreign objects, such as nails or screws, from the tire.
- Do not allow the compressor to operate continuously for more than 15 minutes. This prevents the compressor from overheating.
- Only use the kit when the ambient temperature is between -30°C (-22°F) and 70°C (158°F).
- Only use the sealing compound before the use by date. The use by date is on the sealant canister label and can be seen through the rectangular viewing window on the bottom of the compressor. Check the use by date regularly and replace the canister when the sealant expires.

Note: Sealant compound contains latex. Use appropriate precautions to avoid any allergic reactions.



When inflation only is required for a tire or other objects, the selector must be in the Air position.

What to do when a tire is punctured

A tire puncture within the tire's tread area can be repaired in two stages with the kit.

- In the first stage, the tire is reinflated with a sealing compound and air. After the tire has been inflated, drive the vehicle 6 km (4 mi) to distribute the sealant in the tire.
- In the second stage, check the tire pressure and adjust, if necessary, to the vehicle's specified tire inflation pressure.

First Stage: Reinflating the Tire with sealing compound and air



WARNING: Do not stand directly over the kit while inflating the tire. If you notice any unusual bulges or deformations in the tire's sidewall during inflation, stop and call roadside assistance.



WARNING: If the tire does not inflate to the recommended tire pressure within 15 minutes, stop and call roadside assistance.

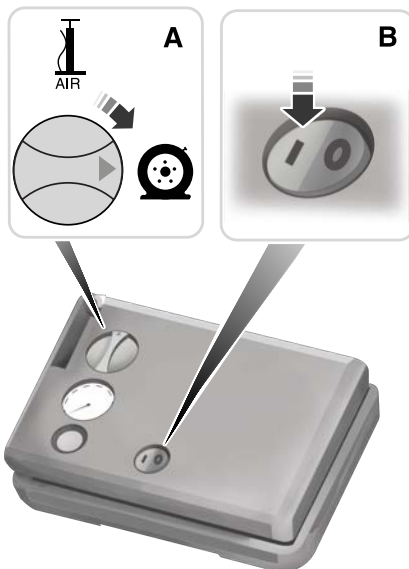
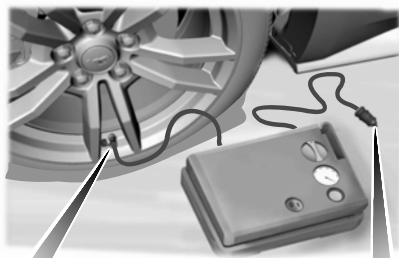
Park the vehicle in a safe, level and secure area, away from moving traffic.

Turn the hazard lights on. Apply the parking brake and power off the vehicle. Inspect the flat tire for visible damage.

If a puncture is located in the tire sidewall, stop and call roadside assistance.

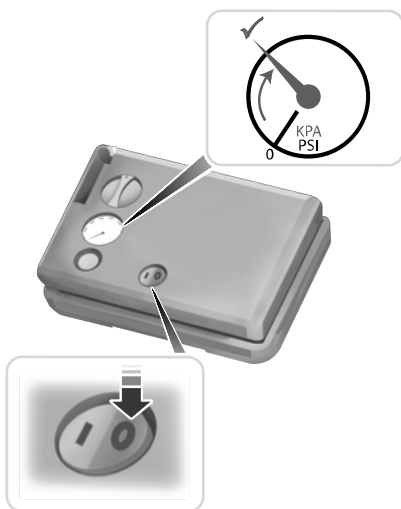
1. Remove the valve cap from the tire valve.
2. Unwrap the dual purpose hose (black tube) from the back of the compressor housing.
3. Fasten the hose to the tire valve by turning the connector clockwise. Tighten the connection securely.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



4. Plug the power cable into the 12-volt power point in the vehicle.
5. Remove the warning sticker found on the casing/housing and place it on top of the instrument panel or the center of the dash.
6. Turn dial (A) clockwise to the sealant position. Turn the kit on by pressing the on/off button (B).
7. Inflate the tire to the pressure listed on the tire label located on the driver door or the door jamb area. Check the final tire pressure with the compressor turned off to get an accurate pressure reading.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



WARNING: The power plug may get hot after use and should be handled carefully when unplugging.

Check the air pressure of your tires as follows:



8. When the recommended tire pressure is reached, turn off the kit, unplug the power cable, and disconnect the hose from the tire valve. Re-install the valve cap on the tire valve and return the kit to the rear of the vehicle.
9. Drive the vehicle 6 km (4 mi) to evenly distribute the sealant inside the tire.

Note: If you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise while driving, reduce your speed until you can safely pull off to the side of the road to call for roadside assistance. Do not proceed to the second stage of this operation.

Second Stage: Checking the tire pressure with the inflator kit



WARNING: If the tire does not inflate to the recommended tire pressure within 15 minutes, stop and call roadside assistance.

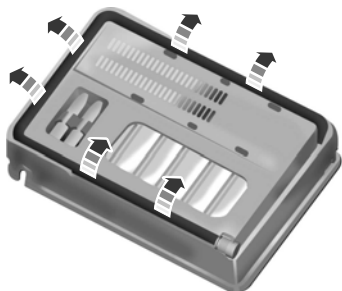
1. Remove the valve cap from the tire valve.
2. Attach the air compressor hose onto the valve stem by turning clockwise.
3. Push and turn the dial clockwise to the air position.
4. If required, turn on the compressor and adjust the tire to the recommended inflation pressure.
5. Remove the hoses, re-install the tire valve cap on the tire and return the kit to the rear of the vehicle.

What to do after the tire has been sealed

After using the kit to seal your tire, replace the sealant canister. Sealant canisters and spare parts can be obtained at an authorized dealer. Empty sealant canisters may be disposed of at home. However, canisters still containing liquid sealant should be disposed of in accordance with local waste disposal regulation.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

Removal of the sealant canister from the kit



1. Unwrap the dual purpose hose (black tube) from the compressor housing.



2. Unwrap the power cord.



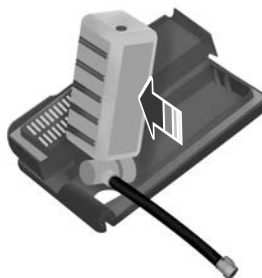
3. Remove the back cover.



4. Rotate the sealant canister up 90 degrees and pull away from casing/housing to remove.

Installation of the sealant canister to the kit

1. With the canister held perpendicular to the housing, insert the canister nozzle into the connector and push until seated.
2. Rotate the canister 90 degrees down into the housing/casing.



3. Snap the back cover back into place.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



4. Wrap the dual purpose hose (black tube) around the channel on the bottom of the housing/casing.



5. Wrap the power cord around the housing and stow the accessory power plug.

Tips for use of the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Solution 2

To make sure the kit operates safely and properly, observe the following:

- Before operating the kit, make sure your vehicle is safely off the road and away from moving traffic.
- Do not remove any foreign objects, such as nails or screws, from the tire.

- Do not allow the compressor to operate continuously for more than 15 minutes. This prevents the compressor from overheating.
- Only use the kit when the ambient temperature is between -30°C (-22°F) and 70°C (158°F).
- Only use the sealing compound before the use by date. The use by date is on the sealant canister label and can be seen through the rectangular viewing window on the bottom of the compressor. Check the use by date regularly and replace the canister when the sealant expires.

Note: Sealant compound contains latex. Use appropriate precautions to avoid any allergic reactions.



The tire sealant and inflator kit can be for regular tire pressure maintenance and inflating other objects by plugging the air supply hose into the port identified by a tire pump icon as indicated by the gray portion of the instruction label.

What to do when a tire is punctured

A tire puncture within the tire's tread area can be repaired in two stages with the kit:

- In the first stage, the tire is reinflated with a sealing compound and air. After the tire has been inflated, drive the vehicle 6 km (4 mi) to distribute the sealant in the tire.
- In the second stage, check the tire pressure and adjust, if necessary, to the vehicle's specified tire inflation pressure.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

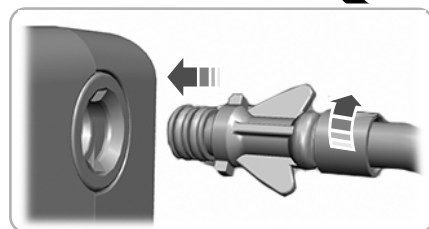
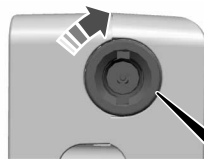
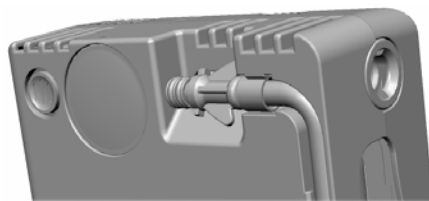
First Stage: Reinflating the Tire with sealing compound and air



WARNING: Do not stand directly over the kit while inflating the tire. If you notice any unusual bulges or deformations in the tire's sidewall during inflation, stop and call roadside assistance.



WARNING: If the tire does not inflate to the recommended tire pressure within 15 minutes, stop and call roadside assistance.



Park the vehicle in a safe, level and secure area, away from moving traffic.

Turn the hazard lights on. Apply the parking brake and power off the vehicle. Inspect the flat tire for visible damage.

If a puncture is located in the tire sidewall, stop and call roadside assistance.

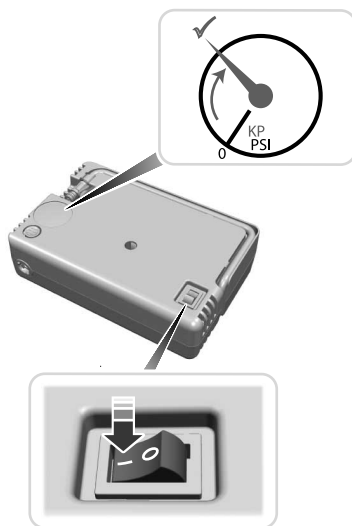
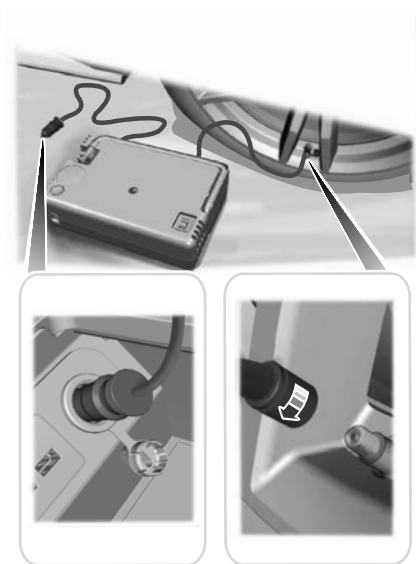
1. The dual-purpose hose (black tube) for air and sealant is pressed into a groove on the compressor housing. Remove the dual-purpose hose from the compressor housing.
2. Insert the air supply hose into the port as identified by the punctured tire icon and indicated by the blue portion of the instruction label for temporary repair of a tire puncture.

Note: Note the winged twist connector on the instruction label side of the housing.

3. Follow the arrow on the blue, puncture repair portion of the label to find the port for the winged twist connector on the side of the compressor housing. It is labeled "A" with a printed icon of a punctured tire.

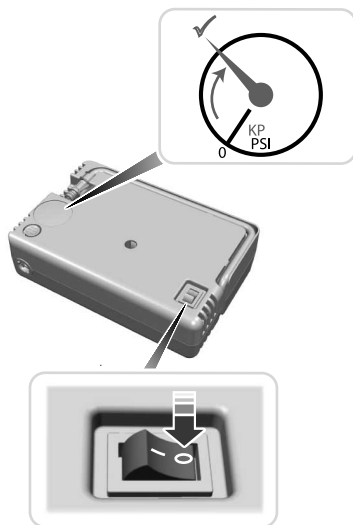
4. Insert the connector and twist it clockwise until the connector wing aligns with the marking on the compressor housing and it is locked in position.
5. Remove the valve cap from the tire valve.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



6. Fasten the hose to the tire valve by turning the threaded connector clockwise. Tighten the connection securely.
7. Plug the power cable into the 12-volt power point in the vehicle.
8. Turn the tire inflator kit on by pressing the on/off button.
9. Inflate the tire to the pressure listed on the tire label located on the driver door or the door jamb area. Check the final tire pressure with the compressor turned off to get an accurate pressure reading.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



Note: If you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise while driving, reduce your speed until you can safely pull off to the side of the road to call for roadside assistance. Do not proceed to the second stage of this operation.

Second Stage: Checking the tire pressure with the inflator kit

WARNING: If the tire does not inflate to the recommended tire pressure within 15 minutes, stop and call roadside assistance.

WARNING: The power plug may get hot after use and should be handled carefully when unplugging.

Check the air pressure of your tires as follows:



10. When the recommended tire pressure is reached, turn off the kit, unplug the power cable, and disconnect the hose from the tire valve. Re-install the valve cap on the tire valve and return the kit to the rear of the vehicle.
11. Remove the red warning sticker found on the casing/housing and place it on top of the instrument panel or the center of the dash.
12. Drive the vehicle 6 km (4 mi) to evenly distribute the sealant inside the tire. Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).
13. After 6 km (4 mi), stop and check the tire pressure. See Second Stage: Checking Tire Pressure.

1. Remove the valve cap from the tire valve.
2. Attach the air compressor hose onto the valve stem by turning clockwise.
3. Push and turn the dial clockwise to the air position.
4. If required, turn on the compressor and adjust the tire to the recommended inflation pressure.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

5. Remove the hoses, re-install the valve cap on the tire valve and return the kit to the rear of the vehicle.

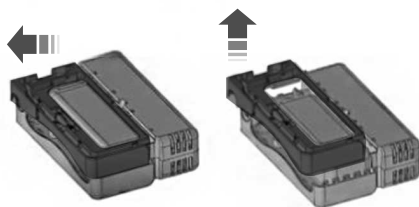
What to do after the tire has been sealed

After using the kit to seal your tire, replace the sealant canister. Sealant canisters and spare parts can be obtained at an authorized dealer. Empty sealant canisters may be disposed of at home. However, canisters still containing liquid sealant should be disposed of in accordance with local waste disposal regulation.

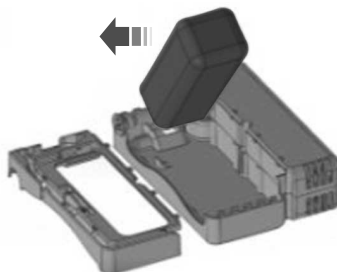
Removal of the sealant canister from the kit



1. Unwrap the dual purpose hose (black tube) from the compressor housing and discard.
2. Unwrap the power cord.



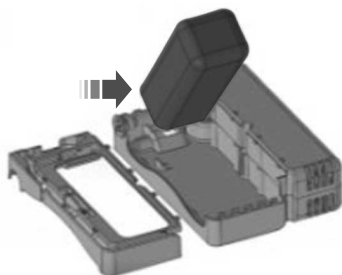
3. Unlatch the sealant bottle cover by sliding it outward, then lift and remove the cover.



4. Rotate the sealant canister up 60 degrees and slide it outward from the case/housing to remove.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

Installation of the sealant canister to the kit



1. With the canister held at an angle to the housing, insert the canister nozzle into the connector and push until seated.
2. Rotate the canister 90 degrees down into the housing/case.
3. Slide the back cover over the cannister until it snaps back into place.
4. Wrap the new dual-purpose hose (black tube) into the channel around the housing/case.
5. Stow the power cord in the side compartment of the housing and stow the accessory power cord into its storage slot on the back cover.

Note: *If you experience any difficulties with the removal or installation of the sealant canister, contact your authorized dealer for assistance. Make sure the sealant compound use by date is on the sealant canister label and can be seen through the rectangular viewing window on the bottom of the kit. Replace the sealant canister after four years of non-use.*

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

WHAT IS THE TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM



The tire pressure monitoring system measures the vehicle's tire pressures. A warning lamp illuminates if one or more tires are significantly underinflated or if there is a system malfunction.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



WARNING: Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: The use of tire sealants can damage the tire pressure monitoring system.

Note: If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged it may not function.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

When the outside temperature drops significantly, the tire pressure could decrease and activate the low tire pressure warning lamp.

The warning lamp could also illuminate when you use a spare wheel, or tire sealant from the inflator kit.

Note: Regularly checking the vehicle tire pressures can reduce the possibility for the warning lamp to illuminate due to outside air temperature changes.

Note: After you inflate the tires to the recommended pressure it could take up to two minutes of driving over 32 km/h (20 mph) for the warning indicator to turn off.

VIEWING THE TIRE PRESSURES



To view the current tire pressures, use the information display or touchscreen.

RESETTING TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

You must carry out the system reset procedure after each tire replacement or adjustment of the tire pressures.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

To maintain your vehicle load carrying capability, your vehicle may require different tire pressures in the front compared to the rear. In these cases, the system illuminates the warning lamp at different pressures for the front and rear tires.

If the tires are rotated, you need to reset the system in order to relearn the positions of the tire pressure sensors. The system cannot tell which position a tire pressure sensor is in, and assumes you have set the tire pressures correctly.

Performing the Reset Procedure

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Navigate to the tire monitor menu in the information display. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Information Messages** (page 345).

3. Press and hold the OK button until a confirmation message appears. If your vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system reset button, press and hold the button until a confirmation message appears.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS



The low tire pressure warning lamp has combined functions, as it warns you when your tires need air, and when the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended.

Warning Lamp	Possible Cause	Action Required
Solid warning lamp	One or more tires are significantly under inflated	After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the tire label, on the edge of driver door or the B-pillar, drive your vehicle for at least two minutes over 32 km/h (20 mph) before the light turns off.
Solid warning lamp or flashing warning lamp	Temporary spare wheel in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit it to your vehicle to restore operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are inflated to the recommended tire pressures and the temporary spare wheel is not in use, the system detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Tire Pressure Low	After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the tire label, on the edge of the driver door or the B-pillar, drive your vehicle for at least two minutes over 32 km/h (20 mph) before the light turns off.
Tire Pressure Monitor Fault	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Tire Pressure Sensor Fault	The system has detected a fault that requires service or a spare tire is in use. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Changing a Road Wheel

CHANGING A FLAT TIRE

If you get a flat tire while driving, do not apply the brake heavily. Instead, gradually decrease your speed, firmly hold the steering wheel and slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

Your vehicle does not include a spare wheel and tire, or a vehicle jack.

Have the flat serviced by as soon as possible to prevent damage to the tire pressure monitoring system sensors. During repairing or replacing of the flat tire, have the tire pressure monitoring system sensor inspected for damage as soon as possible.

Note: Only use tire sealants in roadside emergencies as they may damage the tire pressure monitoring system sensor. If you must use a sealant, use the Tire Mobility Kit sealant included with your vehicle. Replace the tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel as soon as possible after use of the sealant.

Note: The tire pressure monitoring system indicator illuminates when the spare tire is in use. To restore the full function of the tire pressure monitoring system, all road wheels equipped with tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on the vehicle.

Jacking Positions



WARNING: Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.



WARNING: To help prevent your vehicle from moving when changing a wheel, shift the transmission into park (P), set the parking brake and use an appropriate block or wheel chock to secure the wheel diagonally opposite to the wheel being changed. For example, when changing the front left wheel, place an appropriate block or wheel chock on the right rear wheel.



WARNING: Using the high voltage battery box as a jacking point could result in electric shock, personal injury, fire or death.



WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.



WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.



WARNING: Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to not obstruct the flow of traffic and avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.



WARNING: Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.



WARNING: Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.

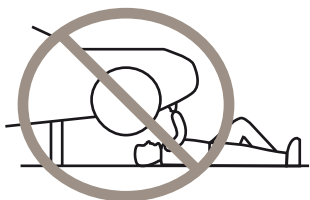


WARNING: Make sure there is no grease or oil on the threads or the surface between the wheel studs and the wheel nuts. This can cause the wheel nuts to loosen while driving.

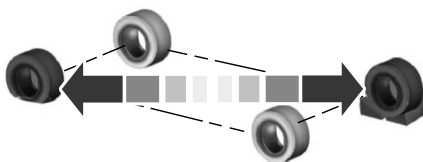
Changing a Road Wheel

WARNING: Always fully apply the parking brake. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

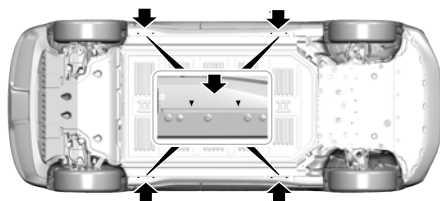
WARNING: It is recommended that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person should remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.



1. Park on a level surface, set the parking brake and activate the hazard flashers.
2. Place the selector lever in park (P) and power the vehicle off.



3. Block the wheel diagonally opposite the flat tire. For example, if the left front tire is flat, block the right rear wheel.



4. Jack at the specified locations to avoid damage to the vehicle.

Note: Small arrow-shaped marks on the vehicle sills show the location of the jacking points.

Note: Do not lift the vehicle on the strike strip or beyond the strike strips. These are the lowest point beyond the vehicle sills.

WHEEL NUTS

WARNING: When you install a wheel, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

Changing a Road Wheel

Bolt Size	Nm (lb.ft) ¹
M14 x 1.5	204 Nm (150 lb.ft)

¹ Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only our recommended replacement fasteners.

Retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque within 160 km (100 mi) after any wheel disturbance, such as tire rotation, changing a flat tire or wheel removal.



A Hub pilot bore.

Inspect the wheel pilot hole and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.

Vehicle Identification

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

LOCATING THE VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

The vehicle identification plate is within the right-hand door aperture.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE OVERVIEW

FoMoCo	
G1	G2
G3	G4
G5	G6
G7	
G8	G9
G10	

FORD	
A	
B	
	C kg
	D kg
1. -	E kg
2. -	F kg

5U5A-3520472-AA

- A Type Approval Number
- B Vehicle Identification Number
- C Maximum Permissible Laden Weight of the Vehicle (GVWR)
- D Maximum Permissible Weight of Combination (GCWR)
- E Maximum Permissible Front Axle Weight (Front GAWR)
- F Maximum Permissible Rear Axle Weight (Rear GAWR)
- G1 Drive Side
- G2 Engine Code
- G3 Transmission Code
- G4 Axle Code
- G5 Exterior Trim
- G6 Exterior Paint
- G7 Emission
- G8 Version
- G9 Variant
- G10 Type Homologation

Vehicle Identification

Note: *The vehicle identification plate may vary to that shown.*

Note: *Information on the vehicle identification plate is dependent upon market requirements.*

Connected Vehicle

WHAT IS A CONNECTED VEHICLE

A connected vehicle has technology that allows your vehicle to connect to a mobile network and for you to access a range of features. When used in conjunction with the Ford mobile app, it could allow you to monitor and control your vehicle further, for example checking the tire pressures, the fuel level and the vehicle location. For additional information, refer to the local Ford website.

CONNECTED VEHICLE REQUIREMENTS

Connected service and related feature functionality requires a compatible vehicle network.

Some remote features require additional service activation. Log in to your Ford account for details. Some restrictions, third party terms and message or data rates may apply.

CONNECTED VEHICLE LIMITATIONS

Evolving technology, cellular networks, or regulations could affect functionality and availability, or continued provision of some features. These changes could even stop some features from functioning.

CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A MOBILE NETWORK

WHAT IS THE MODEM



The modem allows access to a range of features built into your vehicle.

ENABLING AND DISABLING THE MODEM

1. From the settings menu, press Connectivity. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Press Connected Vehicle Features.
3. Switch vehicle connectivity on or off.

CONNECTING FORDPASS TO THE MODEM

1. Make sure that the modem is enabled using the vehicle settings menu.
2. Open the FordPass app on your device and log in.
3. Add your vehicle or select your vehicle if already added.
4. Select the option to activate your vehicle.
5. Make sure that the name on the screen matches the name shown in your FordPass account.
6. Confirm that FordPass account is connected to the modem.

CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A WI-FI NETWORK

1. From the settings menu, press Connectivity. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Press Wi-Fi.
3. Switch Wi-Fi on.
4. Press View Available Networks.
5. Select an available Wi-Fi network.

Note: Enter the network password to connect to a secure network.

Connected Vehicle

CONNECTED VEHICLE SETTINGS

You can adjust several settings on the touchscreen under the connected vehicle features menu, such as:

- Vehicle connectivity.
- Share vehicle data.
- Share vehicle location.
- Share driving data.

Note: Depending on your vehicle, different options may be available.

Note: Editing connectivity settings could result in some features not operating correctly or at all. When you edit connectivity settings, pop-up messages may appear to notify you that services will not work without that setting. If you switch a feature on, pop-up messages could appear informing you of the settings that will be turned on. Some features, for example driver assistance features, use map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

CONNECTED VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING

CONNECTED VEHICLE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why is my Ford mobile app not connecting to my vehicle?

- The modem is not enabled. Switch vehicle connectivity on.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

Why can I not connect to a Wi-Fi network?

- You entered the wrong network password. Enter the correct password.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- There are multiple access points in range with the same network name. Choose a unique name for your network. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example as part of the MAC address.

Why does the Wi-Fi connection disconnect after successful connection?

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

What can I do if I am close to a Wi-Fi router but the network signal strength is weak?

- If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi router or open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door as it could block the signal.

Why can I not see a network I expect to see in the list of available networks?

- The network is hidden. Make the network visible and try again, or manually add a network in the Wi-Fi settings menu.
- Some network security types are not supported, for example WEP.

Why do software downloads take too long?

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- Wi-Fi network is in high demand or has a slow Internet connection. Use a more reliable Wi-Fi network.

Why does the software not update when the system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent?

- No software update is available at this time.
- Select automatic updates option in the settings menu to enable automatic software update or contact an authorized dealer.
- There could be a connection problem. Test the network using another device.

Vehicle Hotspot

SETTING UP A VEHICLE HOTSPOT

With a data plan, your hotspot can provide devices in and around your vehicle with Wi-Fi data.

Note: *A mobile device is required to complete hotspot setup.*

1. From the settings menu, press Connectivity. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Press Vehicle Hotspot.
3. Press Settings.
4. Switch the Show Password option on or off.
5. Connect your device to the vehicle hotspot by selecting the hotspot from the list of Wi-Fi Networks.
6. When prompted, enter the password.

Activating a Trial or Purchasing a Data Plan

1. Connect a device to your vehicle hotspot. The vehicle network carrier's service activation website opens on your device.

Note: *If the website does not open, open a new website and it redirects to the vehicle network carrier's website.*

2. Follow the instructions on the carrier portal to purchase a plan or start a trial.

Note: *Visit the vehicle network carrier's website to purchase more data.*

Note: *Hotspot services are subject to your vehicle network carrier agreement, coverage and availability.*

VEHICLE HOTSPOT SETTINGS

You can change the following in the vehicle hotspot settings menu:

- Vehicle hotspot name or password.
- Vehicle hotspot frequency.

Changing the Vehicle Hotspot Name or Password

The hotspot information can only be updated once you activate the hotspot.

1. From the settings menu, press Connectivity. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Press Vehicle Hotspot.
3. Press Settings.
4. Press Edit.
5. Press Change Network Name.
6. Enter your required network name.
7. Press enter to save the network name.
8. Press Change Password.
9. Enter your required password.
10. Press enter to save the password.

Changing the Vehicle Hotspot Frequency

The vehicle hotspot frequency band is selectable depending upon your device capabilities. You cannot connect your device to the vehicle hotspot if it does not support the selected frequency band.

1. From the settings menu, press Connectivity. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Press Vehicle Hotspot.
3. Press Settings.
4. Press Edit.
5. Press Change Frequency Band.
6. Select a frequency.

VEHICLE HOTSPOT – TROUBLESHOOTING

VEHICLE HOTSPOT – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why can I not see the vehicle hotspot name when I search for Wi-Fi networks on my cell phone or other device?

- Make sure the vehicle hotspot visibility is on.
- Check what frequency the hotspot is transmitting in the vehicle hotspot settings menu. If the frequency is 5 GHz and your device cannot see the network, change the frequency to 2.4 GHz.
- The system does not provide a vehicle hotspot at this time.

How do I remove the vehicle from the vehicle network carrier's account?

- Contact your vehicle network carrier.

Audio System

AUDIO SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Listening to loud audio for long periods of time could damage your hearing.

SWITCHING THE AUDIO UNIT ON AND OFF



Press the button on the volume control.

SELECTING THE AUDIO SOURCE

1. Press your preferred audio source.

Note: Available audio sources are listed along the top of the radio screen.

MEDIA CONTROL BUTTONS



Press to play a track. Press again to pause the track.

Note: Not all sources can be paused.



Press the button to skip to the next track.

Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.



Press the button once to return to the beginning of a track.

Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind through the track.



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch shuffle mode on or off.

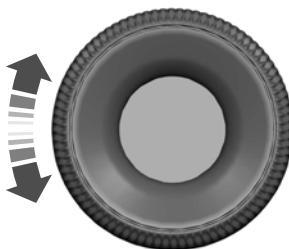
Note: Not all sources have shuffle mode.



Press the button on the touchscreen to change repeat mode.

Note: Not all sources have repeat mode.

ADJUSTING THE VOLUME



Turn to adjust the volume.

You can also press the mute button on the map screen.

Some vehicles may be able to adjust the volume using buttons on the steering wheel.

Audio System

SETTING A MEMORY PRESET

1. Select a station.
2. Press and hold a memory preset button on the touchscreen.

Note: *The audio mutes briefly while the system saves the preset and returns once stored.*

Note: *You can save presets from multiple radio bands to the memory preset bar.*

MUTING THE AUDIO



Press to mute the signal. Press again to restore the signal.

ADJUSTING THE SOUND SETTINGS

To access the sound settings menu:

1. From the settings menu, press Sound. See **Center Display** (page 360).

From the menu, you can adjust the following:

- Tone settings.
- Balance and fade.
- Speed compensated volume.
- Volume settings.
- Sound mode/Occupancy mode

Note: *Depending on your vehicle options, not all settings are available.*

SETTING THE CLOCK AND DATE

1. From the settings menu, press General. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Scroll to Clock.
3. Set the time.

Note: *The AM and PM options are not available if 24-hour mode is on.*

Switching Automatic Time Updates On and Off

1. From the settings menu, press General. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Scroll to Clock.
3. Switch Auto Time Update on or off.

FM RADIO

FM RADIO LIMITATIONS

The further you travel from a FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.

Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.

When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in the audio system muting.

SELECTING AN FM RADIO STATION

Manually Selecting a Radio Station



Press the button on the radio tuner to go up the frequency band.



Press the button on the radio tuner to go down the frequency band.

Audio System

Using Seek



Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.



Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.

Using the Station List

1. Press the search button on the radio screen.
2. Press a radio station from the list.

DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO

WHAT IS DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO

Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) is a digital radio standard for broadcasting digital audio radio services. Your radio allows you to listen to DAB radio stations.

DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO LIMITATIONS

Coverage differs from region to region and influences the quality of reception. It is broadcast nationwide, regionally and locally. Coverage may vary on weather conditions and terrain.

Note: *This could cause the audio to dropout.*

WHAT IS SERVICE LINKING

If you leave the coverage area of a DAB radio station the system switches to the corresponding FM radio station if one is available.

SWITCHING SERVICE LINKING ON AND OFF

1. From the apps menu, press Radio. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Press DAB.
3. Press Settings.
4. Switch Service Linking on or off.

SELECTING A DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO STATION

Manually Selecting a Radio Station



Press the button on the radio tuner to go up the frequency band.



Press the button on the radio tuner to go down the frequency band.

Using Seek



Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.



Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.

Audio System

Selecting a Radio Station From a List

1. Press the search button on the radio screen.
2. Press a radio station from the list.

DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO SETTINGS

Slideshow

When switched on and available, the touchscreen displays supplied pictures in place of the station logo. The pictures can be enlarged by touching them.

Electronic Program Guide

When enabled and available, the touchscreen displays what is currently playing and what plays next on the selected station.

Station Logo

When switched on and available, the touchscreen displays the current FM or DAB station logo.

News Announcements

When switched on, the current playing audio source may be interrupted by news announcements. An icon on the radio screen indicates when news announcements are enabled. An icon in the status bar indicates when an announcement is active.

Regional

When switched on, the radio stays tuned to the selected FM or DAB regional station. When switched off, the radio may tune to a regional alternative of the station depending on reception.

Station List Order

Allows you to order the DAB station list by name or network.

TRAFFIC ANNOUNCEMENTS

SWITCHING TRAFFIC ANNOUNCEMENTS ON AND OFF

TA

Press the button on the radio screen.

When switched on, the current playing audio source may be interrupted by traffic announcements. An icon on the radio screen indicates when announcements are enabled. An icon in the status bar indicates when an announcement is active.

Center Display

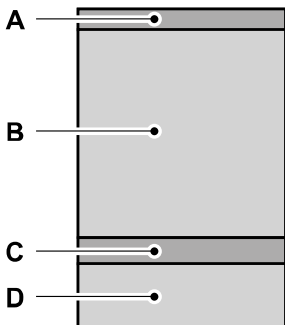
CENTER DISPLAY OVERVIEW



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

For your safety, features that are not critical while driving are not available when the vehicle is moving at or above 8 km/h (5 mph).

Note: Illustrations are provided for conceptual understanding only and may appear differently on your vehicle.



- A Status bar. See **Status Bar** (page 360).
- B Open app area.

- C App bar.
- D Climate control. See **Climate Control** (page 109).

STATUS BAR

The status bar appears at the top of the display. The following buttons and icons can appear in the status bar.

Note: Some buttons and icons may not apply to your vehicle or may not appear exactly as shown.

App Launcher



Press to see a list of apps. To open an app, select the app.

Settings



Press to open the settings menu. See **Settings** (page 361).

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto



Press to open Apple CarPlay or Android Auto. See **Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off** (page 370). See **Switching Android Auto™ On and Off** (page 370).



Alexa Built-In



Press to set up Alexa. See **Alexa Built-In** (page 365).

Camera



Press to access the camera screen.

Center Display

Connected Device



Automatic crash notification system off.



Device signal strength.



Device signal roaming.



Device signal not available.

Vehicle Data and Location



Vehicle data sharing on.



Vehicle data sharing off.



Vehicle location sharing on.



Vehicle data and vehicle location sharing on.

Vehicle Signal



Vehicle signal strength.



Vehicle signal roaming.



Vehicle signal not available.



Wi-Fi connected.

Traffic Announcements



Traffic announcements are turned on but are not supported by the selected station.



Traffic announcements are turned on and supported by the selected station but are not active.



Traffic announcements are active.

Note: If no traffic announcement icons are displayed, traffic announcements are turned off.

Wireless Charging



Wireless charging active.



Device connected and not charging.

Personal Profiles



Press to change or add a profile. See **Personal Profiles** (page 373).

SETTINGS

1.  Press to open the settings menu.
2. Select an item on the side menu to access specific settings. The main area changes as you select different side menu items.
3. Press the icon again to close the list of settings.

You can change the display language and other measurement units under the General menu.

Center Display



If you see this icon next to a menu option, press it to expand the menu and see additional settings.



If you see this icon next to a menu option, press it for more information.

1. Simultaneously press and hold the seek forward and volume down button for 10 seconds.

Display Settings

From the display menu you can do the following:

- Switch the calm screen on.
- Manually adjust the screen brightness.
- Set the display mode for the instrument cluster and touchscreen.

Touchscreen Brightness

To manually adjust the screen brightness, use the plus or minus buttons.

Note: *The display brightness is limited if the settings of the instrument panel lighting brightness are set to the highest or lowest setting.*

DRIVER ASSISTANCE MENU

To access the driver assistance menu:



Press to open the settings menu.

Note: *The icon may be different depending on your vehicle.*

2. Press Driver Assistance.

REBOOTING THE CENTER DISPLAY

You can reboot the center display using the controls on the steering wheel.

Voice Interaction

FORD ASSISTANT

USING FORD ASSISTANT

The digital assistant allows you to control vehicle features using conversational requests.

To begin a voice interaction using the wake word, say the selected wake word, then say your command.



Press the voice interaction button on the steering wheel. A tone sounds before you can say your command.

Note: You may need to enable your vehicle's modem to use certain voice commands. See **Enabling and Disabling the Modem** (page 351).

Voice Command Examples

To see examples of what voice commands you can use with different features:

1. From the settings menu, press Ford Assistant. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Press Voice Command Help.
3. Select a feature.

FORD ASSISTANT SETTINGS

To access the settings menu:

1. From the settings menu, press Ford Assistant. See **Center Display** (page 360).

From the settings menu you can do the following:

- Switch listen for wake word on or off.
- Set the preferred wake word.
- Switch advanced mode on or off.
- Switch phone confirmation on or off.

- Switch the commands list on or off.
- View the commands help menu.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

FORD ASSISTANT – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the system not understand what I am saying?

- You are speaking too soon. When using the button of the steering wheel, wait for the tone before you speak.

Why does the system not understand the name of a track or artist?

- **Bluetooth®** does not support voice commands. Connect your device to a USB port.
- You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. Say the name of the track or artist exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name.
- The system does not recognize some special characters contained in the name of a song or artist, for example *, - or +. Rename the files on your device or use the touchscreen to select and play the track.

Why does the system not understand the name of a contact in the phonebook on my device and calls the wrong contact?

- You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. Say the first and last name of the contact exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name.
- The name contains special characters, for example *, - or +. Rename the contact on your device or use the touchscreen to select and call the contact.

Why does the system not understand foreign names of contacts in the phonebook on my device?

- The system applies phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names of contacts in the phonebook on your device. Select the name of the contact on the touchscreen and use the Hear it option to get an idea of how the system expects you to pronounce it.

Why do the system voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words not seem accurate?

- The system uses text-to-speech technology and a synthetically generated voice rather than a pre-recorded human voice.

Alexa Built-In

WHAT IS ALEXA BUILT-IN

Alexa Built-In allows you to use Alexa in your vehicle for auto-specific use cases on the road and gives you access to an ever-evolving number of skills that help to make your life more productive, entertaining, and connected while using your vehicle.

ALEXA BUILT-IN REQUIREMENTS

To use Alexa, all of the following must occur:

- Your vehicle is added to the Ford app account.
- You are signed in to an existing Amazon account.
- Vehicle location services are enabled.
- Vehicle connectivity and vehicle data sharing is enabled.

Note: Support and functionality may vary based on the country where your Ford app account is registered.

SIGNING IN TO YOUR ACCOUNT



Press the button in the status bar and follow the on-screen prompts.

To sign in using the settings menu:

1. From the settings menu, press Amazon Alexa. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Press Get Started.
3. Sign in to the Amazon account by either scanning the code or entering the on-screen code into the Amazon website.

4. Once logged in, follow the on-screen prompts.
5. When complete, the vehicle informs you that Alexa is ready to be used in the vehicle.

Signing Out of Your Account

1. From the settings menu, press Amazon Alexa. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Press Sign Out.

USING ALEXA BUILT-IN

To use Alexa, say “Alexa” or press the voice interaction button on the steering wheel and then say “Alexa” to invoke Alexa to start listening.

Note: If the wake word is not enabled, you can only use the voice interaction button.

You can use Alexa for the following and more:

- Entertainment.
- Hands-free calling.
- Traffic and navigation.
- Vehicle controls.
- Smart home device control.
- Weather and news information.

ALEXA BUILT-IN SETTINGS

Enabling the Wake Word

1. From the settings menu, press Amazon Alexa. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Switch Listen for Wake Word on or off.

Note: If the wake word is not enabled, you can only use the voice interaction button.

Contact List

Displays a list of connected phones and contact sharing status for each phone.

Alexa Built-In

To change the contact sharing status:

1. From the settings menu, press Amazon Alexa. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Press Contact List.
3. Enable or disable sharing for each phone.

Note: *You can share contacts from more than one phone at a time.*

Things to Try

Learn more about what you can do with Alexa by browsing the things to try.

1. From the settings menu, press Amazon Alexa. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Press Things to Try.

Phone

PHONE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

CONNECTING YOUR PHONE

Connecting your phone stores contact and call data on your vehicle.

Note: *This data is used to provide intelligent suggestions. You can switch this off in the touchscreen settings menu. See **Selecting a Personal Profile** (page 374).*

Note: *Unpairing your phone removes the contact and call data from your vehicle and stops intelligent call suggestions.*

1. Make sure **Bluetooth®** is enabled on your device.
2. From the settings menu, press Phone List. See **Center Display** (page 360).
3. Select Add Phone.
4. Follow the instructions on the screen to pair your device.

PHONE MENU



Press to view your favorite contacts.



Press to view your recent calls.



Press to view your contacts



Press to use the phone keypad.



Press to display recent text messages.



Press to view recent emails.

Press the down arrow to view additional items for a connected device.



Press to begin a voice interaction.



Press to switch to a different connected device.



Press to mute notifications.



Press to access phone settings.

Phone

MAKING AND RECEIVING A PHONE CALL

Making Calls

To call a number in your contacts, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Contacts	You can then select the name of the contact you want to call. Any numbers stored for that contact display along with any stored contact photos. You can then select the number that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number from your recent calls, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Recent Call list	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number from your favorites, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Favourites	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number that is not stored in your phone, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone Keypad	Select the digits of the number you wish to call.
Call	The system begins the call.

Pressing the backspace button deletes the last digit you typed.

Receiving Calls

During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Caller information appears in the display if it is available.

To accept the call, select:

Menu Item
Accept

Note: You can also accept the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.

To reject the call, select:

Menu Item
Reject

Ignore the call by doing nothing. The system logs it as a missed call.

During a Phone Call

During a phone call, the contacts name and number display on the screen along with the call duration.

The phone status items are also visible:

- Signal Strength.
- Battery.

You can select any of the following during an active phone call:

Phone

Item	
End call	Immediately end a phone call. You can also press the button on the steering wheel.
Keypad	Press this to access the phone keypad.

Item	
Mute	You can switch the microphone off so the caller does not hear you.
Hndsfree off	Transfer the phone call audio to the cell phone or back to the touchscreen.

SENDING AND RECEIVING A TEXT MESSAGE

Menu Item	Description
Hear it	Hear the text message.
View	View the text message.
Call	Call the sender.
Reply	Reply to the text message with a standard text message.

Phone

SWITCHING TEXT MESSAGE NOTIFICATION ON AND OFF

IOS

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select **Bluetooth®**.
3. Select the information icon to the right of your vehicle.
4. Switch text message notification on or off.

Android

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select **Bluetooth®**.
3. Select the profiles option.
4. Select the phone profile.
5. Switch text message notification on or off.

ENABLING APPS ON A MOBILE DEVICE

When you start an app through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving. We recommend that you check your data plan before using your apps through the system. Using them could result in additional charges. We also recommend that you check the app provider's terms and conditions and privacy policy before using their app. Make sure that you have an active account for apps that you want to use through the system. Some apps work with no setup. Others require you to configure some personal settings before you can use them.

Enabling Apps on an iOS Device

1. Follow the instructions to pair and connect your device via **Bluetooth®** or with a USB cable.

Note: *Some apps may run through Apple CarPlay if it is enabled.*

2. Start a compatible app on your device.

Note: *The app must be open on your device to use it through the touchscreen.*

3. Access the system applications.
4. Select the app you wish to use on the touchscreen.

Enabling Apps on an Android Device

1. Pair your device to **Bluetooth®**.

Note: *Some apps may run through Android Auto if it is enabled.*

2. Start a compatible app on your device.

Note: *The app must be open on your device to use it through the touchscreen.*

3. Access the system applications.
4. Select the app you wish to use on the touchscreen.

SWITCHING APPLE CARPLAY ON AND OFF

1. Pair your device.
2. From the settings menu, press Phone List. See **Center Display** (page 360).
3. Select your device.
4. Tap the Apple CarPlay icon to switch Apple CarPlay on or off.

SWITCHING ANDROID AUTO™ ON AND OFF

1. Pair your device.

Phone

2. From the settings menu, press Phone List. See **Center Display** (page 360).
3. Select your device.
4. Tap the Android Auto icon to switch Android Auto on or off.

CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH® DEVICE

1. From the settings menu, press Phone List. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Press Add Phone.

Note: A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your device.

1. Select your vehicle on your device.

Note: A number appears on your device and on the touchscreen.

2. Confirm that the number on your device matches the number on the touchscreen.

Note: The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your device.

The **Bluetooth®** word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by **Bluetooth SIG, Inc.** and any use of such marks by Ford Motor Company is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

PLAYING MEDIA USING BLUETOOTH®



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Connect your device.

Press App Launcher on the touchscreen. Press Media App. See **Center Display** (page 360).



Press the **Bluetooth®** option.

Note: If Bluetooth device was not the previous source.



Press to play a track. Press again to pause the track.



Press to skip to the next track.

Press and hold to fast forward through the track.



Press once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press to return to previous

tracks.

Press and hold to fast rewind through the track.

Browsing your Media Library

When a compatible mobile device is connected to the vehicle, your media library is accessible through the touchscreen. From the touchscreen, you can browse through songs, albums, artists, and playlists on your mobile device.

Note: This feature is dependent on the connected mobile device and the media application used.

Note: Browse feature functionality may be limited while driving.

Personal Profiles

HOW DO PERSONAL PROFILES WORK

You can create multiple personal profiles enabling users to personalize vehicle settings such as seats and mirrors, as well as non-positional settings like radio, navigation and driver assist system settings. Positional settings are saved by holding a memory function button. Non-positional settings are saved when you change a setting while a profile is active.

ENABLING OR DISABLING PERSONAL PROFILES

1. From the settings menu, press Personal Profiles. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Switch Enable Profiles on or off.

Note: *The button image may vary when a profile is selected.*

When enabled:

- Unlocking a door with a remote control or mobile device that is not linked to a driver profile does not change active profile, but remains in the last known profile. It does not change the positional settings.
- Pressing a memory seat button that is not linked to a driver profile or saved to a preset setting does not change active profile, but remains in the last known profile. It does not change the positional settings.
- Pressing a memory seat button that is not linked to a driver profile but is saved to a preset setting does not change active profile, but remains in the last known profile. It recalls the positional settings that you saved to that memory seat button.

When disabled:

- Unlocking a door with a remote control or mobile device does not recall any non-positional settings but still recalls positional settings from the driver profile which the remote control or mobile device is linked to.
- Pressing a memory seat button that is not linked to a driver profile or saved to a preset setting recalls non-positional settings from the guest profile. It does not change the positional settings.
- Pressing a memory seat button that is linked to a driver profile or has saved to a preset setting recalls non-positional settings from the guest profile. It recalls the positional settings that you saved to that memory seat button.

CREATING A PERSONAL PROFILE

1. Switch the vehicle on and leave the vehicle in park (P).
2. From settings menu, press Personal Profiles. See **Center Display** (page 360).
3. Press Add New.
4. Follow the instructions on the display.

Note: *The button image may vary when a profile is selected.*

LINKING OR UNLINKING A PERSONAL PROFILE

You can link your profile to a remote control or mobile device so that your settings are activated when you use the remote control or mobile device to turn on the vehicle.

Personal Profiles

Remote Control

You can save preset memory positions for up to three remote controls by assigning a remote control to a personal profile.

Note: *The button image may vary when a profile is selected.*

Note: *You cannot link a remote control to a guest profile.*

1. From settings menu, press Personal Profiles. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Select the profile to link or unlink.
3. Select the remote control to link or unlink.
4. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Note: *If more than one linked remote control is in range, the memory function moves to the settings of the first key to initiate a memory recall.*

Mobile Device

1. From settings menu, press Personal Profiles. See **Center Display** (page 360).
 2. Select the profile to link or unlink.
- Note:** *You cannot link a mobile device to a guest profile.*
3. Select the mobile device to link or unlink.
 4. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Note: *The button image may vary when a profile is selected.*

Note: *The mobile device must be in your vehicle and previously set up as a remote control for your vehicle.*

Note: *If more than one linked mobile device is in range, the memory function moves to the settings of the first mobile device to initiate a memory recall.*

SELECTING A PERSONAL PROFILE

You can select a profile using the touchscreen or the preset button you selected when you created your profile.

If you use a linked device, such as a remote control or mobile device, the active profile is set to the linked profile.

To change the active profile:

1. From settings menu, press Personal Profiles. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Select the profile to use.
3. Press Make Profile Active.

Note: *The button image may vary when a profile is selected.*

DELETING A PERSONAL PROFILE

1. From settings menu, press Personal Profiles. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Select the profile to delete.
3. Press Delete Profile.

Note: *The button image may vary when a profile is selected.*

Navigation

ACCESSING NAVIGATION

1.  Press the button on the touchscreen to open the application drawer.

2. Press **Navigation**.

Note: As the driver, be aware of all local traffic regulations and road attributes, and operate your vehicle in a safe and legal manner.

NAVIGATION MAP UPDATES

To update your Map data over Wi-Fi, your vehicle must be connected to a Wi-Fi access point. For USB updates and other details, contact an authorized Ford dealer.

Note: If you find map data errors, you may report them by going to www.here.com/mapcreator.

ADJUSTING THE MAP

ZOOMING THE MAP IN AND OUT

You can use pinch gestures to zoom in and out. Place two fingers on the screen and move them apart to zoom in. Place two fingers on the screen and bring them together to zoom out.

CHANGING THE FORMAT OF THE MAP



Press the map format button on the left side of the map screen to toggle between the available formats.

LIVE TRAFFIC

WHAT IS LIVE TRAFFIC

You can observe real-time road congestion when live traffic is on.

SWITCHING LIVE TRAFFIC ON AND OFF

1. Press the tools button on the map screen.
2. Press Navigation Settings.
3. Press the Traffic button.
4. Switch Traffic on or off.

SETTING A DESTINATION

SETTING A DESTINATION USING THE TEXT ENTRY SCREEN

1. Press search bar at the top of the screen.
2. Enter your destination using the keyboard.
3. Press the search button.
4. Select a destination from the list.
5. Follow the prompts on the screen to begin navigation.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING THE MAP SCREEN

Press on the map to trigger the roaming and viewing screen. Press on the map again to place a pin at that location. Information about the location of the pin appears on the screen. Press the Go! button to begin navigation to the pin.

Navigation

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A PREDICTIVE DESTINATION

Switching Predictive Destinations On and Off

You can switch Destination Suggestions on and off under the User Data section in the navigation settings menu.

Setting a Destination

Access the feature bar using the touchscreen and select the predicted destination at the top of the screen. You can access additional predictive destinations by pressing the search bar on the map screen and then pressing the myTrends button.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A RECENT DESTINATION

1. Press the search bar at the top of the screen.
2. Press the recents button.
3. Select a destination from the list.
4. Follow the prompts on the screen to begin navigation.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A SAVED DESTINATION

1. Press the search bar at the top of the screen.
2. Press Saved Places.
3. Select a saved destination.

Note: Press the star icon next when viewing location details to save the location.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A POINT OF INTEREST

Press on a point of interest icon on the map. Information about the location of the point of interest appears on the screen. Press the Go! button to begin navigation to the point of interest.

WAYPOINTS

ADDING A WAYPOINT

1. Begin navigation to a destination.
2. Search for your waypoint using the search bar.
3. Press Go!
4. Press Add to add the waypoint to your trip.

EDITING WAYPOINTS

1. Press the search bar on the map screen.
2. Press myTrips.
3. Press Current Trip.
4. Use the menu to add destinations, remove destinations, or rearrange destinations.

ROUTE GUIDANCE

ADJUSTING THE GUIDANCE PROMPT VOLUME

Turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays to adjust the volume.

REPEATING AN INSTRUCTION

Press the turn indicator to hear the last voice instruction.

Navigation

CANCELING ROUTE GUIDANCE



Press the button to cancel route guidance to the selected location.

Vehicle Software Updates

This introduces new features and provides updates to the vehicle's software systems. Make sure to switch Automatic Updates on, set a recurring update schedule and connect your vehicle to Wi-Fi. Updates could take longer when not connected to Wi-Fi or could not download at all. See

Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network (page 351).

Your vehicle may be able to receive drivable software updates, non-drivable software updates or both. Drivable software updates happen during normal vehicle usage and require limited input from you. You are notified on your touchscreen and connected device prior to a non-drivable update.

Most non-drivable updates complete in less than 30 minutes, although some updates could take up to a few hours.

You are notified of vehicle software update status on to the top left of touchscreen. You can also see the notifications in your connected device. See **Software Update Indicators** (page 379).

Vehicle Software Update Requirements

Non-drivable software updates do not install if any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is running.
- Your vehicle is switched on.
- Your vehicle is not parked.
- The 12 V battery charge is too low.
- The hazard indicators are switched on.
- The alarm is sounding.
- The doors are open.
- The parking lamps are switched on.
- You are pressing the brake pedal.
- An emergency call is in process.
- Your vehicle is in limp home mode.

Vehicle Software Update Limitations

Once you begin a non-drivable software update, you cannot:

- Cancel the update.
- Enter your vehicle unless you have a key blade.
 - You can open the doors using the mechanical latch if child locks are not on.
- Use the remote control to lock, unlock or start your vehicle.
- Drive your vehicle.
- Charge your vehicle.
 - Charging resumes once the update completes.

SOFTWARE UPDATE SETTINGS

From settings menu, press Software Updates. See **Center Display** (page 360).

You can do the following in the Software Updates menu:

- Switch Automatic Updates on and off.
- Schedule and install software updates.
- View software update details.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

Switching Automatic Updates On and Off

Your vehicle may come with Automatic Updates switched on. To make sure your vehicle always has the latest software, which could include security or other enhancements, we recommend switching Automatic Updates on.

Vehicle Software Updates

Note: Software updates require approval to download or install when Automatic Updates is switched off.

Scheduling and Installing Software Updates

Scheduling Software Updates

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press Recurring Schedule.
2. Select the days and time for updates.

The more days that updates are scheduled, the more frequently your vehicle installs new updates when available. We recommend selecting a time you normally do not need your vehicle, such as overnight.

Some updates require your vehicle to be switched off.

Note: The schedule you set is recurring. If Automatic Updates is on, every time a non-drivable update is available, it installs on this schedule unless you change it. You are notified on your touchscreen and connected device prior to a non-drivable update, with an option to reschedule it.

Installing Software Updates

Using the Status Bar

1. Press the Software Update indicator on your touchscreen when it appears.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Using the Touchscreen

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press Update Details.
2. Press Update Now.

Viewing Software Update Details

From the Software Updates menu, Press Update Details.

SOFTWARE UPDATE INDICATORS

You can press the indicators in the status bar when they appear for more information.



Vehicle software update reminder, schedule required, confirmation of default schedule required, or consent required.



Vehicle software update canceled, update not successful, or precondition not met.



Vehicle software update successful.

Vehicle System Reset

PERFORMING A SYSTEM RESET

Make sure you perform a system reset whenever there is a transfer of ownership of the vehicle to prevent the loss of personal data. Performing a system reset allows you to remove all personal information and restore the modem and SYNC to their factory defaults.

In the modem, this deletes all the authorized users, removes access to the connected vehicle via all linked FordPass accounts. In the SYNC system this deletes all data imported from mobile devices connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth® including the addresses manually entered into the navigation system.

Note: *If you are the first owner, your modem comes in partially activated state.*

Note: *If you are not the first owner, it comes in either fully activated, partially activated or deactivated state.*

1. From settings menu, press General. See **Center Display** (page 360).
2. Press Reset.
3. Press Factory Reset.
4. Follow the prompts on the touchscreen to complete the reset.

Your Authorized Dealer

AUTHORIZED DEALER DIRECTORY

Name	Telephone	Address	City
GİZERLER	(322) 346 80 80	Levent Mah. Eski Ceyhan Yolu Üzeri 5. Km No: 210 Yüreğir/ Adana	Adana
OTOKOÇ ADANA	(322) 441 17 17	Mersin Yolu Üzeri 9. Km Sarı Hamzalı Köyü Mevkii Merkez/ Adana	Adana
İNTERTEKS	(416) 227 24 01	Adıyaman Gölbaşı Karayolu Üzeri Küçük Sanayi Sitesi Karşısı Merkez/Adıyaman	Adıyaman
GLS GELİŞİM OTOMOTİV	(382) 245 44 14	Bahçesaray Mahallesi 135. Cadde No: 216 Aksaray	Aksaray
BAŞER	(312) 269 80 00	Ayaş Yolu Çatakkara Sokak No:199 Sincan/Ankara	Ankara
KARTAŞ	(312) 583 85 60	Tevfik İleri Mh. Özal Bulvarı No: 55 Pursaklar/Ankara	Ankara
OTOKOÇ ANKARA	(312) 207 47 00	Eskişehir Yolu 12. Km No:350 Ümitköy/Ankara	Ankara
TAN OTO	(312) 591 34 34	Fatih Sultan Mehmet Bulvarı No:252 Macunköy,Yenima- halle/Ankara	Ankara
BİLALLER	(242) 259 33 70	Sarısu Mah. 121. Sk. No:30/A- B Konyaaltı/Antalya	Antalya
OTOKOÇ ALANYA	(242) 515 13 80	Çevreyolu Üzeri No: 1 Tosmur Beldesi Alanya/Antalya	Antalya
OTOKOÇ ANTALYA	(242) 340 26 85	Altınova Sinan Mah. Havaalanı Yolu Üzeri Merkez/Antalya	Antalya
KAHYAOĞULLARI	(256) 633 10 01	Söke Yolu Üzeri 3. Km Kuşa- dası/Aydın	Aydın
ZAFER	(256) 219 40 00	Aydın-İzmir Karayolu 1.Km (Aymas Bitişiği) Merkez/Aydın	Aydın
AKOTO EDREMİT	(266) 374 06 65	İzmir Yolu Üzeri 2. Km. Ilıcalar Mevkii Edremit/Balıkesir	Balıkesir

Your Authorized Dealer

Name	Telephone	Address	City
AKOTO Merkez	(266) 283 00 10	İzmir Yolu 8. Km Osb Kavşağı Merkez/Balikesir	Balikesir
MUSLUBAŞLAR	(266) 721 21 21	600 Evler Mah. Atatürk Cad. No: 95 Bandırma/Balikesir	Balikesir
OĞUZCAN	(488) 218 02 23	Gültepe Mahallesi Demokrasi Bulvarı No: 401 Merkez/Batman	Batman
OTOKOÇ BURSA	(224) 270 39 00	29 Ekim Mah. İzmir Yolu Cad. No: 380/A Nilüfer/Bursa	Bursa
SÖNMEZ KOÇ	(224) 261 22 44	Yeni Yalova Yolu 9. Km Sönmez Asf. Karşısı Merkez/Bursa	Bursa
ARSLANLAR	(286) 263 06 25	İzmir Yolu 5. Km Merkez/Çanakkale	Çanakkale
EVLÜCE OTO	(364) 235 02 12	Ankara Asfaltı 7. Km Merkez/Çorum	Çorum
YARGÜL	(258) 371 23 79	Akçeşme Mevkii Menderes Bulvarı No: 161 Gümüşler/Denizli	Denizli
DİYARBAKIR OTO	(412) 255 04 45	Şanlıurfa Yolu Üzeri 4 Km Merkez/Diyarbakır	Diyarbakır
GÖRÜR	(380) 537 53 15	Taşköprü Köyü E-5 Mahallesi No: 55 Düzce	Düzce
TUZCULAR	(284) 763 11 23	Ford Plaza İstanbul Yolu 7. Km Merkez/Edirne	Edirne
ÇETİNKAYALAR	(424) 247 40 31	Malatya Yolu 8. Km Baskıl Yol Kavşağı Merkez/Elazığ	Elazığ
CİNDİLLİ OTOMOTİV	(442) 242 00 13	Tortum Yolu Üzeri 3. Km Cindilli Ford Plaza Erzurum	Erzurum
OTOKOÇ ESKİŞEHİR	(222) 335 10 10	Şirintepe Mh. İsmet İnönü 2. Cad. No: 64 Tepebaşı Merkez/Eskişehir	Eskişehir
DOĞANLAR	(342) 323 23 13	Mücahitler Mahallesi Sani Konukoğlu Bulvarı No:28/A Şehitkamil/Gaziantep	Gaziantep

Your Authorized Dealer

Name	Telephone	Address	City
OVALI ANTAKYA	(326) 221 61 65	İskenderun Yolu Üzeri 5. Km Antakya/Hatay	Hatay
OVALI İSKENDERUN	(326) 618 38 38	İsmet İnönü Mah.İbrahim Karaoğlu Cad.No: 38 Hatay/İskenderun	Hatay
SÜRKİT OTOM.	(476) 210 11 38	Söğütlü Mevkii Çevre Yolu Üzeri Ford Plaza Merkez/Iğdır	Iğdır
GÜRSOY	(232) 464 02 50	Merkez Mah. Gazi Mustafa Kemal Bulvarı Blv. Gürsoy Oto. Gürsoy No: 872 Mezitli/Mersin	İçel
ASF	(216) 427 37 47	Soğanlık Yeni Mah. Soğanlık D-100 Kuzey Yanyol Cad. 30 B/Kartal/İstanbul	İstanbul
ATILGAN SANC-AKTEPE	(216) 498 98 00	Veysel Karani Mahallesi, Aşık Reyhani Caddesi No: 14 Sancaktepe/İstanbul	İstanbul
AYDOĞANLAR	(212) 665 84 84	Yenibosna Merkez Mah. Kavak Sokak Ser Plaza No: 3/1-2, Bodrum Kat Bahçelievler/İstanbul	İstanbul
ÇETAŞ B.ÇEKMECE	(212) 863 84 10	Mimarsinan Merkez Mah.E-5 Londra Asfaltı No: 57 B. Çekmece İstanbul	İstanbul
ÇETAŞ MAHMUTBEY	(212) 454 40 00	Göztepe Mah. Rahim Sok. No: 2-4 Bağcılar/İstanbul	İstanbul
GÜRBAŞLAR	(216) 465 33 61	Göztepe Mah. Atatürk Cad. No: 12 Migros karşıısı A.Hisarı/İstanbul	İstanbul
KAR OTOMOTİV	(212) 612 49 49	Defterdar Mah. Fethi Çelebi Cad. No: 23/1 Eyüp/İstanbul	İstanbul
KELEŞLER	(212) 417 39 15	Uluyol Cad. No: 25/A Bayrampaşa/İstanbul	İstanbul
KENT OTOMOTİV	(212) 423 53 00	Saadetdere Mah. 68. Sok. No: 40 Esenyurt/İstanbul	İstanbul
OTOKOÇ İSTANBUL İSTİNYE	(212) 229 95 55	İstinye Mah. Sarıyer Cad. No: 70/C Yeniköy/İstanbul	İstanbul

Your Authorized Dealer

Name	Telephone	Address	City
OTOKOÇ İSTANBUL ATAŞEHİR	(216) 574 38 32	Kayışdağı Cd. No: 3 Flora Plaza Küçükbakkalköy, Ataşehir/İstanbul	İstanbul
OTOKOÇ İSTANBUL TAŞDELEN	(216) 430 12 00	Çamlık Mah. Çobandere Mevkii Sırrı Çelik Bulvarı No: 9A/9B, Şile Otobanı 11. Km Taşdelen, Çekmeköy/İstanbul	İstanbul
TEPRETOĞULLARI	(216) 545 03 33	Acıbadem Mah Köftüncü Sokak No: 1/3 Kadıköy/ İstanbul	İstanbul
ARKAS İZMİR	(232) 399 34 34	Anadolu Cad. No: 687/C Karşıyaka/İzmir Karşıyaka/ İzmir	İzmir
ÇETAŞ İZMİR	(232) 478 07 07	Ankara Cad. Naldöken Mah. No: 319 Bornova/İzmir	İzmir
İZKAR	(232) 254 38 00	Akçay Cad. No: 49 Gaziemir/ İzmir	İzmir
OTOKOÇ İZMİR	(232) 498 90 00	Kazım Dirik Mah. 296. Sokak No: 1 Bornova/İzmir	İzmir
METİNLER	(352) 224 54 54	Konaklar Mevkii Sivas Cad. No: 244 Kayseri	Kayseri
ÜNAL	(352) 311 55 00	Anbar Mahallesi Osman Kavuncu Bulvarı No: 498 Anbar, Melikgazi/Kayseri	Kayseri
ÇANGAR	(392) 227 05 55	Soyak Evleri Mevkii, Küçükkaymaklı Mah. Şehit Mustafa Ruso Cad. Lefkoşe/ Kıbrıs	Kıbrıs
ACAMAR	(262) 606 10 10	Köşklü Çeşme Mah. İstanbul Cad. No:87 41400 Gebze/ Kocaeli	Kocaeli
ESOTO	(262) 335 43 15	Sanayi Mah. D-130 Yanyol Cad. No: 79 Merkez/Kocaeli	Kocaeli
OTOKOÇ KONYA	(332) 255 42 33	İstanbul Yolu Üzeri Sancak Mah. Büyükkırmak Sk. No:1 Selçuklu Merkez/Konya	Konya

Your Authorized Dealer

Name	Telephone	Address	City
ILICAK	(422) 444 59 55	1.OSB Mahallesi Havaalanı Yolu 2.Cadde No: 14/1 Yeşilyurt/MALATYA	Malatya
ÇETAŞ MANİSA	(236) 233 84 00	Güzelyurt Mah. Menemen Cad. No:15/A Manisa	Manisa
ÇETAŞ SALİHLİ	(236) 716 16 00	Ankara Asfaltı 3. km. Salihli/Manisa	Manisa
NAS OTO	(482) 312 04 44	Havaalanı Yanı 47100 Merkez/Mardin	Mardin
HELVACIOĞLU BODRUM	(252) 358 68 38	Açık Kırlar Mevkii Atatürk Bulvarı No: 289 Konacık, Bodrum/Muğla	Muğla
HELVACIOĞLU FETHİYE	(252) 646 57 77	Karaçulha Belediyesi Cumhuriyet Cad. No: 199 Fethiye/Muğla	Muğla
HELVACIOĞLU Merkez	(252) 212 80 00	Orhaniye Mah. Uğur Mumcu Bulvarı No: 17 Merkez/Muğla	Muğla
ALTAŞ	(452) 234 19 20	Cumhuriyet Mah. Mustafa Kemal Bulvarı No:102 Merkez/Ordu	Ordu
ATILGAN RİZE	(464) 226 01 85	Cumhuriyet Çay Fabrikası Karşısı Gündoğdu Rize	Rize
AKGÜN	(264) 276 72 10	Hanlıköy Mahallesi Eskişehir Caddesi No: 93/A Arifiye/Sakarya	Sakarya
OTOKOÇ SAMSUN	(362) 266 61 12	Samsun-Trabzon Karayolu 10. Km Kutlukent Tekkeköy/Samsun	Samsun
KURT	(346) 502 58 58	Yeşilyurt Mah. Sultanşehir Blv. 146 Merkez/Sivas	Sivas
ŞANLIURFA OTO	(414) 316 62 27	Mardin Yolu 3.Km Jandarma Karşısı Merkez/Şanlıurfa	Şanlıurfa
DÖNÜŞÜM	(486) 616 76 16	Nusaybin Yolu Üzeri Cizre Çıkışı 8. Km Habur Tesisleri Yanı Nerme Mevkii Çavuşlu Köyü, Cizre/Şırnak	Şırnak

Your Authorized Dealer

Name	Telephone	Address	City
VOLKAN Çorlu	(282) 685 42 90	E-5 Karayolu Üzeri Önerler Mevkii Mücavir Mah. İstanbul Cad. 43/A, Çorlu/Tekirdağ	Tekirdağ
VOLKAN Tekirdağ	(282) 293 38 82	Hürriyet Mah. Sami Efendi Sok. No:2 Süleymanpaşa/ Tekirdağ	Tekirdağ
ORUÇLAR	(356) 214 41 43	Yeniyurt Mah. Vali Zekai Gümüşdiş Blv. No: 55/A Tokat	Tokat
TUNALAR	(462) 248 12 00	Tunalar Ford Plaza Yıldızlı/ Trabzon	Trabzon
AKKÖPRÜLÜ	(434) 217 17 17	Şabaniye Mah. İpekyolu 4. Km Merkez/Van	Van
ERDEĞER	(226) 351 73 50	Kılıç Köyü Şakşak Mevkii Çift- likköy/Yalova	Yalova
AZİM OTO	(372) 323 98 40	Muammer Aksoy Cad. No: 38 Karadeniz Ereğli/Zonguldak	Zonguldak

Service Intervals

Model	Service Interval (Whichever Occurs First)	
• All passenger cars. • Ranger • Tourneo Connect. • Tourneo Courier. • Transit Connect. • Transit Courier.	1 year	15,000 km (9,500 mi)
• Tourneo Custom. • Transit. • Transit Custom.	1 year	20,000 km (12,500 mi)

Note: *Service intervals may vary depending on engine options. For information about the service interval details of your vehicle, please refer to the local Ford website.*

ROLLOVER WARNING



WARNING: Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.



WARNING: Vehicles with a higher center of gravity (utility and four-wheel drive vehicles) handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity (passenger cars). Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt steering in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously increases the risk of losing control of your vehicle, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



WARNING: In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt.



WARNING: Do not become overconfident in the ability of four-wheel drive vehicles. Although a four-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

Utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than passenger cars in the various driving conditions that are encountered on streets, highways and off-road. Utility vehicles and trucks are not designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions.

THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE COPYRIGHT ACKNOWLEDGMENT

Your vehicle could have components that use open source software. For additional information, visit <http://corporate.ford.com/ford-open-source.html>.

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

Your vehicle could have components that transmit and receive radio waves and are therefore subject to government regulation.

These components must accept any interference received, including interference that could cause undesired operation. For certification labels and declarations of conformity, visit www.wirelessconformity.ford.com.

REACH

We are committed to promoting the responsible manufacturing, handling and use of our products and support the underlying goals of **REACH**, a European Union regulation that concerns the registration, evaluation, authorisation and restriction of chemicals.

We specifically support Regulation EC 1907/2006 Article 33(1) that relates to substances of very high concern which appear on the current list for authorisation.

If these substances do exist in a product, it is important to guarantee their safe use so the regulation is designed to enable you to take any appropriate risk management measures.

Customer Information

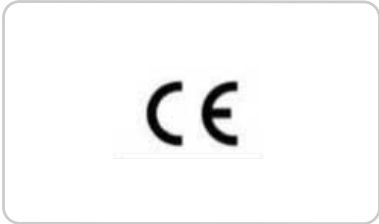
To find out more about the **REACH** directive, search **REACH** on the local Ford website.

Note: To find the local Ford website, visit <https://corporate.ford.com/operations/locations/global-links.html>.

RADIO FREQUENCY CERTIFICATION LABELS

ANTENNA

European Union EU



Ukraine



United Kingdom



BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM SENSORS

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
SRR5 BLIS Corner Radar (RRU2)	Aptiv	2F5TR

Customer Information

Argentina



15375-23-12270

China

CMIT ID: 2023LJ10407

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)

Numéro d'agrément:

040/DDTIC/2024

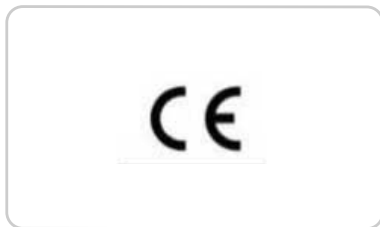
Date d'agrément:

16/04/2024

Brazil



Europe Union EU



Customer Information

Ghana

NCA APPROVED: 7E6-M0-XDF-TME

Indonesia

Sertifikat Nomor: 98785/SDPPI/2024
PLG ID: 13493



Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by
Jamaica: SMA - 2F5TR.

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE

Numéro d'agrément:

1222/ARE/2023

Date d'agrément:

06/02/2023

Mexico

IFT: ROAP2F23-27117

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC

Numéro d'agrément:

MR00036523ANRT2023

Date d'agrément:

30/01/23

Paraguay



NR: 2022-04-I-0255

South Africa



Customer Information

South Korea



R-C-1Ap-2F5TR

Taiwan



CCA123LP0640T2

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)



ER10085/22
United Arab Emirates



United Kingdom



United States and Canada

FCC ID: L2C2F5TR

IC: 3432A-2F5TR

Customer Information

This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and may cause harmful interference to radio communications. There is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, please consult the dealer.

This product is not end-user serviceable.

RF Radiation Exposure Statement: This equipment complies with FCC RF Radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This device and its antenna must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter. This equipment should be installed and operated with a minimum distance of 20cm between the radiator and your body.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

- 1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;*
- 2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.*

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM SENSORS

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
SRR5 BLIS Corner Radar	Aptiv	F5TR

Argentina



Brazil



Customer Information

China

CMIIT ID: 2022LP14250

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéro d'agrément: 195/MCPT/DDTIC
Date d'agrément: 06/09/2021

Ghana

NCA APPROVED: SRO-1M-7E4-X0E

Indonesia

Sertifikat Nomor: 90715/SDPPI/2023
PLG ID: 13493



Europe Union EU



Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – F5TR.

Customer Information

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANEMAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0985/ARE/2021
Date d'agrément : 24/08/2021

Paraguay



Mexico

IFETEL: RCPAPF520-0480

NR: 2020-10-I-0753

Singapore

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR00030033ANRT2021
Date d'agrément : 16/09/2021

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

South Africa



TA-2021/2119

Customer Information

South Korea



Taiwan



United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)



Thailand

- (1) เครื่องใช้ทรงผมและอุปกรณ์นี้ ไม่เหมาะสมต่อสภาพอากาศของ ไทย.
- (2) เครื่องใช้ทรงผมและอุปกรณ์นี้ ไม่เหมาะแก่สภาพอากาศของประเทศไทยซึ่งอากาศร้อนชื้น หรือบริเวณที่มีอุณหภูมิสูงเกินไป อาจทำให้ผมร่วงหรือเกิดอาการคันศีรษะได้

Ukraine



Customer Information

United Kingdom



This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

L'émetteur/récepteur exempt de licence contenu dans le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Note: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Nota: Tout changement apporté au dispositif sans l'approbation expresse des autorités compétentes pourrait révoquer le droit de l'utilisateur d'en faire usage.

United States and Canada

FCC ID: L2CF5TR

IC: 3432A-F5TR

Vietnam



Customer Information

PHONE AS A KEY

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Bluetooth Low Energy Module	Denso	S2NA1

China

IC: 26851-S2NA1

CMIIT ID: 2022DJ5980

United States and Canada

FCC ID: 2AYGPS2NA1

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- 1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- 2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

L'émetteur/récepteur exempt de licence contenu dans le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

- 1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
- 2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Note: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Nota: Tout changement apporté au dispositif sans l'approbation expresse des autorités compétentes pourrait révoquer le droit de l'utilisateur d'en faire usage.

BODY CONTROL MODULE

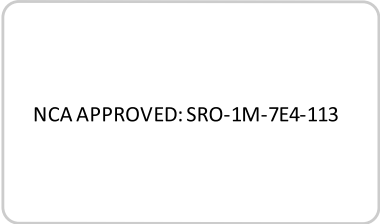
Device	Supplier	Type Designation
D2 Bosch BCM	Bosch	P004
		P005
		P006

Customer Information

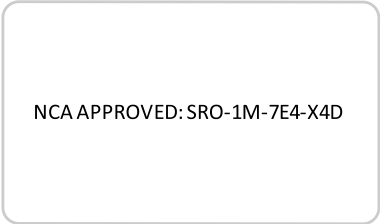
Argentina



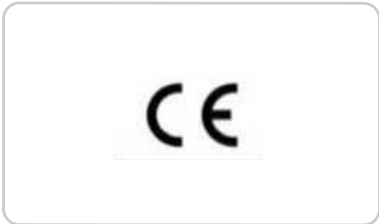
Ghana



Brazil



European Union EU



Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה מסמך משרד התקשורת: 51-72602
2. חל אישור לבצע פעולות כמכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלקטרוניות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעות אלקטרוניות.

Customer Information

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica:
SMA – P004R.

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0768/ARE/2020
Date d'agrément : 11/03/2020

Moldova

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica:
SMA – P004.



Morocco

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA - P005

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0801/ARE/2020
Date d'agrément : 03/06/2020

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 24200 ANRT 2020
Date d'agrément : 27/05/2020

Customer Information

Singapore

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 23513 ANRT 2020
Date d'agrément : 24/03/2020

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

Paraguay



South Africa



2020-07-I-0405

2021-01-0037

Serbia



V011 20

South Korea



R-R-175-P005

Customer Information

Taiwan



CCAB20LP1130T4



CCAB20LP1140T7



CCAB20LP1150T0



CCAB20LP1160T0

Ukraine



UA.TR.028

United Kingdom



United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA

REGISTERED NO: ER81344/20

DEALER NO: DA88113/20

Customer Information

TRA
REGISTERED NO: ER80748/20
DEALER NO: DA83047/19

TRA
REGISTERED NO: ER81343/20
DEALER NO: DA88113/20

United States and Canada

FCC ID: LXPP004

FCC ID: LXPP006

IC: 2298A-P004

IC ID: 2298A-P006

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

L'émetteur/récepteur exempt de licence contenu dans le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Note: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Nota: Tout changement apporté au dispositif sans l'approbation expresse des autorités compétentes pourrait révoquer le droit de l'utilisateur d'en faire usage.

Customer Information

Zambia



CRUISE CONTROL MODULE

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
MRR3 Medium Range Radar	Aptiv	F3TR

Argentina



Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéro d'agrément : 059/DDTIC/2020
Date d'agrément : 01/10/2020

Brazil

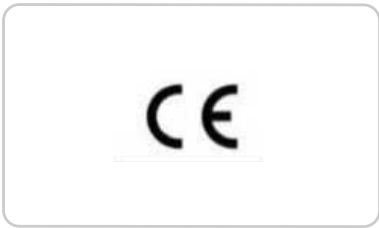


EAC Marking - Russia, Belarus, Kazakhstan



Customer Information

Europe Union



Indonesia

Sertifikat Nomor: 90714/SDPPI/2023
PLG ID: 13493

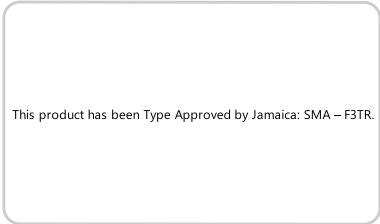


Israel

Ghana



Jamaica



Independent State Of Samoa



Customer Information

Malaysia



HIDF16000009

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANEMAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0835/ARE/2020
Date d'agrément : 31/08/2020

Mexico

IFT: RCPAPF320-0479

Moldova



Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC

Numéro d'agrément:
MR00030034ANRT2021

Date d'agrément: 16/09/2021

Pakistan



Customer Information

Paraguay

TAN: 2021-002-0028



Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

NR: 2020-10-I-0752

Sierra Leone



South Africa



South Korea



R-C-1Ap-F3TR

Customer Information

Taiwan



Ukraine



Thailand

- (1)เครื่องโทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์นี้ มีความสอดคล้องตามข้อกำหนดของ กทท.
- (2)เครื่องโทรคมนาคมนี้ระดับการแผ่คลื่นแม่เหล็กไฟฟ้าสอดคล้องตามมาตรฐานความปลอดภัยต่อสุขภาพของมนุษย์
จากการใช้เครื่องโทรคมนาคมที่คณะกรรมการกิจการโทรคมนาคมแห่งชาติประกาศกำหนด

United Arab Emirates



Customer Information

United Kingdom



This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

L'émetteur/récepteur exempt de licence contenu dans le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Note: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Nota: Tout changement apporté au dispositif sans l'approbation expresse des autorités compétentes pourrait révoquer le droit de l'utilisateur d'en faire usage.

Zambia



Customer Information

PASSIVE KEY

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Passive Key Transmitter	Continental	A3C108397

Argentina

(RAMATEL Isologotype)

(RAMATEL Isologotype)



RAMATEL
H-28042

RAMATEL
H-28042

RAMATEL H-28042

(RAMATEL Isotype)



H-28042

H-28042



RAMATEL
H-29612

RAMATEL
H-29612

RAMATEL H-29612

(RAMATEL Isotype)



H-29612

H-29612

(RAMATEL Isologotype)



RAMATEL
H-30147

RAMATEL
H-30147

RAMATEL H-30417

(RAMATEL Isotype)



H-30147

H-30147

Customer Information

Brazil



03184-23-06546

Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמת מסעם משרד התקשורת: 51-85634
2. חל אישור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלקטרוניות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תכונה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, כשל הושהו לזכירתם אלקטרונית.

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by
Jamaica: SMA – M3N-A3C108397

Paraguay



NR: 2022-03-I-0162

Serbia



Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

Dealer License Number:

DA 00461

South Africa



Taiwan



CCAB22LP1030T3

Customer Information

Thailand

- (1) เครื่องใช้ที่รถพัฒนาและอุปกรณ์นี้ มีความสอดคล้องตามข้อกำหนดของ กททช.
- (2) เครื่องใช้ที่รถพัฒนาและอุปกรณ์นี้ได้รับการแก้ไขข้อบกพร่องที่พบในรถพัฒนาแล้ว และรถพัฒนาแล้วจะปลอดภัยต่อสุขภาพของมนุษย์จากการใช้ หรือใช้ที่รถพัฒนาและอุปกรณ์นี้ตามที่รถพัฒนาและอุปกรณ์นี้ได้รับการแก้ไขข้อบกพร่องที่พบในรถพัฒนาแล้ว

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)



ER08930/22
United Arab Emirates



United Kingdom



United States and Canada

FCC ID: M3N-A3C108397

IC ID: 7812A-A3C108397

Customer Information

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

L'émetteur/récepteur exempt de licence contenu dans le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Note: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Nota: Tout changement apporté au dispositif sans l'approbation expresse des autorités compétentes pourrait révoquer le droit de l'utilisateur d'en faire usage.

SYNC

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
SYNC	Ford	SYNC-G4 SYNC-G4L

Argentina



Customer Information

Brazil



08657-19-01505

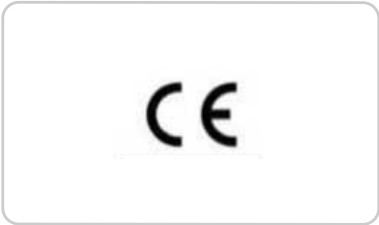
AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéro d'agrément : 125/DDTIC/2019
Date d'agrément : 07/08/2019

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção
contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar
interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.

European Union EU



08658-19-01505



Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção
contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar
interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.

Ghana

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéro d'agrément : 124/DDTIC/2019
Date d'agrément : 07/08/2019

NCA APPROVED: ZRO-1H-7E3-182

NCA APPROVED: ZRO-1H-7E3-180

Customer Information

Indonesia

Model: SYNC-G4
Sertifikat Nomor: 80700/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493



This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – SYNC-G4L

Malaysia

Model: SYNC-G4L
Sertifikat Nomor: 81116/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493



Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by
Jamaica: SMA – SYNC-G4.

HIDF16000009

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0692/ARE/2018
Date d'agrément : 08/08/2019

Customer Information

AGREE PAR L'ANEMAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0691/ARE/2018
Date d'agrément : 08/08/2019

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
N° D'AGRÉMENT: MR 20606 ANRT 2019
07 AOÛT 2019

Moldova



Pakistan



Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
N° D'AGRÉMENT: MR 20608 ANRT 2019
07 AOÛT 2019

Paraguay



2020-03-I-00192

2020-03-I-00193

Customer Information

Serbia



W005 20

TA-2019/2466



Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

South Korea



MSIP-R-C-FDM-SYNCG4

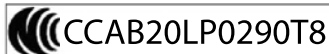


MSIP-R-C-FDM-SYNCG4L

South Africa



Taiwan



Customer Information

Ukraine



CCAB20LP0300T1



UA.TR.028

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TDR

ER74903/19
United Arab Emirates



TDR

ER74902/19
United Arab Emirates



Customer Information

United Kingdom



This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

United States and Canada



WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: KMH-SYNCG4

FCC ID: KMH-SYNCG4L

IC: 1422A-SYNCG4

IC: 1422A-SYNCG4L

Zambia



TELEMATICS CONTROL UNIT

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Telematics Control Unit	Ford	FB5-TCU

Customer Information

Argentina

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL
DE COMUNICACIONES

C-28150

Malaysia



HIDF16000009

Brazil

 **ANATEL**
Agência Nacional de Telecomunicações
11807-21-01505

Mexico



Europe Union EU

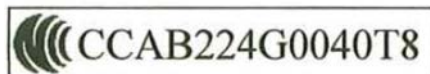


Customer Information

South Africa



Taiwan



We recommend that the distance between the antenna of the telematics control unit and the user be greater than 35 cm (14 in) when using the telematics control unit.

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)



United Kingdom



United States and Canada

FCC ID: KMH-14H074-NA1

IC: 1422A-14H074NA1

Customer Information

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

L'émetteur/récepteur exempt de licence contenu dans le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Note: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Nota: Tout changement apporté au dispositif sans l'approbation expresse des autorités compétentes pourrait révoquer le droit de l'utilisateur d'en faire usage.

Vietnam



TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM SENSORS

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Burnell TPM Sensor	Schrader/Sensata	BG2BP4

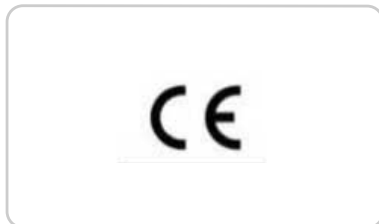
Customer Information

Argentina

13309-22-08001



European Union EU



CNC ID: H-28035

Brazil



The RED 2014/53/EU (replacing R&TTE Directive 1999/5/EC on 13 June 2016) explicitly states that instructions for intentional radiators include reference to "(a) frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates; and (b) maximum radio-frequency power transmitted in the frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates," in addition to carrying over the general operational instruction and Declaration of Conformity inclusion requirements from the R&TTE Directive.

Hereby, Schrader Electronics Ltd. declares that the radio equipment type BG2BP4 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:

<https://www.schradertpms.com/en-gb/downloads>

Customer Information

f=433.92MHz
P<10mW (e.i.r.p)

Schrader Electronics Ltd. 11 Technology Park, Belfast Road, Antrim BT41 1QS, Northern Ireland United Kingdom.

Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה מסעם משרד התקשורת: 51-86230
2. חל אישור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלקטרוניות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעות אלקטרוניות.

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA - BG2BP4.

Malaysia



HIDF16000009

Mexico

IFT: RLVSCBG22-2502

Moldova



Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC

Numéro d'agrément:
MR00034968ANRT2022

Date d'agrément: 21/12/2022

Paraguay

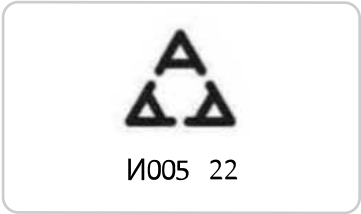


Customer Information

NR: 2022-05-I-0000331

South Korea

Serbia



MSIP-R-C-SRD-BG2BP4

Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards
DA 00461

Taiwan



CCAB22LP0730T0

Thailand

South Africa



- (1) เพื่อแจ้งให้ทราบถึงสถานะการขึ้นทะเบียนผลิตภัณฑ์ของประเทศไทย.
- (2) เพื่อแจ้งให้ทราบถึงสถานะการขึ้นทะเบียนผลิตภัณฑ์ของประเทศไทย.

Customer Information

Ukraine



Unites Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)



United Kingdom



United States and Canada

FCC ID: MRXBG2BP4
IC: 2546A-BG2BP4

Customer Information

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

L'émetteur/récepteur exempt de licence contenu dans le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Note: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Nota: Tout changement apporté au dispositif sans l'approbation expresse des autorités compétentes pourrait révoquer le droit de l'utilisateur d'en faire usage.

WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGING MODULE

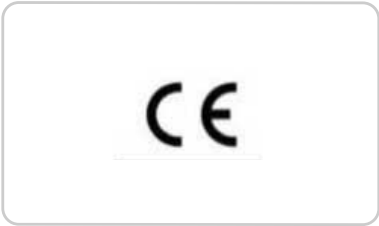
Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Wireless Charger (WCM)	LG/BH EVS	WCFDM00N2A1
		WCFDM00N2A3
		WCFDM00N2A5

Argentina



Customer Information

European Union



Brazil



Ghana

NCA APPROVED: 7ES-7M-XB1-RDR

Democratic Republic of Congo

Agréé par l'ARPTC
N° d'homologation: HER-062/Avril/2023
Date d'homologation: 28/4/2023

Indonesia

Model: WCFDM00N2A1
Sertifikat Nomor: 80110/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493



Customer Information

Model: WCFDM00N2A3
Sertifikat Nomor: 80111/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493



1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת: 51-80015
2. חל אישור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תכונה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעת אלחוטיות

Model: WCFDM00N2A5
Sertifikat Nomor: 80112/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493



1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת: 51-80013
2. חל אישור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תכונה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעת אלחוטיות

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica:
SMA - WCFDM00N2A.

Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת: 51-80014
2. חל אישור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תכונה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעת אלחוטיות

Malaysia



Customer Information

HIDFI6000009

Moldova



Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0935/ARE/2021
Date d'agrément : 23/03/2021

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 00027924ANRT 2021
Date d'agrément : 25/03/2021

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0934/ARE/2021
Date d'agrément : 23/03/2021

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 00027925ANRT 2021
Date d'agrément : 25/03/2021

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0933/ARE/2021
Date d'agrément : 23/03/2021

Customer Information

Serbia

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 00027923ANRT 2021
Date d'agrément : 25/03/2021



W005 21

Paraguay



NR: 2021-04-I-0202

NR: 2021-04-I-0203

NR: 2021-04-I-0204

Sierra Leone



TAN: 2021-002-0099

Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

Russia



Customer Information

South Africa



South Korea



R-R-LGE-WCFDM00N2A1

Taiwan



CCAB21LP050AT3



CCAB21LP0500T1



CCAB21LP050BT5

品名 (Product name): 無線充電座

型號 (Type Designation): WCFDM00N2A1, WCFDM00N2A3, WCFDM00N2A5 **產地 (Origin):** 馬來西亞

額定電壓 (Input rating): 12V

製造日期 (Approval date): 2021.04.21



R43208
Rolls

申請廠商名稱 (Approval name): 福特六和汽車股份有限公司

申請廠商地址 (Approval address): 桃園市中壢區中華路一段705號

Customer Information

Ukraine



United Kingdom



United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)



Customer Information



ER00421/21
United Arab Emirates



United States and Canada

IC: 2703H-WCFDM00N2A

FCC ID: BEJWCFDM00N2A

This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and may cause harmful interference to radio communications. There is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, please consult the dealer.

This product is not end-user serviceable.

RF Radiation Exposure Statement: This equipment complies with FCC RF Radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This device and its antenna must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter. This equipment should be installed and operated with a minimum distance of 20cm between the radiator and your body.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

1. *L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;*
2. *L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.*

Customer Information

Vietnam



Zambia



REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual.

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents happen sometimes.

Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty.

The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts.

For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

ECALL USER INFORMATION

eCall User Information According to Regulation (EU) 2017/78, Annex I, Part 3

1 DESCRIPTION OF THE ECALL IN-VEHICLE SYSTEM

- 1.1. Overview of the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system, its operation and functionalities: See **What Is eCall** (page 46).
- 1.2. The 112-based eCall service is a public service of general interest and is accessible free of charge.
- 1.3. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is activated by default. It is activated automatically by means of in-vehicle sensors in the event of a severe accident. It will also be triggered automatically when the vehicle is equipped with a TPS system which does not function in the event of a severe accident.
- 1.4. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system can also be triggered manually, if needed. Instructions for manual activation of the system: See **Manually Making an Emergency Call** (page 46).
- 1.5. In the event of a critical system failure that would disable the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system, the following warning will be given to the occupants of the vehicle: See **Emergency Call Indicators** (page 47).

2 INFORMATION ON DATA PROCESSING

- 2.1. Any processing of personal data through the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system shall comply with the personal data protection rules provided for in Directives 95/46/EC (1) and 2002/58/EC (2) of the European Parliament and of the Council, and in particular, shall be based on the necessity to protect the vital interests of the individuals in accordance with Article 7(d) of Directive 95/46/EC (3).
- 2.2. Processing of such data is strictly limited to the purpose of handling the emergency eCall to the single European emergency number 112.
- 2.3. Types of data and its recipients.
- 2.3.1. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system may collect and process only the following data:
 - Vehicle Identification Number.
 - Vehicle type (passenger vehicle or light commercial vehicle).
 - Vehicle propulsion storage type (gasoline/diesel/CNG/LPG/electric/hydrogen).
 - Vehicle last three locations and direction of travel.
 - Log file of the automatic activation of the system and its timestamp.
 - Any additional data (if applicable): See **Emergency Call System Data** (page 22).
- 2.3.2. Recipients of data processed by the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system are the relevant public safety answering points designated by the respective public authorities of the country on which territory they are located, to first receive and handle eCalls to the single European emergency number 112.
Additional information (if available): -
- 2.4. Arrangements for data processing.
- 2.4.1. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that the data contained in the system memory is not available outside the system before an eCall is triggered.
Additional remarks (if any): -
- 2.4.2. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that it is not traceable and not subject to any constant tracking in its normal operation status.
Additional remarks (if any): -
- 2.4.3. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that data in the system internal memory is automatically and continuously removed.

Customer Information

- 2.4.3.1. The vehicle location data is constantly overwritten in the internal memory of the system so as always to keep maximum of the last three up-to-date locations of the vehicle necessary for the normal functioning of the system.
- 2.4.3.2. The log of activity data in the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is kept for no longer than necessary for attaining the purpose of handling the emergency eCall and in any case not beyond 13 hours from the moment an emergency eCall was initiated.
Additional remarks (if any): -
- 2.5. Modalities for exercising data subject's rights.
- 2.5.1. The data subject (the vehicle's owner) has a right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure or blocking of data, concerning him or her, the processing of which does not comply with the provisions of Directive 95/46/EC. Any third parties to whom the data have been disclosed have to be notified of such rectification, erasure or blocking carried out in compliance with this Directive, unless it proves impossible or involves a disproportionate effort.
- 2.5.2. The data subject has a right to complain to the competent data protection authority if he or she considers that his or her rights have been infringed as a result of the processing of his or her personal data.
- 2.5.3. Contact service responsible for handling access requests (if any): Contact the data protection officer of your local Public Safety Answering Point.
- (1) Directive 95/46/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 24 October 1995 on the protection of individuals with regard to the processing of personal data and on the free movement of such data (OJ L 281, 23.11.1995, p. 31).
- (2) Directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 12 July 2002 concerning the processing of personal data and the protection of privacy in the electronic communications sector (Directive on privacy and electronic communications) (OJ L 201, 31.7.2002, p. 37).
- (3) Directive 95/46/EC is repealed by Regulation (EU) 2016/679 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 27 April 2016 on the protection of natural persons with regard to the processing of personal data and on the free movement of such data (General Data Protection Regulation) (OJ L 119, 4.5.2016, p. 1). The Regulation applies from 25 May 2018.

Customer Information

3 INFORMATION ON THIRD PARTY SERVICES AND OTHER ADDED VALUE SERVICES (IF FITTED)

- 3.1. Description of the operation and the functionalities of the TPS system/added value service: Your vehicle may be equipped with a modem that allows for emergency calls (eCall), automatic software updates and other services. See the information in this Owner's Manual or in the FordPass app for a description of these services. We provide a 112-based eCall in-vehicle system and we do not provide a TPS eCall system.
- 3.2. Any processing of personal data through the TPS system/other added value service shall comply with the personal data protection rules provided for in Directives 95/46/EC and 2002/58/EC.
- 3.2.1. Legal basis for the use of TPS system and/or added value services and for processing data through them: For information on the legal bases for processing of personal data through added value services, review the data privacy information for any services to which you subscribe. This privacy information can be found in the FordPass app or on the local Ford website.
- 3.3. The TPS system and/or other added value services shall process personal data only on the base of the explicit consent of the data subject (the vehicle's owner or owners).
- 3.4. Modalities for data processing through TPS system and/or other added value services, including any necessary additional information regarding traceability, tracking and processing of personal data: See the privacy information in the FordPass app or on the local Ford website.
- 3.5. The owner of a vehicle equipped with a TPS eCall system and/or other added value service in addition to the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system has the right to choose to use the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system rather than the TPS eCall system and the other added value service.
- 3.5.1. Contact details for handling TPS eCall system deactivation requests: You can have all added value services deactivated except for eCall. To find out more about having all added value services deactivated except for eCall, search Ask Ford on the local Ford website or contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center by e-mail through the FordPass app or by using the e-mail address on the local Ford website.

Customer Information

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)

- You ("You" or "Your" as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC ® and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).

GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE: This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

Description of Other Rights and Limitations.

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

Customer Information

- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components"). SOFTWARE updates may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

Customer Information

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated with the use of the DEVICES.

UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA:

If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS:

All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

EXPORT RESTRICTIONS: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

Customer Information

TRADEMARKS: This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.

PRODUCT SUPPORT: Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.

No Liability for Certain Damages: EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide".) Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.

General Operation

- **Voice Command Control:** Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.
- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.
- **Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.
- **Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.
- **Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a

Customer Information

substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

- **Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
- **Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.
- **Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of Risk

- You agree to each of the following: (a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances; (b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances; (c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service. (d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (i) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather, financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.
- When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.

Customer Information

Disclaimer of Warranty

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE", WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL

CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU. THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE. TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET SHALL CONTROL.

Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE. Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws. Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan. You hereby consent to submit to the personal jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.

Customer Information

Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver

(a) Application. This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

(b) Notice of Dispute. In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested. You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent. After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

(c) Small claims court. You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court. You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

(d) Binding arbitration. If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration. You are giving up

the right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

(e) Class action waiver. Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

(f) Arbitration procedure. Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the "AAA"), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is \$75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a dispute involving \$10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see adr.org or call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business. The arbitrator

Customer Information

may award the same damages to you individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to you individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy your individual claim.

(g) Arbitration fees and incentives.

- I. Disputes involving \$75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed ("last written offer"), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator's decision (called an "award"), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or \$1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney's fees, if any; and (3) reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.
- ii. Disputes involving more than \$75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator's fees and expenses, or Your filing fees it reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all

filing, AAA, and arbitrator's fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney's fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.

(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year. To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.

(i) Severability. If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.

AT&T Vehicle Network Carrier Telematics Disclosure

END USER FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION MEANS YOU AND YOUR HEIRS, EXECUTORS, LEGAL PERSONAL REPRESENTATIVES AND PERMITTED ASSIGNS. FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION "UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER" INCLUDES ITS AFFILIATES AND CONTRACTORS AND THEIR RESPECTIVE OFFICERS, DIRECTORS, EMPLOYEES, SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS. END USER HAS NO CONTRACTUAL RELATIONSHIP WITH THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND END USER IS NOT A THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY OF ANY AGREEMENT BETWEEN FORD AND

Customer Information

UNDERLYING CARRIER. END USER UNDERSTANDS AND AGREES THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HAS NO LEGAL, EQUITABLE, OR OTHER LIABILITY OF ANY KIND TO END USER. IN ANY EVENT, REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF THE ACTION, WHETHER FOR BREACH OF CONTRACT, WARRANTY, NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY IN TORT OR OTHERWISE, END USER'S EXCLUSIVE REMEDY FOR CLAIMS ARISING IN ANY WAY IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT, FOR ANY CAUSE WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY FAILURE OR DISRUPTION OF SERVICE PROVIDED HEREUNDER, IS LIMITED TO PAYMENT OF DAMAGES IN AN AMOUNT NOT TO EXCEED THE AMOUNT PAID BY END USER FOR THE SERVICES DURING THE TWO-MONTH PERIOD PRECEDING THE DATE THE CLAIM AROSE.

(ii) END USER AGREES TO INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND ITS OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, AND AGENTS AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION CLAIMS FOR LIBEL, SLANDER, OR ANY PROPERTY DAMAGE, PERSONAL INJURY OR DEATH, ARISING IN ANY WAY, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT OR THE USE, FAILURE TO USE, OR INABILITY TO USE THE DEVICE EXCEPT WHERE THE CLAIMS RESULT FROM THE UNDERLYING CARRIER'S GROSS NEGLIGENCE OR WILLFUL MISCONDUCT. THIS INDEMNITY WILL SURVIVE THE TERMINATION OF THE AGREEMENT.

(iii) END USER HAS NO PROPERTY RIGHT IN ANY NUMBER ASSIGNED TO THE DEVICE.

(iv) END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT FORD AND THE UNDERLYING CARRIER CANNOT GUARANTEE THE SECURITY OF WIRELESS TRANSMISSIONS, AND WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LACK OF SECURITY RELATING TO THE USE OF THE SERVICES

THE SERVICE IS FOR [END USER'S] USE ONLY AND END USER MAY NOT RESELL THE SERVICE TO ANY OTHER PARTY. END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT GUARANTEE ANY END USER UNINTERRUPTED SERVICE OR COVERAGE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT WARRANT THAT END USERS CAN OR WILL BE LOCATED USING THE SERVICE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER MAKES NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SUITABILITY, OR PERFORMANCE REGARDING ANY SERVICES OR GOODS, AND IN NO EVENT SHALL AT&T BE LIABLE, WHETHER OR NOT DUE TO ITS OWN NEGLIGENCE, FOR ANY: (A) ACT OR OMISSION OF A THIRD PARTY; (B) MISTAKES, OMISSIONS, INTERRUPTIONS, ERRORS, FAILURES TO TRANSMIT, DELAYS, OR DEFECTS IN THE SERVICE PROVIDED BY OR THROUGH THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; (C) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY SUSPENSION OR TERMINATION BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; OR (D) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY A FAILURE OR DELAY IN CONNECTING A CALL TO ANY ENTITY, INCLUDING 911 OR ANY OTHER EMERGENCY SERVICE. TO THE FULL EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, THE END USER RELEASES, INDEMNIFIES AND HOLDS THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HARMLESS FROM AND AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS OF ANY PERSON OR ENTITY FOR DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM OR RELATING TO, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, SERVICES

Customer Information

PROVIDED BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER OR ANY PERSON'S USE THEREOF, INCLUDING CLAIMS ARISING IN WHOLE OR IN PART FROM THE ALLEGED NEGLIGENCE OF THE UNDERLYING CARRIER.

VII. China Territory

Personal Use Only

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i) view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer

devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

Limited Warranty

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

Customer Remedies

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

No Other Warranty:

EXCEPT FOR THE LIMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE,

Customer Information

MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Limited Liability:

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2'S OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Export Control

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

IP Protection

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

Entire Agreement

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2 (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law.

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

Gracenote® Copyright

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6,240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

Customer Information

Gracenote and CDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers ("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content"), Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide, including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at www.gracenote.com for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO

Customer Information

WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracenote 2007.

Taiwan Territory

According to the "Technical Specifications for Low Power Radio Frequency Equipment" formulated by the National Communications and Communication Committee of the Executive Yuan: 3.8.2. For the low-power radio frequency equipment that has obtained the verification certificate, the company, firm or user shall not change the frequency, increase the power or change the characteristics and functions of the original design without authorization.

The use of low-power radio frequency equipment must not affect flight safety and interfere with legal communications: when the system detects interference, immediately stop using it until there is no interference.

The aforementioned legal communication refers to the wireless communication operated in accordance with the provisions of the Telecommunications Management Law. Low-power radio frequency equipment needs to endure the interference of legal communication or industrial, scientific and medical radio wave radiation electrical equipment.

SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intelmatics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult:

Website
www.sunatrafic.com.au/termsandconditions/

1. Acceptance

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at:

Customer Information

Website
www.sunattraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/

2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intelematics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

3. Appropriate Use

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

You, and other authorized drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavors to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

6. Limitation of Liability

Neither Intelematics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the “**Suppliers**”)) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or Services even if Intelematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that neither Intelematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products and/or Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

7. Please Note

Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

Appendices

ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY



WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front or rear seatbacks, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

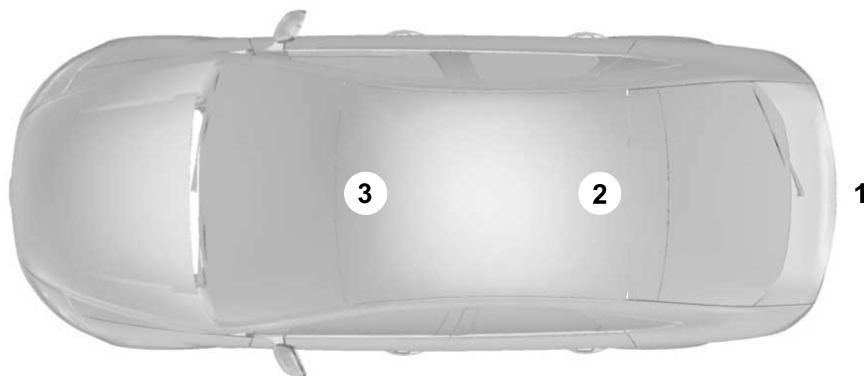


WARNING: Keep antenna and power cables at least 10 cm (4 in) from any electronic modules and airbags.

Note: We test and certify your vehicle to meet electromagnetic compatibility legislation. It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment an authorized dealer installs on your vehicle complies with applicable local legislation and other requirements. Installation of some aftermarket electronic devices could degrade the performance of vehicle functions, which use radio frequency signals such as broadcast radio receiver, tire pressure monitoring system, push button start, **Bluetooth®** connectivity or satellite navigation.

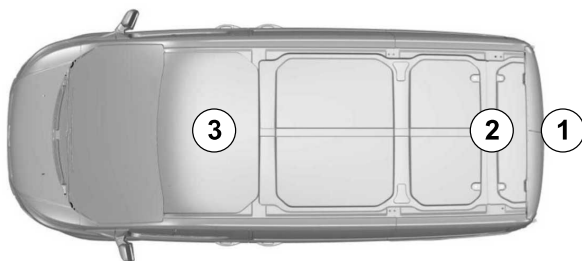
Note: Any radio frequency transmitter equipment in your vehicle, such as, cellular telephones and amateur radio transmitters, must keep to the parameters in the following illustrations and table. We do not provide any other special provisions or conditions for installations or use.

Car

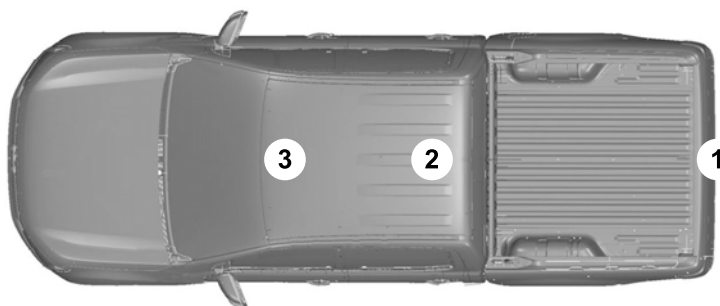


Appendices

Van



Truck



Appendices

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum Output Power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
1-30	50	1
50-54	50	2, 3
68-88	50	2, 3
142-176	50	2, 3
380-512	50	2, 3
806-870	10	2, 3

Index

1

12V Battery.....	306
Changing the 12V Battery.....	306
Charging the 12V Battery.....	306
12V Battery – Troubleshooting.....	307
12V Battery – Information Messages.....	307
12V Battery – Warning Lamps.....	307

3

360 Degree Camera.....	198
360 Degree Camera Settings.....	199
360 Degree Camera Guide Lines.....	198
360 Degree Camera Precautions.....	198
360 Degree Camera Settings.....	199
Switching the 360 Degree Camera On and Off.....	199
Switching the 360 Degree Camera View.....	200

A

A/C

See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC).....	109
--	-----

About This Publication.....	13
-----------------------------	----

ABS.....	
----------	--

See: Brakes.....	171
------------------	-----

Accessing Navigation.....	375
---------------------------	-----

Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position.....	135
--	-----

Accessing the Trip Computer.....	107
----------------------------------	-----

AC Charging.....	149
------------------	-----

Charging at Home.....	149
-----------------------	-----

Charging in Public.....	151
-------------------------	-----

Charging Using Your Public Charge Cord.....	153
---	-----

Adaptive Cruise Control.....	201
------------------------------	-----

Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting.....	214
--	-----

Lane Centering.....	208
---------------------	-----

Lane Centering – Troubleshooting.....	211
---------------------------------------	-----

Predictive Speed Assist.....	212
------------------------------	-----

Predictive Speed Assist – Troubleshooting.....	214
--	-----

Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation.....	204
---	-----

Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators.....	208
---	-----

Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations.....	201
--	-----

Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions.....	201
--	-----

Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting.....	214
--	-----

Adaptive Cruise Control – Information Messages.....	214
---	-----

Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors.....	101
-------------------------------------	-----

Adjusting the Headlamps.....	307
------------------------------	-----

Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting Brightness.....	96
---	----

Adjusting the Luggage Compartment Load Floor.....	270
---	-----

Adjusting the Map.....	375
------------------------	-----

Changing the Format of the Map.....	375
-------------------------------------	-----

Zooming the Map In and Out.....	375
---------------------------------	-----

Adjusting the Seatbelt Height.....	36
------------------------------------	----

Adjusting the Seatbelts During Pregnancy.....	35
---	----

Adjusting the Sound Settings.....	357
-----------------------------------	-----

Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....	79
-----------------------------------	----

Adjusting the Volume.....	356
---------------------------	-----

Aid Mode.....	233
---------------	-----

How Does Aid Mode Work.....	233
-----------------------------	-----

What Is Aid Mode.....	233
-----------------------	-----

Airbag Precautions.....	40
-------------------------	----

Airbags.....	38
--------------	----

Airbags – Troubleshooting.....	42
--------------------------------	----

Airbags – Troubleshooting.....	42
--------------------------------	----

Airbags – Audible Warnings.....	42
---------------------------------	----

Airbags – Warning Lamps.....	42
------------------------------	----

Air Conditioning.....	
-----------------------	--

See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC).....	109
--	-----

Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification.....	312
---	-----

Air Conditioning System Refrigerant.....	112
--	-----

Alert and Aid Mode.....	234
-------------------------	-----

How Does Alert and Aid Mode Work.....	234
---------------------------------------	-----

What Is Alert and Aid Mode.....	234
---------------------------------	-----

Alexa Built-In.....	365
---------------------	-----

Index

Alexa Built-In Requirements.....	365	Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror.....	100
Alexa Built-In Settings.....	365	Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror	
All-Wheel Drive.....	170	Limitations.....	100
All-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting.....	170	What Is the Auto-Dimming Interior	
All-Wheel Drive Limitations.....	170	Mirror.....	100
All-Wheel Drive Precautions.....	170	Auto Hold.....	182
All-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting.....	170	Auto Hold Indicators.....	182
All-Wheel Drive – Information		Autolamps.....	87
Messages.....	170	Autolamp Settings.....	87
Ambient Lighting.....	96	What Are Autolamps.....	87
Adjusting Ambient Lighting.....	96	Autolock.....	57
Switching Ambient Lighting On and		Autolock Requirements.....	57
Off.....	96	What Is Autolock.....	57
Anti-Lock Braking System.....	171	Automatically Releasing the Electric	
Anti-Lock Braking System Limitations.....	171	Parking Brake.....	174
Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	75	Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	288
Arming the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	76	Re-Enabling Your Vehicle.....	288
Disarming the Anti-Theft Alarm		What Is Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	288
System.....	76	Automatic Emergency Braking.....	254
How Does the Anti-Theft Alarm System		Switching Automatic Emergency Braking	
Work.....	75	On and Off.....	254
What Are the Inclination Sensors.....	76	What Is Automatic Emergency	
What Are the Interior Sensors.....	75	Braking.....	254
What Is the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	75	Automatic High Beam Control.....	89
What Is the Battery Backup Alarm.....	76	Automatic High Beam Control	
What Is the Perimeter Alarm.....	75	Indicators.....	91
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings.....	76	Automatic High Beam Control	
Setting the Alarm Security Level.....	76	Limitations.....	90
Switching Ask on Exit On and Off.....	76	Automatic High Beam Control	
What are the Alarm Security Levels.....	76	Precautions.....	90
What Is Ask on Exit.....	76	Automatic High Beam Control	
Appendices.....	454	Requirements.....	90
Applying the Electric Parking Brake.....	174	How Does Automatic High Beam Control	
Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an		Work.....	89
Emergency.....	174	Overriding Automatic High Beam	
Approach Detection		Control.....	91
See: Switching Welcome Lighting On and		Switching Automatic High Beam Control	
Off.....	89	On and Off.....	91
Audio System.....	356	Automatic High Beam Control –	
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio.....	358	Troubleshooting.....	91
FM Radio.....	357	Automatic High Beam Control –	
Traffic Announcements.....	359	Information Messages.....	91
Audio System Precautions.....	356	Auto Mode.....	111
Authorized Dealer Directory.....	381	Switching Auto Mode On and Off.....	111
Auto-Dimming Exterior Mirror.....	102	Switching Dual Mode On and Off.....	111
What Is the Auto-Dimming Exterior		Autounlock.....	57
Mirror.....	102	Autounlock Requirements.....	57
		What Is Autounlock.....	57

Index

Autowipers.....	81	Bluetooth®.....	372
Adjusting the Sensitivity of the Rain		Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	299
Sensor.....	81	Accessing the Body Control Module Fuse	
Autowipers Settings.....	81	Box.....	299
What Are Autowipers.....	81	Identifying the Fuses in the Body Control	
AWD		Module Fuse Box.....	300
See: All-Wheel Drive.....	170	Locating the Body Control Module Fuse	
		Box.....	299
B		Body Styling Kit Precautions.....	317
Battery Fuse Box.....	298	Body Styling Kits.....	317
Accessing the Battery Fuse Box.....	298	Bonnet Lock	
Identifying the Fuses in the Battery Fuse		See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	303
Box.....	299	Booster Seats.....	32
Locating the Battery Fuse Box.....	298	Brake Coach.....	106
Blind Spot Assist.....	235	Brake Fluid Specification.....	172
Blind Spot Assist Indicators.....	236	Brake Over Accelerator.....	171
Blind Spot Assist Limitations.....	235	Brake Precautions.....	171
How Does Blind Spot Assist Work.....	235	Brakes.....	171
What Is Blind Spot Assist.....	235	Anti-Lock Braking System.....	171
Blind Spot Information System.....	239	Brakes – Troubleshooting.....	173
Blind Spot Information System –		Brakes – Troubleshooting.....	173
Troubleshooting.....	241	Brakes – Frequently Asked Questions.....	173
Blind Spot Information System		Brakes – Warning Lamps.....	173
Indicators.....	240		
Blind Spot Information System		C	
Limitations.....	239	Canceling the Set Speed.....	206
Blind Spot Information System		Canceling the Set Speed Limit.....	231
Precautions.....	239	Center Display.....	360
Blind Spot Information System		Center Display Overview.....	360
Requirements.....	239	Changing a Flat Tire.....	346
Blind Spot Information System –		Changing a Road Wheel.....	346
Troubleshooting.....	241	Changing the Backup Battery.....	48
Blind Spot Information System –		Changing the Remote Control	
Information Messages.....	241	Battery.....	50
BlueCruise Alerts.....	220	Changing the Set Speed Limit.....	230
BlueCruise Automatic		Charge Coupler Manual Release.....	157
Cancellation.....	220	Charge Port Indicators.....	148
BlueCruise.....	216	Charging a Device.....	128
BlueCruise – Troubleshooting.....	222	Charging a Wireless Device.....	131
In-Lane Repositioning.....	221	Charging Equipment Identification	
BlueCruise Indicators.....	221	Symbols.....	162
BlueCruise Limitations.....	218	Charging Equipment Indicators.....	144
BlueCruise Precautions.....	217	Charging Equipment Overview.....	142
BlueCruise Requirements.....	218	Charging Equipment Precautions.....	141
BlueCruise Settings.....	219	Charging Settings.....	158
BlueCruise – Troubleshooting.....	222	Charging Your Vehicle.....	141
BlueCruise – Information Messages.....	222	AC Charging.....	149

Index

Charging Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....	163
Charging Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....	163
Charging Your Vehicle – Frequently Asked Questions.....	165
Charging Your Vehicle – Information Messages.....	164
Charging Your Vehicle – Warning Lamps.....	163
Checking the Brake Fluid.....	171
Checking the Tire Pressures.....	328
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	82
Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	28
Locating the Child Restraint Lower Anchor Points.....	28
Locating the Child Restraint Top Tether Anchor Points.....	28
What Are the Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	28
Child Restraints.....	29
Child Restraint Position Information.....	29
Child Restraints Recommendation.....	31
Installing Child Restraints.....	32
Child Safety.....	27
Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	28
Child Restraints.....	29
Child Safety Locks – Troubleshooting.....	34
Installing Child Restraints.....	32
Child Safety Locks.....	33
Child Safety Locks – Troubleshooting.....	34
Child Safety Locks – Information Messages.....	34
Child Safety Precautions.....	27
Cleaning the Exterior.....	313
Cleaning Camera Lenses and Sensors.....	314
Cleaning Chrome, Aluminium or Stainless Steel.....	313
Cleaning Headlamps and Rear Lamps.....	313
Cleaning Stripes or Graphics.....	314
Cleaning the Exterior Precautions.....	313
Cleaning the Underbody.....	314
Cleaning Wheels.....	313
Cleaning Windows and Wiper Blades.....	313
Cleaning the Interior.....	314
Cleaning Carpets and Floor Mats.....	315
Cleaning Displays and Screens.....	315
Cleaning Fabric.....	315
Cleaning Plastic.....	315
Cleaning Seatbelts.....	316
Cleaning Storage Compartments.....	316
Cleaning the Instrument Panel.....	314
Cleaning Vinyl.....	315
Climate Control.....	109
Auto Mode.....	111
Climate Control – Warning Lamps.....	112
Closing the Frunk.....	268
Closing the Frunk from Outside Your Vehicle.....	268
Closing the Liftgate.....	69
Closing the Hands-Free Liftgate.....	70
Closing the Liftgate From Inside Your Vehicle.....	69
Closing the Liftgate From Outside Your Vehicle.....	69
Closing the Liftgate Using the Remote Control.....	70
Connected Vehicle.....	351
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....	352
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network.....	351
Connected Vehicle Data.....	21
Connected Vehicle Limitations.....	351
Connected Vehicle Requirements.....	351
Connected Vehicle Settings.....	352
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....	352
Connected Vehicle – Frequently Asked Questions.....	352
Connecting a Bluetooth® Device.....	372
Connecting a Trailer.....	272
Tow Ball.....	272
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network.....	351
Connecting FordPass to the Modem.....	351
Enabling and Disabling the Modem.....	351
What Is the Modem.....	351
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network.....	351
Connecting Your Phone.....	367

Index

Coolant.....	304	Doors and Locks Audible Warnings.....	57
Adding Coolant.....	304	Doors and Locks.....	56
Changing the Coolant.....	306	Autolock.....	57
Checking the Coolant Level.....	304	Autounlock.....	57
Cooling System Capacity and Specification.....	306	Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting.....	57
Crash and Breakdown		Mislock.....	57
Information.....	284	Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....	56
Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	288	Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle.....	56
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	285	Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting.....	57
Post-Crash Alert System.....	287	Doors and Locks – Frequently Asked Questions.....	59
Recovery Towing.....	288	Doors and Locks – Information Messages.....	58
Creating a Personal Profile.....	373	Doors and Locks – Warning Lamps.....	57
Cross Traffic Alert.....	246	Drive Mode Control.....	224
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting.....	249	Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting.....	225
Cross Traffic Alert Indicators.....	249	Drive Modes.....	224
Cross Traffic Alert Limitations.....	247	Drive Mode Control –	
Cross Traffic Alert Precautions.....	246	Troubleshooting.....	225
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting.....	249	Drive Mode Control – Frequently Asked Questions.....	227
Cross Traffic Alert – Information Messages.....	249	Drive Mode Control – Information Messages.....	226
Cup Holders.....	133	Drive Mode Control – Warning Lamps.....	225
Cup Holder Precautions.....	133	Drive Modes.....	224
Customer Information.....	388	Active.....	224
Radio Frequency Certification Labels.....	389	RallySport.....	224
D		Untame.....	224
Data Privacy.....	19	Whisper.....	225
DC Charging.....	155	Driver Alert.....	257
Declaration of Conformity.....	388	Driver Alert – Troubleshooting.....	259
Deleting a Personal Profile.....	374	Driver Alert Indicators.....	258
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio.....	358	Driver Alert Limitations.....	258
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio Limitations.....	358	Driver Alert Precautions.....	257
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio Settings.....	359	Driver Alert – Troubleshooting.....	259
Selecting a Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio Station.....	358	Driver Alert – Information Messages.....	259
Switching Service Linking On and Off.....	358	Driver Assistance Menu.....	362
What Is Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio.....	358	Driving Hints.....	279
What Is Service Linking.....	358	Electric Vehicle.....	282
Directing the Flow of Air.....	111	Driving in Cold Weather.....	279
		Driving In Sand.....	281
		Driving on Hilly or Sloping Terrain.....	280
		Driving Through Mud and Water.....	280
		Driving Through Shallow Water.....	281

Index

Drowsiness Monitor	
See: Driver Alert.....	257

E

Easy Entry and Exit.....	66
eCall.....	46
eCall – Troubleshooting.....	48
eCall – Troubleshooting.....	48
eCall – Information Messages.....	48
eCall User Information.....	436
Electric Motor Audible Warnings.....	168
Electric Motor.....	166
Roll-Away Protection.....	168
Selector Positions.....	166
Electric Parking Brake Audible	
Warning.....	175
Electric Parking Brake.....	174
Electric Parking Brake –	
Troubleshooting.....	175
Electric Parking Brake –	
Troubleshooting.....	175
Electric Parking Brake – Information	
Messages.....	176
Electric Parking Brake – Warning	
Lamps.....	175
Electric Power Steering.....	189
Electric Power Steering Precautions.....	189
How Does Electric Power Steering	
Work.....	189
Electric Vehicle.....	282
Maximizing Your Driving Range.....	282
Electromagnetic Compatibility.....	454
Emergency Call Indicators.....	47
Emergency Call Limitations.....	46
Emergency Call Requirements.....	46
Emergency Call System Data.....	22
Emergency Towing.....	291
Enabling Apps on a Mobile Device.....	370
Enabling Local Hazard	
Information.....	229
Enabling or Disabling Personal	
Profiles.....	373
End User License Agreement.....	440
Energy Consumption Figures.....	138
Energy Consumption Figures - Excluding:	
GT.....	139
Energy Consumption Figures - GT.....	140

Environment.....	23
Evasive Steering Assist.....	254
Evasive Steering Assist Limitations.....	255
Switching Evasive Steering Assist On and	
Off.....	255
What Is Evasive Steering Assist.....	254
Event Data.....	20
Exit Warning.....	242
Exit Warning – Troubleshooting.....	245
Exit Warning Indicators.....	244
Exit Warning Limitations.....	243
Exit Warning Precautions.....	242
Exit Warning – Troubleshooting.....	245
Exit Warning – Information	
Messages.....	245
Exterior Bulbs.....	307
Exterior Bulb Specification Chart.....	307
Exterior Lamps.....	88
Exterior Lamps On Audible Warning.....	89
Switching the Daytime Running Lamps On	
and Off.....	88
Switching Welcome Lighting On and	
Off.....	89
Using the Rear Fog Lamps.....	88
Using the Turn Signal Lamps.....	88
Exterior Lighting Control.....	86
Exterior Lighting.....	86
Autolamps.....	87
Automatic High Beam Control.....	89
Automatic High Beam Control –	
Troubleshooting.....	91
Exterior Lamps.....	88
Glare Free Lighting.....	92
Glare Free Lighting – Troubleshooting.....	94
Headlamps.....	86
Headlamps – Troubleshooting.....	87
Exterior Mirrors.....	101
Auto-Dimming Exterior Mirror.....	102
Exterior Overview.....	26

F

Fastening and Unfastening the	
Seatbelts.....	35
Flat Tire	
See: Changing a Flat Tire.....	346
Floor Mats.....	282

Index

FM Radio.....	357
FM Radio Limitations.....	357
Selecting an FM Radio Station.....	357
Folding the Exterior Mirrors.....	101
Ford Assistant.....	363
Ford Assistant – Frequently Asked Questions.....	363
Ford Assistant Settings.....	363
Using Ford Assistant.....	363
Forward Collision Warning.....	254
Adjusting the Sensitivity of Forward Collision Warning.....	254
What is Forward Collision Warning.....	254
Front Parking Aid.....	192
Front Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....	193
Front Parking Aid Limitations.....	193
Locating the Front Parking Aid Sensors.....	193
What is the Front Parking Aid.....	192
Front Seat Precautions.....	114
Front Seats.....	114
Heated Seats.....	119
Manual Seats.....	115
Power Seats.....	117
Fuse Precautions.....	292
Fuses.....	292
Battery Fuse Box.....	298
Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	299
Fuses – Troubleshooting.....	302
Under Hood Fuse Box.....	292
Fuses – Troubleshooting.....	302
Fuses – Frequently Asked Questions.....	302

G

Glare Free Lighting.....	92
Glare Free Lighting Indicators.....	93
Glare Free Lighting Limitations.....	93
Glare Free Lighting Precautions.....	92
Glare Free Lighting Requirements.....	92
How Does Glare Free Lighting Work.....	92
Overriding Glare Free Lighting.....	93
Switching Glare Free Lighting On and Off.....	93
Glare Free Lighting – Troubleshooting.....	94
Glare Free Lighting – Information Messages.....	94

Glasses Holder.....	133
Locating the Glasses Holder.....	133
Global Opening and Closing.....	97
Switching Global Closing On and Off.....	98
Switching Global Opening On and Off.....	98
Using Global Closing.....	98
Using Global Opening.....	98
What Is Global Opening and Closing.....	97
Glossary of Tire Terminology.....	323
Glove Compartment.....	133
Opening the Glove Compartment.....	133

H

Headlamp Adjusting	
See: Adjusting the Headlamps.....	307
Headlamps.....	86
Adjusting the Level of the Headlamps.....	86
Headlamp Indicators.....	86
Switching Headlamp Exit Delay On and Off.....	86
Switching the Headlamps for Driving on the Left or Right-Hand Side of the Road.....	86
Using the High Beam Headlamps.....	86
Headlamps – Troubleshooting.....	87
Headlamps – Frequently Asked Questions.....	87
Heated Seats.....	119
Heated Seat Precautions.....	119
Switching the Heated Seats On and Off.....	119
Heating	
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC).....	109
High Voltage Battery Gauge.....	104
High Voltage Battery.....	137
High Voltage Battery – Troubleshooting.....	140
High Voltage Battery Precautions.....	137
High Voltage Battery – Troubleshooting.....	140
High Voltage Battery – Warning Lamps.....	140
High Voltage Battery Vehicle Precautions.....	284
Hill Start Assist.....	181

Index

Hill Start Assist Precautions.....	181
Hood Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	303
Horn.....	79
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work.....	201
How Does All-Wheel Drive Work.....	170
How Does Auto Hold Work.....	182
How Does Blind Spot Information System Work.....	239
How Does BlueCruise Work.....	216
How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work.....	246
How Does Driver Alert Work.....	257
How Does Easy Entry and Exit Work.....	66
How Does eCall Work.....	46
How Does Exit Warning Work.....	242
How Does Hill Start Assist Work.....	181
How Does Pedestrian Protection Work.....	43
How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work.....	250
How Does Reverse Brake Assist Work.....	177
How Does Stability Control Work.....	185
How Does the 360 Degree Camera Work.....	198
How Does the Intelligent Speed Limiter Work.....	230
How Does the Lane Keeping System Work.....	232
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work.....	123
How Does the Safety Canopy™ Work.....	39
How Does Traction Control Work.....	183
How Does Traffic Sign Recognition Work.....	260
How Does Trailer Sway Control Work.....	278
How Does Walk Away Lock Work.....	65
How Does Wrong Way Alert Work.....	263
How Do Personal Profiles Work.....	373
How Do the Front Airbags Work.....	38
How Do the Knee Airbags Work.....	39
How Do the Side Airbags Work.....	38

Icon Glossary	
See: Symbols Glossary.....	16
Icons	
See: Symbols Glossary.....	16
Identifying Fuse Types.....	302
Identifying the Climate Control Unit.....	109
Inflating the Tires.....	328
Information on the Tire Sidewall.....	320
In-Lane Repositioning.....	221
How Does In-Lane Repositioning Work.....	221
In-Lane Repositioning Indicators.....	222
Switching In-Lane Repositioning On and Off.....	222
Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover.....	269
Installing Child Restraints.....	32
Instrument Cluster Display.....	106
Instrument Cluster.....	103
Instrument Cluster Overview.....	103
Intelligent Speed Limiter Audible Warnings.....	231
Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicators.....	231
Intelligent Speed Limiter.....	230
Intelligent Speed Limiter Precautions.....	230
Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit.....	231
Interior Air Quality.....	113
Interior Bulbs.....	308
Interior Bulb Specification Chart.....	308
Interior Lamp Function.....	95
Switching the Interior Lamp Function On and Off.....	95
What Is the Interior Lamp Function.....	95
Interior Lighting.....	95
Ambient Lighting.....	96
Interior Lamp Function.....	95
Interior Lighting – Troubleshooting.....	96
Interior Lighting – Troubleshooting.....	96
Interior Lighting – Frequently Asked Questions.....	96
Interior Mirror.....	100
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror.....	100

Index

Interior Mirror Precautions.....	100
Interior Overview - LHD RWD.....	24
Interior Overview - RHD RWD.....	25
Introduction.....	13

J

Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	285
Jump Starting Precautions.....	285
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	287
Preparing the Vehicle.....	285

K

Keyless Entry.....	60
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting.....	61
Keyless Entry Keypad.....	62
Keyless Entry Keypad – Troubleshooting.....	64
Keyless Entry Keypad Limitations.....	62
Keyless Entry Keypad Master Access Code.....	62
Keyless Entry Keypad Personal Access Codes.....	62
Keyless Entry Keypad – Troubleshooting.....	64
Keyless Entry Keypad – Frequently Asked Questions.....	64
Keyless Entry Limitations.....	60
Keyless Entry Settings.....	60
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting.....	61
Keyless Entry – Frequently Asked Questions.....	61
Keys and Remote Controls.....	49

L

Lane Centering.....	208
How Does Lane Centering Work.....	208
Lane Centering Alerts.....	210
Lane Centering Automatic Cancellation.....	210
Lane Centering Indicators.....	211
Lane Centering Limitations.....	209
Lane Centering Manual Cancellation.....	210
Lane Centering Precautions.....	208
Lane Centering Requirements.....	209

Switching Lane Centering On and Off.....	209
Lane Centering – Troubleshooting.....	211
Lane Centering – Information Messages.....	211
Lane Keeping System Indicators.....	234
Lane Keeping System.....	232
Aid Mode.....	233
Alert and Aid Mode.....	234
Blind Spot Assist.....	235
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting.....	237
Lane Keeping System Limitations.....	232
Lane Keeping System Precautions.....	232
Lane Keeping System Settings.....	233
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting.....	237
Lane Keeping System – Frequently Asked Questions.....	238
Lane Keeping System – Information Messages.....	237
Liftgate.....	67
Closing the Liftgate.....	69
Liftgate – Troubleshooting.....	71
Opening the Liftgate.....	67
Liftgate Obstacle Detection.....	71
Liftgate Precautions.....	73
Liftgate – Troubleshooting.....	71
Liftgate – Frequently Asked Questions.....	72
Liftgate – Information Messages.....	71
Liftgate – Warning Lamps.....	71
Linking or Unlinking a Personal Profile.....	373
Live Traffic.....	375
Switching Live Traffic On and Off.....	375
What Is Live Traffic.....	375
Load Carrying.....	265
Tow Bar Mounted Carrier.....	265
Load Carrying Precautions.....	265
Local Hazard Information Indicators.....	229
Local Hazard Information.....	229
Locating the 360 Degree Cameras.....	198
Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors.....	240
Locating the Brake Fluid Reservoir.....	171
Locating the Charge Port.....	148

Index

Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors.....	248
Locating the Exit Warning Sensors.....	244
Locating the Keyless Entry Keypad.....	62
Locating the Memory Function Buttons.....	126
Locating the Power Outlets.....	130
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors.....	253
Locating the Rear View Camera.....	196
Locating the Tire label.....	320
Locating the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	331
Locating the USB Ports.....	127
Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger.....	131
Locating Your Vehicle.....	49
Locking the Rear Window Controls.....	99
Locking the Steering Wheel.....	79
Luggage Compartment Anchor Points.....	270
Locating the Luggage Compartment Anchor Points.....	270
Luggage Compartment.....	267
Closing the Frunk.....	268
Luggage Compartment Anchor Points.....	270
Luggage Compartment – Troubleshooting.....	271
Opening the Frunk.....	267
Luggage Compartment Precautions.....	267
Luggage Compartment – Troubleshooting.....	271
Luggage Compartment – Warning Lamps.....	271

M

Maintenance.....	303
12V Battery.....	306
12V Battery – Troubleshooting.....	307
Coolant.....	304
Exterior Bulbs.....	307
Interior Bulbs.....	308
Maintenance Precautions.....	303
Making and Receiving a Phone Call.....	368

Manually Making an Emergency Call.....	46
Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake.....	174
Manual Seats.....	115
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	115
Adjusting the Seat Backrest.....	116
Adjusting the Seat Height.....	116
Folding the Seat Backrest.....	122
Head Restraint Components.....	115
Installing the Head Restraint.....	116
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward.....	116
Removing the Head Restraint.....	116
Unfolding the Seat Backrest.....	122
Media Control Buttons.....	356
Memory Function.....	126
Memory Function Precautions.....	126
Mislock.....	57
Mislock Limitations.....	57
Switching Mislock On and Off.....	57
What Is Mislock.....	57
Mobile Communications Equipment.....	436
Mobile Device Data.....	21
Muting the Audio.....	357

N

Navigation Map Updates.....	375
Navigation.....	375
Adjusting the Map.....	375
Live Traffic.....	375
Route Guidance.....	376
Setting a Destination.....	375
Waypoints.....	376

O

One Pedal Drive Indicators.....	228
One Pedal Drive Limitations.....	228
One Pedal Drive.....	228
One Pedal Drive Precautions.....	228
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	303
Opening and Closing the Windows.....	97
Opening the Frunk.....	267
Opening the Frunk from Inside Your Vehicle.....	267

Index

Opening the Frunk from Outside Your Vehicle.....	267
Opening the Frunk Using the Remote Control.....	268
Opening the Liftgate.....	67
Opening the Hands-Free Liftgate.....	68
Opening the Liftgate From Inside Your Vehicle.....	67
Opening the Liftgate From Outside Your Vehicle.....	67
Opening the Liftgate Using the Remote Control.....	68
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....	56
Opening the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....	56
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Central Locking.....	56
Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle.....	56
Double Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control.....	56
Opening and Closing the Doors.....	56
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control.....	56
OTA	
See: Software Update Settings.....	378
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	378
Overriding Reverse Brake Assist.....	178
Overriding the Set Speed.....	207
Over the air	
See: Software Update Settings.....	378
Over-the-air	
See: Software Update Settings.....	378
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	378
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	378
P	
Parking Aid Indicators.....	194
Parking Aid Precautions.....	191
Parking Aids.....	191
Front Parking Aid.....	192
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting.....	195
Rear Parking Aid.....	192
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting.....	195
Parking Aids – Information Messages.....	195
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	75
How Does the Passive Anti-Theft System Work.....	75
What Is the Passive Anti-Theft System.....	75
Pedestrian Alert System.....	45
Pedestrian Protection Indicators.....	44
Pedestrian Protection.....	43
Pedestrian Protection Precautions.....	43
Performance Vehicle Precautions - GT.....	279
Performance Vehicle Precautions - Vehicles With: Mustang Mach-E Rally.....	279
Performing a System Reset.....	380
Personal Profiles.....	373
Phone as a Key Limitations.....	52
Phone as a Key.....	52
Phone as a Key – Troubleshooting.....	54
Phone as a Key – Troubleshooting.....	54
Phone as a Key – Frequently Asked Questions.....	54
Phone Menu.....	367
Phone.....	367
Phone Precautions.....	367
Playing Media Using Bluetooth®.....	372
Playing Media Using the USB Port.....	127
Post-Collision Braking.....	288
Post-Crash Alert System.....	287
How Does the Post-Crash Alert System Work.....	287
Post-Crash Alert System Limitations.....	288
Switching the Post-Crash Alert System Off.....	288
What Is the Post-Crash Alert System.....	287
Power Gauge.....	104
Powering Off.....	134
Power Outlet.....	130
Power Outlet Precautions.....	130
Power Seats.....	117
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	117
Adjusting the Lumbar Support.....	119
Adjusting the Seat Backrest.....	118
Adjusting the Seat Cushion.....	118
Adjusting the Seat Height.....	119
Head Restraint Components.....	117
Installing the Head Restraint.....	118

Index

Moving the Seat Backward and Forward.....	118
Removing the Head Restraint.....	118
Power-Up	
See: Software Update Settings.....	378
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	378
Pre-Collision Assist Limitations.....	251
Pre-Collision Assist Precautions.....	250
Pre-Collision Assist.....	250
Automatic Emergency Braking.....	254
Evasive Steering Assist.....	254
Forward Collision Warning.....	254
Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting.....	255
Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting.....	255
Pre-Collision Assist – Frequently Asked Questions.....	256
Pre-Collision Assist – Information Messages.....	255
Pre-Collision Assist – Warning Lamps.....	255
Predictive Speed Assist.....	212
How Does Predictive Speed Assist Work.....	212
Predictive Speed Assist Alerts.....	213
Predictive Speed Assist Indicators.....	213
Predictive Speed Assist Limitations.....	213
Predictive Speed Assist Precautions.....	212
Switching Predictive Speed Assist Mode On and Off.....	213
Predictive Speed Assist – Troubleshooting.....	214
Predictive Speed Assist – Information Messages.....	214
Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage.....	318
Preserving Your High Voltage Battery.....	137
Programming the Remote Control.....	51
Programming Your Phone.....	52
Protecting the Environment.....	23
Puncture	
See: Changing a Flat Tire.....	346

R

Radio Frequency Certification Labels.....	389
Antenna.....	389
Blind Spot Information System	
Sensors.....	389
Body Control Module.....	398
Cruise Control Module.....	404
Passive Key.....	410
Phone as a Key.....	398
SYNC.....	413
Telematics Control Unit.....	419
Tire Pressure Monitoring System	
Sensors.....	422
Wireless Accessory Charging Module.....	427
REACH.....	388
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible Warnings.....	125
Rear Occupant Alert System	
Indicators.....	124
Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations.....	123
Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions.....	123
Rear Occupant Alert System.....	123
Rear Occupant Alert System Settings.....	124
Rear Parking Aid.....	192
Locating the Rear Parking Aid	
Sensors.....	192
Rear Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....	192
Rear Parking Aid Limitations.....	192
What is the Rear Parking Aid.....	192
Rear Seats.....	121
Manual Seats.....	121
Rear View Camera Guide Lines.....	196
Rear View Camera Precautions.....	196
Rear View Camera.....	196
Rear View Camera Settings.....	197
Rear View Camera Settings.....	197
Switching Rear View Camera Delay On and Off.....	197
Zooming the Rear View Camera In and Out.....	197
Rebooting the Center Display.....	362
Recalling a Preset Position.....	126

Index

Recovery Towing.....	288	Switching the Roll-Away Protection On and Off.....	169
Accessing the Front Towing Point.....	288	Rollover Warning.....	388
Accessing the Rear Towing Point.....	289	Route Guidance.....	376
Installing the Towing Eye.....	289	Adjusting the Guidance Prompt Volume.....	376
Locating the Towing Eye.....	289	Canceling Route Guidance.....	377
Recycling and Disposing of the High Voltage Battery.....	138	Repeating an Instruction.....	376
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of Charge.....	175		
Remote Control Limitations.....	49	S	
Remote Start.....	108	Saving a Preset Position.....	126
Remote Start Settings.....	108	Seatbelt Precautions.....	35
Removing Your Vehicle From Storage.....	319	Seatbelt Reminder.....	36
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	316	Checking Seatbelt Status.....	37
Replacement Parts Recommendation.....	435	Seatbelt Reminder Audible Warnings.....	37
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control.....	51	Seatbelt Reminder Indicators.....	36
Replacing the Cabin Air Filter.....	113	Switching the Seatbelt Reminder On and Off.....	37
Replacing the Front Wiper Blades.....	82	Seatbelts.....	35
Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades.....	83	Seatbelt Reminder.....	36
Resetting the Trip Computer.....	107	Seatbelts – Troubleshooting.....	37
Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	343	Seatbelts – Troubleshooting.....	37
Restarting the Vehicle After Powering Off.....	134	Seatbelts – Information Messages.....	37
Resuming the Set Speed Limit.....	231	SecuriCode	
Resuming the Set Speed.....	206	See: Keyless Entry Keypad.....	62
Reverse Brake Assist Indicators.....	178	Security.....	75
Reverse Brake Assist Precautions.....	177	Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	75
Reverse Brake Assist.....	177	Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings.....	76
Reverse Brake Assist – Troubleshooting.....	179	Passive Anti-Theft System.....	75
Reverse Brake Assist – Troubleshooting.....	179	Security – Troubleshooting.....	77
Reverse Brake Assist – Frequently Asked Questions.....	180	Security – Troubleshooting.....	77
Reverse Brake Assist – Information Messages.....	179	Security – Frequently Asked Questions.....	78
Reverse Wipe.....	82	Security – Information Messages.....	77
Reverse Wipe Settings.....	82	Selecting a Drive Mode.....	224
What Is Reverse Wipe.....	82	Selecting a Personal Profile.....	374
Roll-Away Protection.....	168	Selecting the Audio Source.....	356
How Does Roll-Away Protection Work.....	168	Selector Positions.....	166
Roll-Away Protection Limitations.....	168	Drive (D).....	167
		Electric Motor Precautions.....	166
		Neutral (N).....	167
		Park (P).....	166
		Reverse (R).....	167
		Selector Position Indicators.....	167
		Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear.....	166
		Sending and Receiving a Text Message.....	369

Index

Service Data.....	20	Starting and Powering Off – Troubleshooting.....	136
Service Intervals.....	387	Starting and Powering Off – Frequently Asked Questions.....	136
Setting a Destination.....	375	Starting the Vehicle.....	134
Setting a Destination Using a Point of Interest.....	376	Status Bar.....	360
Setting a Destination Using a Predictive Destination.....	376	Steering.....	189
Setting a Destination Using a Recent Destination.....	376	Electric Power Steering.....	189
Setting a Destination Using a Saved Destination.....	376	Steering – Troubleshooting.....	190
Setting a Destination Using the Map Screen.....	375	Steering – Troubleshooting.....	190
Setting a Destination Using the Text Entry Screen.....	375	Steering – Information Messages.....	190
Setting a Memory Preset.....	357	Steering – Warning Lamps.....	190
Settings Data.....	21	Steering Wheel.....	79
Settings.....	361	Stopping the Liftgate Movement.....	71
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap.....	205	Storage.....	133
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed.....	204	Cup Holders.....	133
Setting the Blower Motor Speed.....	111	Glasses Holder.....	133
Setting the Clock and Date.....	357	Glove Compartment.....	133
Setting the Liftgate Opening Height.....	68	Storing Your Vehicle.....	318
Setting the Speed Limit.....	230	Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off.....	203
Setting the Temperature.....	111	Switching Air Conditioning On and Off.....	109
Setting Up a Vehicle Hotspot.....	354	Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off.....	95
Shifting Your Immobile Vehicle Out of Park (P).....	167	Switching Android Auto™ On and Off.....	370
Signing In to Your Account.....	365	Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off.....	370
Sitting in the Correct Position.....	114	Switching Auto Hold On and Off.....	182
Software Update Indicators.....	379	Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off.....	240
Software Update Settings.....	378	Switching BlueCruise On and Off.....	219
Software Update		Switching Climate Control On and Off.....	109
See: Software Update Settings.....	378	Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off.....	248
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	378	Switching Defrost On and Off.....	109
Special Notices.....	14	Switching Driver Alert On and Off.....	258
Speedometer.....	104	Switching Easy Entry and Exit On and Off.....	66
Stability Control Indicator.....	188	Switching Exit Warning On and Off.....	244
Stability Control.....	185	Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control.....	208
Starting and Powering Off		Switching From Intelligent Speed Limiter to Speed Limiter.....	231
Precautions.....	134		
Starting and Powering Off.....	134		
Starting and Powering Off – Troubleshooting.....	136		
Vehicle Power Down Timer.....	135		

Index

Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off.....	110	Switching Walk Away Lock On and Off.....	65
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off.....	109	Switching Wrong Way Alert On and Off.....	263
Switching One Pedal Drive On and Off.....	228	Symbols Glossary.....	16
Switching Parking Aid On and Off.....	191	Symbols Used On Your Instrument Cluster.....	16
Switching Pre-Collision Assist On and Off.....	253	System Update	
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off.....	109	See: Software Update Settings.....	378
Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off.....	178	See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	378
Switching Stability Control On and Off.....	186	T	
Switching Text Message Notification On and Off.....	370	Third Party Software Copyright Acknowledgment.....	388
Switching the Audio Unit On and Off.....	356	Tire Care.....	328
Switching the Electric Heater On and Off.....	110	Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations.....	343
Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off.....	95	Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions.....	343
Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off.....	285	Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	343
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off.....	111	Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting.....	344
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off.....	110	Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting.....	344
Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off.....	79	Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Information Messages.....	345
Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off.....	110	Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Warning Lamps.....	344
Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off.....	230	Tire Pressure Specifications.....	329
Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode.....	233	Tire Replacement Requirements.....	324
Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off.....	233	Tire Rotation.....	330
Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off.....	41	Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Components.....	332
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off.....	95	Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Precautions.....	331
Switching the Rear Window Wiper On and Off.....	82	Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	331
Switching Traction Control On and Off.....	183	Tow Ball.....	272
		Attaching the Tow Ball Arm.....	273
		Detaching the Tow Ball Arm.....	272
		Tow Ball Precautions.....	272
		Tow Bar Mounted Carrier.....	265
		Tow Bar Mounted Carrier Precautions.....	265
		Tow Bar Mounted Load Capacities.....	266
		Towing a Trailer Limitations.....	275
		Towing a Trailer Precautions.....	275

Index

Towing a Trailer.....	275	Under Hood Overview.....	303
Towing Weights and Dimensions.....	276	USB Ports.....	127
Towing Weights and Dimensions.....	276	Using Alexa Built-In.....	365
Tow Bar Dimensions.....	276	Using Auto Hold.....	182
Towing Your Vehicle Precautions.....	291	Using Keyless Entry.....	60
Towing Your Vehicle.....	291	Using Remote Start.....	108
Traction Control Indicator.....	183	Using Snow Chains.....	326
Traction Control.....	183	Using Summer Tires.....	325
Traction Control – Troubleshooting.....	184	Using the Backup Start Passcode.....	53
Traction Control –		Using the Frunk Emergency	
Troubleshooting.....	184	Release.....	269
Traction Control – Information		Using the Keyless Entry Keypad.....	63
Messages.....	184	Using the Remote Control.....	49
Traction Control – Warning Lamps.....	184	Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator	
Traffic Announcements.....	359	Kit.....	333
Switching Traffic Announcements On and		Using the Valet Mode.....	53
Off.....	359	Using This Publication.....	14
Traffic Sign Recognition Indicators.....	261	Using Winter Tires.....	326
Traffic Sign Recognition		Using Your Vehicle App and	
Limitations.....	260	Charging.....	161
Traffic Sign Recognition			
Precautions.....	260		
Traffic Sign Recognition Settings.....	261		
Traffic Sign Recognition.....	260		
Traffic Sign Recognition –			
Troubleshooting.....	262		
Traffic Sign Recognition –			
Troubleshooting.....	262		
Traffic Sign Recognition – Frequently Asked			
Questions.....	262		
Traffic Sign Recognition – Information			
Messages.....	262		
Trailer Sway Control Precautions.....	278		
Trailer Sway Control.....	278		
Trailer Towing Hints.....	275		
Transporting the Vehicle.....	289		
Trip Computer.....	107		
Trip Data.....	107		
Tyre Pressure Specifications			
See: Tire Pressure Specifications.....	329		

V

Vehicle Care.....	313
Cleaning the Exterior.....	313
Cleaning the Interior.....	314
General Information.....	313
Vehicle Dimensions - Excluding:	
GT.....	309
Vehicle Dimensions - GT.....	310
Vehicle Dimensions - Vehicles With:	
Mustang Mach-E Rally.....	311
Vehicle Hotspot Settings.....	354
Vehicle Hotspot –	
Troubleshooting.....	355
Vehicle Hotspot – Frequently Asked	
Questions.....	355
Vehicle Hotspot.....	354
Vehicle Hotspot – Troubleshooting.....	355
Vehicle Identification Plate.....	349
Locating the Vehicle Identification	
Plate.....	349
Vehicle Identification Plate	
Overview.....	349
Vehicle Identification.....	349
Vehicle Identification Plate.....	349

Index

Vehicle Power Down Timer.....	135	What Is eCall.....	46
How Does the Vehicle Power Down Timer		What Is Exit Warning.....	242
Work.....	135	What Is Hill Start Assist.....	181
Overriding the Vehicle Power Down		What Is Keyless Entry.....	60
Timer.....	135	What Is Local Hazard Information.....	229
Switching the Vehicle Power Down Timer		What Is One Pedal Drive.....	228
On and Off.....	135	What Is Pedestrian Protection.....	43
What Is the Vehicle Power Down		What Is Phone as a Key.....	52
Timer.....	135	What Is Pre-Collision Assist.....	250
Vehicle Range Display.....	104	What Is Reverse Brake Assist.....	177
Vehicle Software Updates.....	378	What Is the 360 Degree Camera.....	198
Vehicle Specifications.....	309	What Is the Cabin Air Filter.....	113
Vehicle System Reset.....	380	What Is the Electric Parking Brake.....	174
Ventilation		What Is the High Voltage Battery.....	137
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual		What Is the Intelligent Speed	
Automatic Temperature Control		Limiter.....	230
(DATC).....	109	What Is the Keyless Entry Keypad.....	62
Viewing the Tire Pressures.....	343	What Is the Lane Keeping System.....	232
Visual Search.....	24	What Is the Memory Function.....	126
Voice Interaction.....	363	What Is the Pedestrian Alert	
Ford Assistant.....	363	System.....	45
W		What Is the Power Outlet.....	130
Walk Away Lock Limitations.....	65	What Is the Rear Occupant Alert	
Walk Away Lock.....	65	System.....	123
Washers.....	83	What Is the Rear View Camera.....	196
Adding Washer Fluid.....	84	What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring	
Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and		System.....	343
Off.....	84	What Is the Tire Sealant and Inflator	
Using the Rear Window Washer.....	84	Kit.....	331
Using the Windshield Washer.....	83	What Is the Wireless Accessory	
Washer Fluid Specification.....	84	Charger.....	131
Washer Precautions.....	83	What Is Traction Control.....	183
Washers		What Is Traffic Sign Recognition.....	260
See: Wipers and Washers.....	81	What Is Walk Away Lock.....	65
Waxing Your Vehicle.....	316	What Is Wrong Way Alert.....	263
Waypoints.....	376	Wheel and Tire Information.....	320
Adding a Waypoint.....	376	Wheel Nuts.....	347
Editing Waypoints.....	376	Wi Fi	
What Is a Connected Vehicle.....	351	See: Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi	
What Is Alexa Built-In.....	365	Network.....	351
What Is Blind Spot Information		Window Bounce-Back.....	98
System.....	239	Overriding Window Bounce-Back.....	98
What Is BlueCruise.....	216	What Is Window Bounce-Back.....	98
What Is Cross Traffic Alert.....	246	Windows.....	97
What Is Drive Mode Control.....	224	Global Opening and Closing.....	97
What Is Driver Alert.....	257	Window Bounce-Back.....	98

Index

Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting.....	85
Wipers and Washers – Frequently Asked Questions.....	85
Wipers and Washers – Warning Lamps.....	85
Wipers and Washers.....	81
Autowipers.....	81
Reverse Wipe.....	82
Washers.....	83
Wipers.....	81
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting.....	85
Wipers.....	81
Switching Windshield Wipers On and Off.....	81
Wiper Precautions.....	81
Wireless Accessory Charger Precautions.....	131
Wireless Accessory Charger.....	131
Wrong Way Alert Limitations.....	263
Wrong Way Alert Precautions.....	263
Wrong Way Alert – Troubleshooting.....	264
Wrong Way Alert – Information Messages.....	264
Wrong Way Alert.....	263
Wrong Way Alert – Troubleshooting.....	264

Y

Your Authorized Dealer.....	381
-----------------------------	-----

